

# SOLAR SAILS

**A Novel Approach  
to Interplanetary  
Travel**

Second Edition



**Giovanni Vulpetti  
Les Johnson  
Gregory L. Matloff**

 Springer

PRAXIS

# Solar Sails

A Novel Approach to Interplanetary Travel

---



Giovanni Vulpetti  
Les Johnson  
Gregory L. Matloff

---

# Solar Sails

**A Novel Approach to Interplanetary Travel**

**Second Edition**



**Springer**

Published in association with  
**Praxis Publishing**  
Chichester, UK





Giovanni Vulpetti  
Rome, Italy

Les Johnson  
Madison, AL, USA

Gregory L. Matloff  
Brooklyn, NY, USA

---

SPRINGER-PRAXIS BOOKS IN SPACE EXPLORATION

---

ISBN 978-1-4939-0940-7      ISBN 978-1-4939-0941-4 (eBook)  
DOI 10.1007/978-1-4939-0941-4  
Springer New York Heidelberg Dordrecht London

Library of Congress Control Number: 2014950112

© Springer Science+Business Media New York 2008, 2015

This work is subject to copyright. All rights are reserved by the Publisher, whether the whole or part of the material is concerned, specifically the rights of translation, reprinting, reuse of illustrations, recitation, broadcasting, reproduction on microfilms or in any other physical way, and transmission or information storage and retrieval, electronic adaptation, computer software, or by similar or dissimilar methodology now known or hereafter developed. Exempted from this legal reservation are brief excerpts in connection with reviews or scholarly analysis or material supplied specifically for the purpose of being entered and executed on a computer system, for exclusive use by the purchaser of the work. Duplication of this publication or parts thereof is permitted only under the provisions of the Copyright Law of the Publisher's location, in its current version, and permission for use must always be obtained from Springer. Permissions for use may be obtained through RightsLink at the Copyright Clearance Center. Violations are liable to prosecution under the respective Copyright Law.

The use of general descriptive names, registered names, trademarks, service marks, etc. in this publication does not imply, even in the absence of a specific statement, that such names are exempt from the relevant protective laws and regulations and therefore free for general use.

While the advice and information in this book are believed to be true and accurate at the date of publication, neither the authors nor the editors nor the publisher can accept any legal responsibility for any errors or omissions that may be made. The publisher makes no warranty, express or implied, with respect to the material contained herein.

Cover design: Jim Wilkie

Printed on acid-free paper

Springer is part of Springer Science+Business Media ([www.springer.com](http://www.springer.com))

# Contents

<b>Dedication</b> .....	vii
<b>Foreword</b> .....	ix
<b>Foreword to the First Edition</b> .....	xi
<b>Preface to the First Edition</b> .....	xiii
<b>Preface to the Second Edition</b> .....	xvii
<b>Acknowledgments</b> .....	xxi
<b>About the Authors</b> .....	xxiii
<b>Part I Space Engines: Past and Present</b>	
<b>1 An Historical Introduction to Space Propulsion</b> .....	3
<b>2 The Rocket: How It Works in Space</b> .....	13
<b>3 Rocket Problems and Limitations</b> .....	23
<b>4 Non-Rocket In-Space Propulsion</b> .....	35
<b>5 The Solar Sail Option: From the Oceans to Space</b> .....	45
<b>Part II Space Missions by Sail</b>	
<b>6 Principles of Space Sailing</b> .....	61
<b>7 What Is a Space Sailcraft?</b> .....	67
<b>8 Sails Versus Rockets</b> .....	73
<b>9 Exploring and Developing Space by Sailcraft</b> .....	83
<b>10 Riding a Beam of Light</b> .....	103

**Part III Construction of Sailcraft**

**11 Designing a Solar Sail** ..... 113  
**12 Building a Sailcraft** ..... 127  
**13 Progress to Date** ..... 143  
**14 Future Plans** ..... 155

**Part IV Breakthroughs in Space**

**15 The JAXA IKAROS Mission as a Technological Breakthrough** ..... 165  
**16 The NanoSAIL-D2 NASA Mission** ..... 173  
**17 New Projects in Progress** ..... 179

**Part V Space Sailing: Some Technical Aspects**

**18 Space Sources of Light**..... 189  
**19 Modeling Thrust from Electromagnetic Radiation Pressure**..... 205  
**20 Sailcraft Trajectories** ..... 223  
**21 Sails in the Space Environment** ..... 247

**Glossary** ..... 261

**Index**..... 267

*Dedicated to*

*My daughter Désirée and my son David*

Giovanni Vulpetti

*Carol, my wife and companion on this life's  
journey*

Les Johnson

*My wife, partner, and colleague, C Bangs*

Gregory L. Matloff



## Foreword

The title of this book indirectly reflects the rich history of solar sailing's dual existence in fiction and reality. Solar sailing was first invented in a technical analysis by Russian scientists Fredrikh Tsander and Konstantin Tsilokovsky in the 1920s applying laws of physics discovered only a few decades earlier. The first Western technical consideration of it was an engineering analysis published in a science-fiction magazine. Then it received attention in science-fiction literature and early NASA technical publications, about equally, until the advent of the space shuttle, which made it possible to consider deployment of large structures in space. That allowed NASA to at least consider its practical application for a rendezvous with Halley's Comet.

This second edition of Vulpetti's, Johnson's, and Matloff's compendium all about solar sails is well timed to chronicle the transition taking solar sail firmly from fiction to reality. This edition tells the story of the first successful solar-sail flight, IKAROS, by the Japanese space agency and that of other efforts now under way for solar-sail missions in Earth orbit, cis-lunar space, and the first interplanetary missions.

Sailing appeals both because it is beautiful—gossamer structures reflecting light in space, sailing without motors, and because it is the only technology that we know which might enable interstellar flight. It is the vision of flying to other worlds beyond our solar system that makes solar sailing of special interest. Realizing that vision may take centuries, but the technology, flying by light, has practical applications right now—monitoring solar weather helping to protect the Earth's power and communications grids, observing Earth's climate over the poles, carrying large payloads on round-trip missions to the planets, and providing a light-weight source of propulsion for a new class of nano-spacecraft are examples.

The authors' text, updated to include the new missions and new concepts, gives us a complete view of the technology. It also helps bring the vision of the distant missions into focus with description of current activities, research and development.

Louis Friedman





## Foreword to the First Edition

At the time of writing, a true solar sail has yet to be flown in space. Yet despite this, there is tremendous international interest in this exciting and visionary concept. The excitement is captured in this excellent book which contains something for everyone, from a non-mathematical discussion of the principles of solar sailing to a detailed mathematical analysis of solar-sail trajectories. More than that, the book places solar sailing in its proper context by providing a discussion of other propulsion technologies and highlights the benefits (and limitations) of solar sailing.

For the lay reader the book provides a complete introduction to, and discussion of, space propulsion. For the professional scientist and engineer it provides a starting point to further explore the uses of solar sailing. For all readers, it should inspire. Solar sailing is perhaps the most captivating form of spacecraft propulsion currently under development. While other advanced concepts will not make the jump from imagination to reality for many years to come, solar sailing promises to become a reality in the near term. Read this book, and then tell your friends and colleagues that someday very soon we may be literally sailing through space on a sun beam.

Glasgow  
31 May 2007

Colin McInnes



## Preface to the First Edition

This is one of the first books devoted to space solar sailing written in the twenty-first century. It is intended for both space enthusiasts (nonexperts) and those who are more technically trained. Never before has solar-sail propulsion been so close to being demonstrated via real missions around the Earth. After a number of preliminary tasks in space, the National Aeronautics and Space Administration (NASA), the European Space Agency (ESA), and the Japan Aerospace Exploration Agency (JAXA) are now designing real experimental missions to be accomplished by the first generation of solar-sail technology. Historically, we mention three serious attempts that began the solar-sail era in space. First, the solar-sail mission to the comet Halley, fostered by JPL in the 1970s, was ultimately not approved by NASA. In 1997, the precursor sailcraft Daedalus, fostered by ESA/ESTEC, received no approval from the ESA Council. In 2005, the small experimental sailcraft Cosmos-1, sponsored by the Planetary Society (USA), was not successful due to the failure of the Russian submarine-based launch vehicle. However, despite these aborted attempts, the problems these mission planners dealt with provided a serious base for many further studies and serious technology development activities. Strangely enough, following these “failed” attempts, theoretical research and ground demonstrations of small-sail deployment increased in number. The benefits of solar sailing are so clear and compelling that national space agencies and private organizations could not miss the chance to make a quality jump forward in space propulsion, potentially enabling exciting new science and exploration missions throughout the solar system.

This book has four parts. The first three parts are intended for the nontechnical reader who wishes to learn more about one of the most intriguing aspects of near- and medium-term spaceflight: solar-sail propulsion and the missions that solar sailing will enable. These parts are completely self-consistent and self-sufficient. Various “technical boxes” have been inserted to provide the interested reader with a more technical or historical explanation. The fourth part contains the supporting mathematics, intended for more technical readers, and in particular for undergraduate students. A glossary is provided at the end of the book containing definitions of many key terms. Many topics discussed in this book are technical in nature, yet the fundamental principles may be readily understood by

even the most casual reader. Regardless of the reader's general interest level, the authors have made significant efforts to achieve the following goals:

- Technical correctness in all aspects of the book
- Completeness of the main topics and subtopics within the limits of a reasonably sized book
- Timeliness, as the designs, realizations, and information related to space sailing were updated up to the moment the manuscript was sent to the publisher.

Part I, *Space Engines: Past and Present*, contains five chapters. Chapter 1 introduces the fundamentals of spacecraft propulsion. Chapter 2 describes how rocket engines work. Chapter 3 addresses the problems and limitations of chemical, nuclear, and ion rocket propulsion. Chapter 4 considers various non-rocket technologies that may be used for space propulsion. Chapter 5 introduces the sailing concept by starting from afar—about 45 centuries ago in the Mediterranean Sea, where the Phoenicians invented a very efficient way for navigating the seas. Some of their intuitions still hold for both sailing earthly seas and in space. The authors then summarize how conventional wind sailboats work. From related physical phenomena, consider space sails—their operational analogies and their first important differences with respect to wind-powered sails. The authors subsequently introduce the amazing nature of light and its progressive scientific comprehension that began just a few centuries ago.

Part II, *Space Missions by Sail*, contains five chapters. Chapter 6 states that space sailing is “free,” deriving propulsion from either sunlight or the solar wind. Differences between the concepts of sunlight-driven solar sails, magnetic sails, plasma sails, and electric sails are discussed. Chapter 7 is devoted to the concept of sail spacecraft, or sailcraft, and how they drive the design of a completely new class of spacecraft. Also, the concept of micro-sailcraft is introduced. Chapter 8 compares rocket propulsion and (photon) solar-sail propulsion from many practical viewpoints: design, complexity, risks, mission requirements, and range of application. Chapter 9 is devoted to exploring and developing space by sailcraft. Near-term, medium-term, long-term, and interstellar missions are discussed; sailships to other stars are given a special emphasis. Chapter 10 describes different ways of “riding” a beam of light. Sailing via laser or microwaves is discussed and compared with the so-called particle-beam sail propulsion.

Part III, *Construction of Sailcraft*, contains four chapters. Chapter 11 tackles the problem of designing a solar sail. There exist different sail types according to their mission aims and stabilization modes. Maneuvering a solar sail is a fundamental operation in space. This chapter explains what spacecraft attitude is and the various sail attitude control methods that may be used. Chapter 12 deals with the problem of building a sailcraft by using today's technologies or emerging technologies for tomorrow's high-performance space sailing missions. After exploring the current policies for the first solar-sail missions, the chapter introduces nanotechnology fundamentals and some of its expected features. The chapter ends by stressing what one may conceive beyond nanotechnology—a science-fiction realm indeed. Chapter 13 discusses the advancements made to date, starting from the pioneering sail/sailcraft designs and the role of the various national space agencies, and concludes with past and current private initiatives and collaborations. Chapter 14 discusses the future plans for solar sailing in the USA, Europe, and Japan.

Part IV, Space Sailing: Some Technical Aspects, is intended for more technical readers, in particular for undergraduate students in physics, engineering, and mathematics. Although the math has been kept simple, a modest background in physics and elementary calculus is advisable. The chapters in this section contain concepts, explanations, and many figures to more technically describe sailcraft missions and their feasibility. Chapter 15 is devoted to the space sources of light, and the Sun in particular. After basic optical definitions and concepts, emphasis is put on the solar electromagnetic radiation spectrum, its variability, and the measurements made in the space era by instruments on some solar-physics satellites. Total solar irradiance, a fundamental element in solar sailing, is discussed widely. Chapter 16 starts from the heliocentric and sailcraft frames of reference and shows how to get the inertial-frame thrust acceleration from the lightness vector, defined in the sailcraft frame, through momentum-transfer phenomena. The main features of the sailcraft acceleration are highlighted via reference accelerations of particular physical meaning. Chapter 17 is the central piece of Part IV. The authors show the class of sailcraft trajectories via several technical plots. Some trajectories have been designed in the past decades, some others were investigated in the first years of this century, and others have been calculated specifically for this book by means of modern (and very complex) computer codes. After a discussion of the formal sailcraft motion vector equation, the reader is introduced to general Keplerian orbits. Then, interplanetary transfer trajectories to planets are discussed. Non-Keplerian orbits are explained, as are many-body orbits and their main characteristics, and fast and very fast solar sailing. Chapter 18 deals with the important and delicate matter of the impact of the space environment on the whole sail system design. The reader is introduced to the main environmental problems that affect a solar-sail mission, especially if it is close to the Sun.





## Preface to the Second Edition

This is the first mostly popular, and partially technical, book devoted to solar-photon sailing after the first sailcraft mission of the history of Astronautics, namely, the Japanese sailcraft IKAROS, launched by JAXA from the Tanegashima Space Center on May 21, 2010. IKAROS, or the Interplanetary Kite-craft Accelerated by Radiation Of the Sun, was the second passenger of the JAXA launcher H-IIA No. 17. The GUINNESS World Record certified IKAROS mission is a breakthrough for space solar sailing. It has been proved that the in-space propulsion known as *the solar-sail thrusting* exists with, no doubt, closing silly controversies (especially via Internet) on the physics of space solar sailing, whereupon there were produced wrong statements by whom who do not know Physics very well (and often claim to be expert at it).

NASA NanoSail-D2, the first sailcraft mission with purposes different from IKAROS—but demonstrating that not only solar sailing is real but also that it could be used for mitigating humans-caused problems in Space—was launched on November 19, 2010 as a payload on NASA's Fast, Affordable, Science and Technology SATellite (FASTSAT) from Kodiak, Alaska. (This satellite was fully designed and developed in 14 months at NASA's Marshall Space Flight Center (MSFC) in partnership with the Von Braun Center for Science & Innovation and Dynetics, both in Huntsville, Alabama, and with the Department of Defense's Space Test Program.) Ground operations support for IKAROS was provided by Santa Clara University, while the NanoSail-D experiment was managed by MSFC.

This book tells the reader about the past efforts, the current plans, and the future programs of the very promising in-space propulsion, which scientists and engineers call the Solar-Photon Sailing (SPS), by putting an emphasis on *solar* and *photon*. As a point of fact, such propulsion mode resorts to the solar irradiance (not to maser or laser-originated light), which—being electromagnetic waves—carries a pressure (called the radiation pressure) coming to act on a surface, the sail's one. The incident solar waves are essentially reflected or absorbed by the (first) layer of the sail. The process of reflection comes from the diffraction of the solar light, which can be described classically. Space sailing works by using an object with sufficiently high area-to-mass ratio in order to take advantage of the *momenta* of the *scattered* and *absorbed* (solar) *photons*. Thus, the space sailing

concept—now a reality—described in this book is propulsion sustained by the photons continuously released by the Sun into space. There are other space sailing concepts, namely, the magnetic-sail, the plasma-sail, or the electric-sail concepts, that are based on the dynamical pressure of the solar wind. This one is over three orders of magnitude lower than the solar radiation pressure, and fluctuates considerably. In contrast, the solar radiation pressure is sufficiently stable for designing a quasi-deterministic trajectory for a space vehicle endowed with a sail or a sailcraft. A sailcraft consists of the sail system and its payload, i.e., the spacecraft. In other words, sailcraft = sail system + spacecraft.

Just for the mentioned properties, SPS sailcraft could be very small, or also very large, as the materials and the spacecraft concepts evolve. Enormous advance in this sense, literally, is expected from the Nanotechnology. Mature SPS sailcraft will have none of the limitations exhibited by rocket-based space vehicle.

With respect to the first edition, this book has been changed by (1) adding new chapters, (2) enlarging many of the previous ones, (3) updating many pieces of information, and (4) amending a number of items with clearer explanations. The authors hope that even undergraduate students may benefit from an entire part devoted to them.

This edition has been arranged as follows: there are *five* parts instead of four. The first four have been intended for the nontechnical reader who wishes to “visit” the intriguing world of SPS without the expertise of a scientist. Such parts are completely self-sufficient. The last part—the fifth one—is devoted to the more technically inclined reader who could, in addition, benefit of the popular parts, and enlarge her/his view by learning the history, the current scenarios, and the plans of SPS. This book consists of 21 chapters so arranged:

Part-I, entitled **Space Engines: Past and Present**, consists of five chapters. Chapter 1 introduces the reader to space propulsion from a historical viewpoint; propulsion history is an integral part of the history of Astronautics. Chapter 2 describes how rocket engines work in general. Chapter 3 addresses the intrinsic limitation of rocket propulsion, beginning from the chemical one, and analyzing nuclear and electric propulsion. Chapter 4 considers different-from-rocket concepts and the related technologies. Chapter 5 uses an approach unusual with respect to the normal talking on advanced space propulsion. It introduces the sailing concept by starting from afar, namely, about 45 centuries ago in the Mediterranean Sea, where the Phoenicians invented a very efficient way for navigating the seas. Some of their intuitions still hold for both sailing earthly seas and in space. The authors then summarize how conventional wind sailboats work. From the related physical phenomena, they consider space sails, their operational analogies, and their first important differences with respect to wind-driven sails. The authors subsequently introduce the amazing nature of light and its progressive scientific comprehension that began just a few centuries ago.

Part-II, **Space Missions by Sail**, has five chapters. In Chap. 6, it is stated that space sailing is “free,” as propulsion deriving from either sunlight or the solar wind. Differences between the concepts of sunlight-driven solar sails, magnetic sails, plasma sails, and electric sails are discussed. Chapter 7 deals with the concepts of sail-based space vehicles (sailcraft) and how they lead up to a class of spacecraft completely new. In addition, the concept of micro-sailcraft is introduced. Chapter 8 compares rocket propulsion and (photon) solar-sail propulsion from many practical viewpoints: design, complexity, risks, mission requirements, and range of application. Chapter 9 is devoted to exploring and

developing space by sailcraft. Near-term, medium-term, long-term, and interstellar missions are discussed. Sailships to other stars are given a special emphasis. Chapter 10 describes different ways of “riding” a beam of light. Sailing via laser or microwaves is discussed and compared with the so-called particle-beam sail propulsion.

Four chapters can be found in Part-III, called **Construction of Sailcraft**. Chapter 11 tackles the problem of designing a solar sail. There is no single “best” solution, which will fit all potential needs and mission scenarios. This chapter is divided into two major sections. First, we will discuss the most viable solar-sail design options, and the pros and cons of each, including the problem of controlling the orientation of a sail in space. Then, we will face with technological aspects in building a sailcraft. Chapter 12 deals with the problem of building a sailcraft by using today’s technologies or emerging technologies for tomorrow’s high-performance space sailing missions. After exploring the current policies for the current generation of sail-based missions, the chapter introduces nanotechnology fundamentals and some of its expected features. The chapter ends by stressing what one may conceive beyond nanotechnology—a science-fiction realm indeed. Chapter 13 discusses the advancements made to date, starting from the pioneering sail/sailcraft designs and the role of the various national space agencies, and concludes with past and current private initiatives and collaborations. Chapter 14 discusses the plans for solar sailing advancements in (substantially) the USA, Europe, and Japan, as (at the time of this writing) no other country appears to have space sailcraft plans.

Part-IV, **Breakthroughs in Space**, contains three completely new chapters, which describe what happened in the SPS area from the first edition (of the book) to the new sailcraft designs in progress. Chapter 15 is devoted to the breakthrough in SPS, i.e., the IKAROS mission. Chapter 16 regards the smaller, but remarkable, sailcraft NanoSail-D2 by NASA. Chapter 17 informs the reader how many SPS projects are in progress in Europe, Japan, and USA.

Finally, undergraduate students and technical people, wanting to enter the SPS via some mathematics, may find some of the basics of SPS in the four chapters of Part-V, namely, **Space Sailing: Some Technical Aspects**. Mathematics has been kept simple; however, a modest background in physics and elementary calculus is advisable. The chapters in this section contain concepts, explanations, and many figures in order to describe sailcraft missions (and their feasibility) more quantitatively. Chapter 18 is devoted mostly to the features of the solar light. After basic macroscopic optical concepts, emphasis is put on the solar electromagnetic radiation spectrum, its variability, and the measurements made by instruments onboard solar-physics spacecraft. Total solar irradiance, a fundamental element in solar sailing, is discussed widely. Chapter 19 starts from the heliocentric and sailcraft frames of reference, and shows how to get the thrust acceleration by using the formalism of the lightness vector, defined in the sailcraft frame, through momentum-transfer phenomena. The main features of the sailcraft acceleration are discussed by highlighting particular physical meanings. Chapter 20 is the central piece of Part V. The authors show the class of sailcraft trajectories via several technical plots. Some trajectories have been designed in the past decades, some others were investigated in the first years of this century, and others have been calculated specifically for this book by means of modern (and very complex) computer codes. After a discussion of the formal sailcraft motion vector equation, the reader is introduced to general Keplerian orbits. Then, interplanetary

transfer trajectories to planets are discussed shortly. Non-Keplerian orbits are explained, as are many-body orbits and their main characteristics, and fast solar sailing. Chapter 21 deals with the important and delicate matter of determining the behavior of an unusual large object in the space environment. The reader is introduced to the main environmental problems that affect a solar-sail mission, especially if it is close to the Sun.

Although this book contains some hundred pages, the covered areas are vast. However, the authors made much effort for achieving the following objectives:

1. Taking care of the technical correctness.
2. Giving the reader as wide a general view of the subject as possible.
3. Being timely, namely, all pieces of information are updated up to the moment the manuscript was sent to the publisher.

## Acknowledgments

Six years have elapsed from the issue of the first edition of this book. Even more, the authors continue to express plenty of thanks to their wonderful families for the comprehension, the patience, and even for some very fine suggestions received in additional 18 months of writing effort, a job carried out mostly in the evening and during many, many weekends.

Many and friendly thanks go to Mr. Paul Gilster, writer and editor of *Centauri Dreams*, and lead journalist at Tau Zero Foundation. He kindly accepted the authors' invitation to preview this book, a fact considerably appreciated by the authors.

Special thanks go to the Springer New York and, in particular, to Ms. Jennifer Satten, the Associate Editor for Physics, Astronomy & Astrophysics. Her support during the copy-editing process has been invaluable indeed.

Finally, the authors appreciated the many emails received from students (high schools or university), from many countries of three continents, asking the authors for further explanations. Many of them received a bachelor's, a Master's, or a PhD too in these six years; someone conceived new solar-sail missions and published the results of their calculations on prestigious scientific journals. All this is of great satisfaction for the authors.

June 2014

Giovanni Vulpetti  
Les Johnson  
Greg Matloff





## About the Authors

**Giovanni Vulpetti** received his Ph.D. in plasma physics in 1973. Subsequently, he specialized in astrodynamics. He wrote many tens of scientific papers about astrodynamics, advanced propulsion concepts, and interstellar flight, with particular regard to matter–antimatter annihilation propulsion. In 1979, he joined Telespazio SpA (Rome, Italy). From 1995 to 2011, he has attended the committee for Lunar Base & Mars exploration of the *International Academy of Astronautics* (IAA). He has been involved in solar-photon sailing since 1992. In the 1990s, he found out new types of sailcraft trajectories and published his theory mainly on *Acta Astronautica*, JPL workshops, and IAA symposia. In 1994, he was elected a Full Member of IAA. In spring 1997, he was a consultant at ESA/ESTEC about the solar-sail mission concept *Daedalus*. In 1979–2004, he contributed to 11 Italian and European space programs. In 2001, he was a consultant at NASA/MSFC for the NASA Interstellar Probe. In the course of two decades, he accomplished some large computer codes devoted to mission analysis and trajectory optimization via rockets and/or solar sails. In the 1990s, he was a member of the IAA committee for small satellites and, consequently, he participated in the design of Telespazio TemiSat (launched in August 1993). During 2006–2007, he joined Galilean Plus (Rome, Italy) as chief scientist, and participated in the program of the Italian Space Agency for lunar explorations. To date, he has published about 120 research papers and reports. He was a COSPAR-Associate in 2002–2007. In 2009 and 2014, he served as managing guest editor of *Acta Astronautica* special issues. He wrote the book *Fast Solar Sailing, Astrodynamics of Special Sailcraft Trajectories*, Space Technology Library 30, Springer 2012. Since spring 2013, he has been a guest lecturer on the physics of in-space propulsion at the Dept. of Astronautical Engineering of University of Rome “La Sapienza.”

**Les Johnson** is a physicist at NASA’s Marshall Space Flight Center in Huntsville, Alabama, where he serves as the Senior Technical Advisor for the Advanced Concepts Office. He was a Co-Investigator on the Japanese T-Rex space tether experiment, the Principal Investigator of the NASA ProSEDS mission, and the first manager of NASA’s In-Space Propulsion Technology Project. He holds three patents and was thrice awarded

NASA's Exceptional Achievement Medal. He is a TEDx speaker, was the featured "interstellar explorer" in National Geographic's January 2013 issue, and is a member of the Advisory Board for The Journal of the British Interplanetary Society. Les and his wife, Carol, have two children and live in Madison, Alabama (a satellite community of Huntsville—the original "Rocket City, USA!").

**Greg Matloff** is a leading expert in possibilities for interstellar propulsion, especially near-Sun solar-sail trajectories that might ultimately enable interstellar travel, and is an astronomy professor with the physics department of New York City College of Technology, CUNY, a consultant with NASA Marshall Space Flight Center, a Hayden Associate of the American Museum of Natural History, and a Member of the International Academy of Astronautics. He coauthored with Les Johnson of NASA and C Bangs *Paradise Regained* (2009), *Living Off the Land in Space* (2007) and has authored *Deep-Space Probes* (edition 1: 2000 and edition 2: 2005). As well as authoring *More Telescope Power* (2002), *Telescope Power* (1993), and *The Urban Astronomer* (1991), he coauthored with Eugene Mallove *The Starflight Handbook* (1989). His papers on interstellar travel, the search for extraterrestrial artifacts, and methods of protecting Earth from asteroid impacts have been published in *JBIS*, *Acta Astronautica*, *Spaceflight*, *Space Technology*, *Journal of Astronautical Sciences*, and *Mercury*. His popular articles have appeared in many publications, including *Analog* and *IEEE Spectrum*. In 1998, he won a \$5000 prize in the international essay contest on ETI sponsored by the National Institute for Discovery Science. He served on a November 2007 panel organized by *Seed* magazine to brief Congressional staff on the possibilities of a sustainable, meaningful space program. Professor Matloff is a Fellow of the British Interplanetary Society. He has chaired many technical sessions and is listed in numerous volumes of *Who's Who*. In 2008, he was honored as Scholar on Campus at New York City College of Technology. In addition to his interstellar-travel research, he has contributed to SETI (the Search for Extraterrestrial Intelligence), modeling studies of human effects on Earth's atmosphere, interplanetary exploration concept analysis, alternative energy, in-space navigation, and the search for extrasolar planets. His Web site is [www.gregmatloff.com](http://www.gregmatloff.com).

**Part I**  
**Space Engines: Past and Present**

# 1

## An Historical Introduction to Space Propulsion

We'll never know when the dream of spaceflight first appeared in human consciousness, or to whom it first appeared. Perhaps it was in the sunbaked plains of Africa or on a high mountain pass in alpine Europe. One of our nameless ancestors looked up at the night sky and wondered at the moving lights in the heavens.

Was the Moon another world similar to Earth? And what were those bright lights—the ones we call planets<sup>1</sup>—that constantly change position against the background of distant stellar luminaries? Were they gods and goddesses, as suggested by the astrologers, or were they sisters to our Earth?

And if they were other worlds, could we perhaps emulate the birds, fly up to the deep heavens and visit them? Perhaps it was during a star-strewn, Moon-illuminated night by the banks of the river Nile or on the shores of the Mediterranean, as early sailing craft began to prepare for the morning trip upriver or the more hazardous sea voyage to the Cycladic Isles, that an imaginative soul, watching the pre-dawn preparations of the sailors, illuminated by those strange celestial beacons, might have wondered: If we can conquer the river and sea with our nautical technology, can we reach further? Can we visit the Moon? Can we view a planet close up?

It would be millennia before these dreams would be fulfilled. But they soon permeated the world of myth.

---

<sup>1</sup> “Planet” is a very old and popular word, coming from the Greek, which means *wanderer* or “wandering star”, namely, something like a star that moves on the *background* of *fixed stars* on the celestial sphere. Only in August 2006, the International Astronomical Union (<http://www.iau.org/>) adopted a scientific definition of planet. Accordingly, Pluto is now considered as a dwarf planet, and even it is the prototype of a set of bodies (in the solar system) called the *plutoids*, the orbits of which are beyond the planet Neptune (<http://www.iau.org/public/themes/pluto/>).

## 4 An Historical Introduction to Space Propulsion

### A BRONZE AGE ASTRONAUT

These early ponderings entered human mythology and legend. According to one Bronze Age tale, there was a brilliant engineer and architect named Daedalus who lived on the island of Crete about 4,000 years ago. For some offense, he and his son, Icarus, were imprisoned in a tower in Knossos, which was at that time the major city in Crete.

Being fed a diet of geese and illuminating their quarters with candles, Daedalus and Icarus accumulated a large supply of feathers and wax. Being a brilliant inventor, Daedalus fashioned two primitive hang gliders. Wings could be flapped so that the father and son could control their craft in flight.

It's not clear what their destination would be. One version of the story has the team attempting the long haul to Sicily. Another has them crossing the more reasonable 100-km distance to the volcanic island of Santorini. It's interesting to note that a human-powered aircraft successfully completed the hop between Crete and Santorini only a few years ago, thereby emulating a mythological air voyage of the distant past.

Daedalus, being more mature, was cautious and content to be the first aviator. The youthful, headstrong Icarus was somewhat more ambitious. Desiring to become the first astronaut, he ignored his father's pleas and climbed higher and higher in the Mediterranean sky. Unlike modern people, the Bronze Age Minoans had no concept of the limits of the atmosphere and the vastness of space. Icarus therefore flapped his wings, climbed higher, and finally approached the Sun. The Sun's heat melted the wax; the wings came apart. Icarus plunged to his death as his father watched in horror.

A few thousand years passed before the next fictional physical space flight was attempted. But during this time frame, several Hindu Yogi are reputed to have traveled in space by methods of astral projection.

### EARLY SCIENCE FICTION; THE FIRST ROCKET SCIENTIST

Starting with Pythagoras in the sixth century B.C., classical scholars began the arduous task of charting the motions of the Moon and planets, and constructing the first crude mathematical models of the cosmos. But they still had no idea that Earth's atmosphere did not pervade the universe. In what might be the first science fiction novel, creatively entitled *True History*, the second-century A.D. author Lucian of Samosata imagined an enormous waterspout carrying himself, inside the belly of a whale, up to the Moon. Other authors assumed that flocks of migratory geese (this time with all their feathers firmly attached) could be induced to carry fictional heroes to the celestial realm.

What is very interesting is that all of these classical authors chose to ignore an experiment taking place during the late pre-Christian era that would pave the way to eventual cosmic travel. Hero of Alexandria, in about 50 B.C., constructed a device he called an aeolipile. Water from a boiler was allowed to vent from pipes in a suspended sphere. The hot vented steam caused the sphere to spin, in a manner not unlike a rotary lawn sprinkler. Hero did not realize what his toy would lead to, nor did the early science fiction authors. Hero's aeolipile is the ancestor of the rocket.



Although Westerners ignored rocket technology for more than 1,000 years, this was not true in the East. As early as 900 A.D., crude sky rockets were in use in China, both as weapons of war and fireworks.

## PERHAPS HE WANTED TO MEET THE “MAN IN THE MOON”

Icarus may have been the first mythological astronaut, but the first legendary rocketeer was a Chinese Mandarin named Wan Hu. Around 1000 A.D., this wealthy man began to become world-weary. He asked his loyal retainers to carry him, on his throne, to a hillside where he could watch the rising Moon. After positioning their master facing the direction of moonrise, the loyal servants attached kites and strings of their most powerful gunpowder-filled skyrockets to their master’s throne.

As the Moon rose, Wan Hu gave the command. His retainers lit the fuse. They then ran for cover. Wan Hu disappeared in a titanic explosion. More than likely, his spaceflight was an elaborate and dramatic suicide. But who knows? Perhaps Wan Hu (or his fragments) did reach the upper atmosphere.

In the thirteenth century A.D., the Italian merchant-adventurer Marco Polo visited China. In addition to samples of pasta, the concept of the rocket returned west with him.

In post-Renaissance Europe, the imported rocket was applied as a weapon of war. It was not a very accurate weapon because the warriors did not know how to control its direction of flight. But the explosions of even misfiring rockets were terrifying to friend and foe alike.

By the nineteenth century, Britain’s Royal Navy had a squadron of warships equipped with rocket artillery. One of these so-called “rocket ships” bombarded America’s Fort McHenry during the War of 1812. Although the fort successfully resisted, the bombardment was immortalized as “the rocket’s red glare” in the American national anthem, “The Star Spangled Banner.”

The nineteenth century saw the first famous science fiction novels. French writer Jules Gabriel Verne wrote *From the Earth to the Moon* (1865), *Twenty Thousand Leagues Under the Sea* (1869), *Around the Moon* (1870), and *Around the World in Eighty Days* (1873). Particularly intriguing concepts can be found especially in the latter two books. In *Around the Moon*, Captain Nemo discovers and manages a mysterious (nonchemical) “energy”, which all activities and motion of Nautilus depend on. In *Around the World in Eighty Days*, Phileas Fogg commands the crew to use his boat structure materials (mainly wood and cloth) to fuel the boat steam boiler and continue toward England. A rocket ship that (apart from its propellant) burns its useless materials progressively is an advanced concept indeed! Jules Verne is still reputed to be one of the first great originators of the science fiction genre.

In 1902, French director Georges Méliès realized the cinematographic version of Verne’s novel *From the Earth to the Moon* in his film, *A Trip to the Moon*. Many other films describing men in space followed. For his film, Méliès invented the technique called “special effects.” Thus, science fiction cinema was born and consolidated in the first years of the twentieth century, just before the terrible destruction caused by World War I.

## 6 An Historical Introduction to Space Propulsion

It is surprising that science fiction authors of the seventeenth to nineteenth centuries continued to ignore the rocket's space travel potential, even after its military application. They employed angels, demons, flywheels, and enormous naval guns to break the bonds of Earth's gravity and carry their fictional heroes skyward. But (with the exception of Cyrano de Bergerac) they roundly ignored the pioneering efforts of the early rocket scientists.

### THE DAWN OF THE SPACE AGE

The first person to realize the potential of the rocket for space travel was neither an established scientist nor a popular science fiction author. He was an obscure secondary school mathematics teacher in a rural section of Russia. Konstantin E. Tsiolkovsky (Fig. 1.1), a native of Kaluga, Russia, may have begun to ponder the physics of rocket-propelled spaceflight as early as the 1870s. He began to publish his findings in obscure Russian periodicals before the end of the nineteenth century. Tsiolkovsky pioneered the theory of various aspects of space travel. He considered the potential of many chemical rocket fuels, introduced the concept of the staged rocket (which allows a rocket to shed excess weight as it climbs), and was the first to investigate the notion of an orbiting space station. As will be discussed in later chapters, Tsiolkovsky was one of the first to propose solar sailing as a non-rocket form of space travel. Soviet Russia's later spaceflight triumphs have a lot to do with this man. Late in his life, during the 1930s, his achievements were recognized by Soviet authorities. His public lectures inspired many young Russians to become interested in space travel. Tsiolkovsky, the recognized father of astronautics, died in Kaluga at the age of 78 on September 19, 1935. He received the last honors by state funeral from the Soviet government. In Kaluga, a museum honors his life and work.

But Tsiolkovsky's work also influenced scientists and engineers in other lands. Hermann Oberth (Fig. 1.2), a Romanian of German extraction, published his first scholarly work, *The Rocket into Interplanetary Space*, in 1923. Much to the author's surprise, this monograph became a best-seller and directly led to the formation of many national rocket societies. Before the Nazis came to power in Germany and ended the era of early German experimental cinema, Oberth created the first German space travel special effects for the classic film *Frau Im Mond* (Woman in the Moon).

Members of the German Rocket Society naively believed that the Nazi authorities were seriously interested in space travel. By the early 1940s, former members of this idealistic organization had created the first rocket capable of reaching the fringes of outer space—the V2. With a fueled mass of about 14,000 kg and a height of about 15 m, this rocket had an approximate range of 400 km and could reach an altitude of about 100 km. The payload of this war weapon reached its target at a supersonic speed of about 5,000 km/h.

Instead of being used as a prototype interplanetary booster, the early V2s (Fig. 1.3) rained down upon London, causing widespread property damage and casualties.

Constructed by slave laborers in underground factories, these terror weapons had the potential to change the outcome of World War II. Fortunately, they did not.

An enlarged piloted version of the V2, called the A-10, was on the drawing boards at war's end. The A-10 could have boosted a hypersonic bomber on a trajectory that skipped

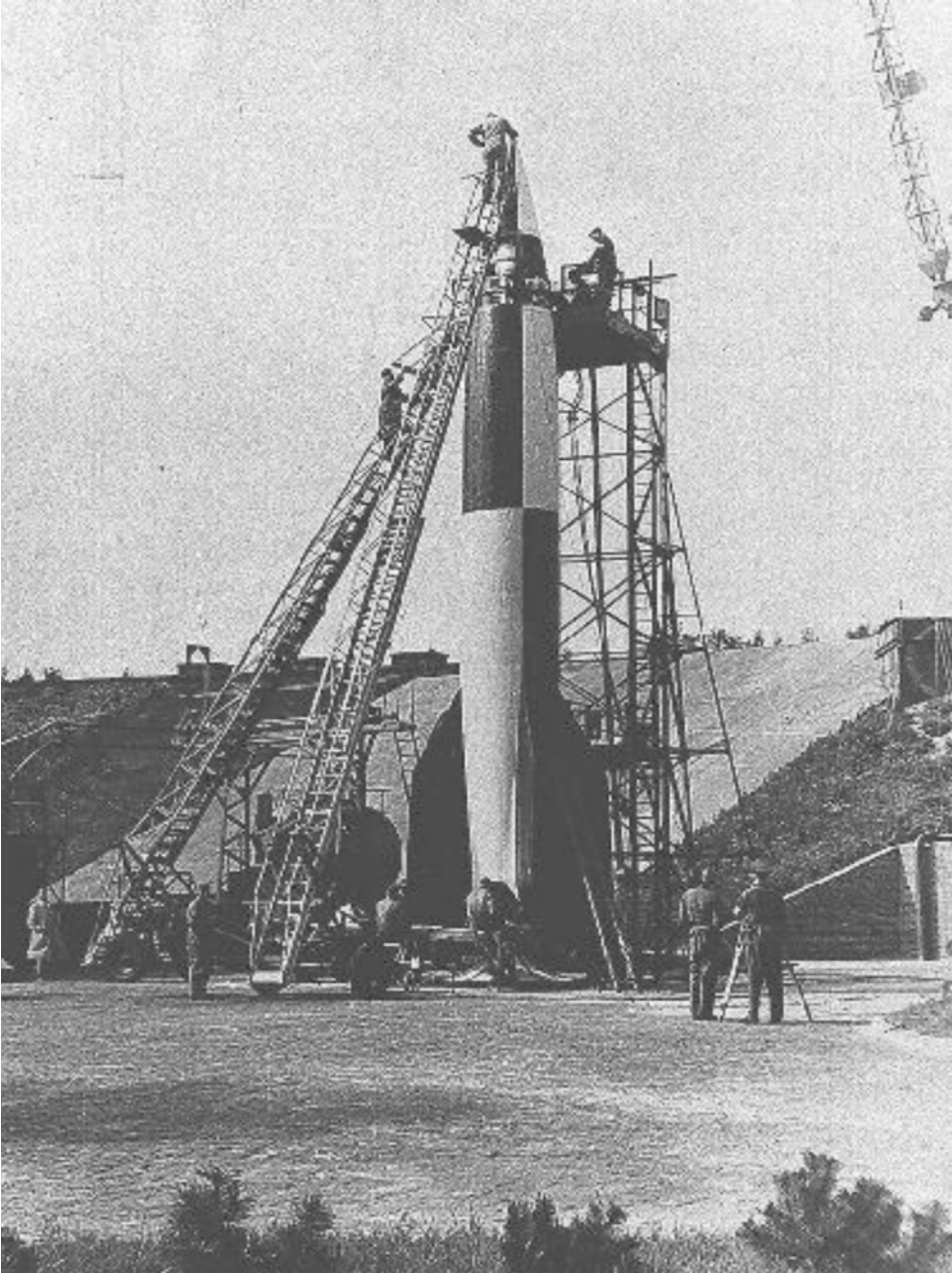


1.1 Romanian postage stamp with image of Tsiolkovsky, scanned by Ivan Kosinar (From Physics-Related Stamps Web site: [www.physik.uni-frankfort.de/~jr/physstamps.html](http://www.physik.uni-frankfort.de/~jr/physstamps.html))



1.2 Hermann Oberth (Courtesy of NASA)

across the upper atmosphere. Manhattan could have been bombed in 1946 or 1947, more than five decades before the terrorist attacks of September 11, 2001. After dropping their bombs, German skip-bomber flight crews might have turned southward toward Argentina, where they would be safely out of harm's way until the end of the war.



1.3 German V2 on launch pad (Courtesy of NASA)



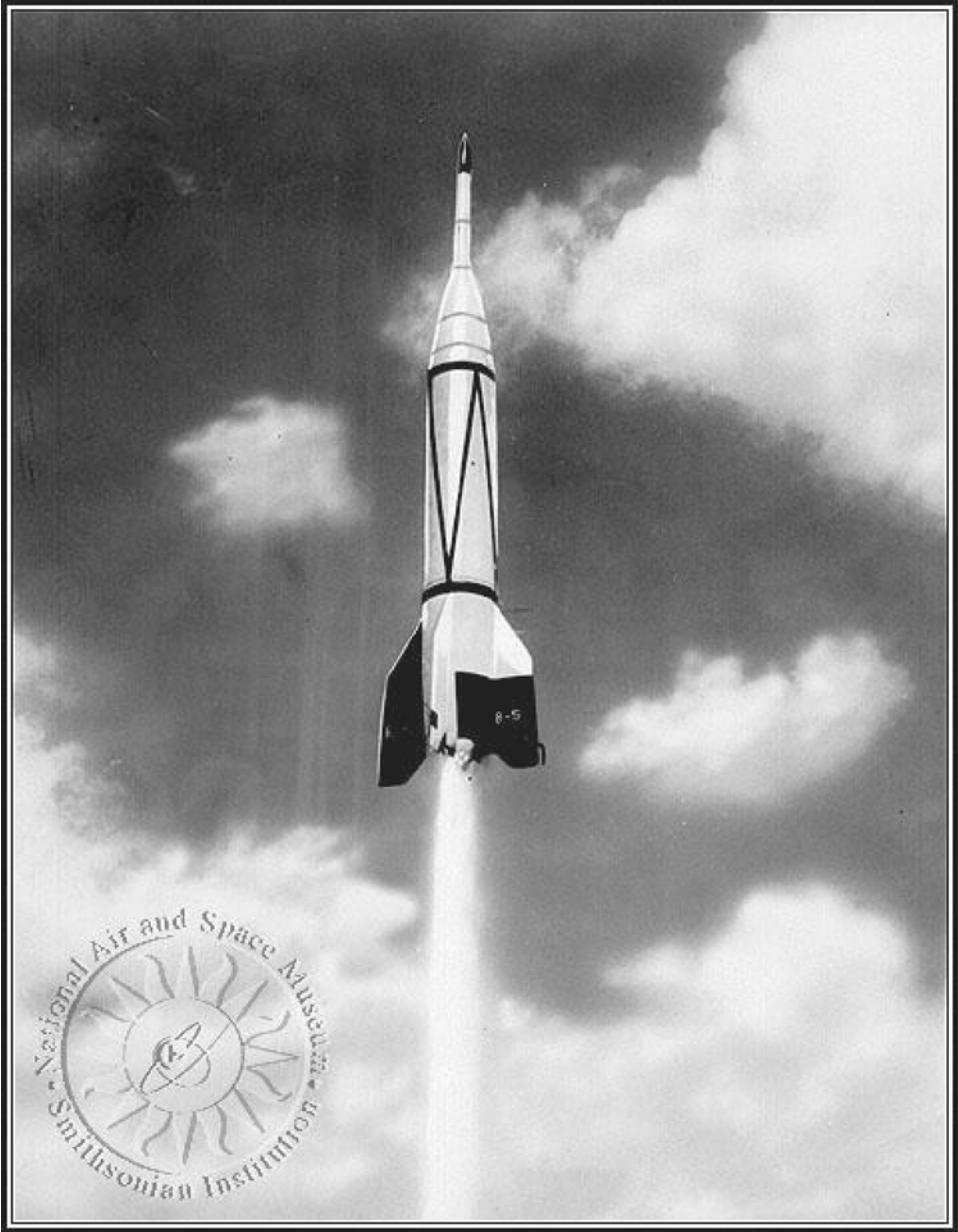
1.4 Robert Goddard (Courtesy of NASA)

But America had its own rocket pioneer, who perhaps could have confronted this menace from the skies. Robert Goddard (Fig. 1.4), a physics professor at Clark University in Massachusetts, began experimenting with liquid-fueled rockets shortly after World War I.

Goddard began his research with a 1909 study of the theory of multistage rockets. He received more than 200 patents, beginning in 1914, on many phases of rocket design and operation. He is most famous, though, for his experimental work. Funded by the Guggenheim Foundation, he established an early launch facility near Roswell, New Mexico. During the 1920s and 1940s, he conducted liquid-fueled rocket tests of increasing sophistication. One of his rockets reached the then-unheard-of height of 3,000 m! Goddard speculated about small rockets that could reach the Moon. Although he died in August 1945 before his ideas could be fully realized, his practical contributions led to the development of American rocketry.

In the postwar era, the competition between the United States and the Soviet Union heated up. One early American experiment added an upper stage to a captured German V2 (Fig. 1.5). This craft reached a height of over 400 km. An American-produced V2 derivative, the Viking (Fig. 1.6) was the mid-1950s precursor to the rockets that eventually carried American satellites into space.

10 An Historical Introduction to Space Propulsion



1.5 A two-stage V2, launched by the United States in the postwar era (Courtesy of NASA)



1.6 A V2 derivative: the American Navy Viking rocket (Courtesy of NASA)

## 12 An Historical Introduction to Space Propulsion

After Russia orbited Sputnik-1 in 1957, space propulsion emerged from the back burner. Increasingly larger and more sophisticated chemical rockets were developed—first by the major space powers, and later by China, some European countries, Japan, India, and Israel. Increasingly more massive spacecraft, all launched by liquid or solid chemical boosters, have orbited Earth, and reached the Moon, Mars, and Venus. Robots have completed the preliminary reconnaissance of all major solar system worlds and several smaller ones. Humans have lived in space for periods longer than a year and trod the dusty paths of Luna (the Roman goddess of the Moon).

We have learned some new space propulsion techniques—low-thrust solar-electric rockets slowly accelerate robotic probes to velocities that chemical rockets are incapable of achieving. Robotic interplanetary explorers apply an elaborate form of gravitational billiards to accelerate without rockets at the expense of planets' gravitational energy. And we routinely make use of Earth's atmosphere and that of Mars to decelerate spacecraft from orbital or interplanetary velocities as they descend for landing.

But many of the dreams of early space travel enthusiasts remain unfulfilled. We cannot yet sail effortlessly through the void or tap interplanetary resources; our space outposts can only be maintained at great expense. And the far stars remain beyond our grasp. For humans to move further afield in the interplanetary realm as we are preparing to do in the early years of the twenty-first century, we need to examine alternatives to the chemical and electric rocket. The solar-photon sail—the subject of this book—is one approach that may help us realize the dream of a cosmic civilization.

### FURTHER READING

Many sources address the prehistory and early history of space travel. Two classics are the following: Carsbie C. Adams, *Space Flight: Satellites, Spaceships, Space Stations, Space Travel Explained* (1st ed.), McGraw-Hill, New York, 1958. <http://www.rarebookcellar.com/>; and Arthur C. Clarke, *The Promise of Space*, Harper & Row, New York, 1968.

The Minoan myth of Daedalus and Icarus is also widely available. See, for example, F. R. B. Godolphin, ed., *Great Classical Myths*, The Modern Library, New York, 1964.

Many popular periodicals routinely review space travel progress. Two of these are the following: *Spaceflight*, published by the British Interplanetary Society; and *Ad Astra*, published by the US National Space Society. Recently, the monthly newsletter Principium of the Institute for Interstellar Studies (<http://www.i4is.org/>) hosts articles on deep space propulsion, spacecraft concepts and designs, and even interviews distinguished personalities among the interstellar community.



# 2

## The Rocket: How It Works in Space

The rocket is a most remarkable device. Its early inventors could not have guessed that it would ultimately evolve into a machine capable of propelling robotic and human payloads through the vacuum of space. In fact, the rocket actually works better in a vacuum than in air! To understand rocket propulsion, we must first digress a bit into the physics of Isaac Newton.

### NEWTONIAN MECHANICS AND ROCKET FUNDAMENTALS

A quirky and brilliant physicist, Isaac Newton framed, during the seventeenth century, the laws governing the motion of macroscopic objects moving at velocities, relative to the observer, well below the speed of light (almost 300,000 km/s). This discipline is called “kinematics” since it deals with motion in itself, not the causes of it. This type of physics, aptly called “Newtonian mechanics” works quite well at describing the behavior of almost all aspects common to everyday human experience, even space travel. It does not, however, accurately describe the motion of objects that are moving very fast.

To investigate kinematics of high-velocity objects moving at 20,000 km/s or faster, we need to apply the results of Einstein’s theory of special relativity. To consider the motion (and other properties) of microscopic objects—those much smaller than a pinhead or dust grain—we need to apply the principles of quantum mechanics. Both relativity and quantum mechanics were developed three centuries after Newton.

For macro-sized rockets moving at velocities measured in kilometers or tens of kilometers per second, Newtonian physics is quite adequate. The most relevant aspects of kinematics to rocket propulsion are inertia, velocity, acceleration, and linear momentum. We will consider each of these in turn.

### INERTIA—OBJECTS RESIST CHANGES IN MOTION

Iron Age scholars such as Aristotle assumed that objects move the way they do because such motion is in their nature. Although not quantifiable, such a conclusion was an improvement over the earlier Bronze Age notion that a deity (or deities) controlled the motions of all objects.

## 14 The Rocket: How It Works in Space

Newton's first step in quantifying the concept of motion was to introduce the principle of inertia. All mass contains inertia—the greater the mass, the greater the inertia. Essentially, an object with mass or inertia tends to resist changes in its motion. The only way to alter the object's velocity is to act upon the object with a force. This principle is often referred to as Newton's first law; it has represented the birth of “dynamics:” namely, the description of a body's motion with the inclusion of the causes that determine it.

### FORCE AND A MOST INFLUENTIAL EQUATION

As a point of fact, what really separated Newton from earlier kinematic researchers was his elegant and most successful mathematical representation of the force concept. No longer would forces be in the province of mysterious (and perhaps) unknowable essences or natures; no longer would gods or goddesses move things at their whim. Instead, an entire technological civilization would arise based on such simple, and easily verifiable equations as Newton's relationship among force ( $F$ ), mass ( $M$ ) and acceleration ( $A$ ).

If we are working in the international units, force is measured in units of newtons (N), mass is in kilograms (kg), and acceleration—the rate at which velocity changes with time—is in meters per squared second ( $m/s^2$ ). The famous force equation, which is called Newton's second law, is written as follows:

$$F = M A, \tag{2.1}$$

or Force = Mass times Acceleration.

Let's consider what this means in practice. If a 10 newton force acts on a 1 kg mass, Eq. (2.1) reveals that the force will accelerate the mass by  $10 m/s^2$ . This force will just lift the object from the ground if it is directed upward, since Earth's gravitational acceleration ( $g$ ) is  $9.8 m/s^2$ . If the same force acts upon an object with a mass of 10 kg, the acceleration of the mass imparted by the force will be  $1 m/s^2$ .

To apply Newton's second law successfully to any mode of propulsion, you must do two things: maximize the force and minimize the mass of the object you wish to accelerate.<sup>1</sup>

### ACTIONS AND REACTIONS

Forces, velocities, and accelerations are representatives of a type of quantity called “vectors.” Unlike “scalars,” which only have magnitude, vector quantities have both magnitude and direction.

We unconsciously apply the concepts of scalars and vectors all the time. Let's say that we wish to fly between London and New York. We first book a flight on an Airbus or Boeing jetliner, since such a craft can cruise at speeds of around 1,000 km/h. But to minimize travel time between London and New York, we book a flight traveling in the direction of New York City—a jetliner traveling in the direction of Sydney, for example, would not do much to minimize our travel time.

<sup>1</sup> In space propulsion, this is a very difficult task indeed.

Now let's examine the case of a baseball or cricket player hitting a ball with a bat. The bat is swung to impart a force on the ball, which (if all goes well from the viewpoint of the batter or bowler) flies off in the desired direction at high speed. As high speed videotapes reveal, bats sometimes crack during the interaction. This is because a "reaction" force is imparted to the bat by the struck ball.

If you've ever fired a rifle or handgun, you've experienced action and reaction force pairs. An explosion accelerates the low mass bullet out the gun muzzle at high speed. This is the action force. The recoil of the weapon against your shoulder—which can be painful and surprising if you are not properly braced against it—is the reaction force.

Newton's third law considers action–reaction force pairs. For every action, Newton states, there is an equal-in-magnitude and opposite-in-direction reaction, always.

Jets and rockets are representative "action–reaction" propulsion systems. In a jet or chemical rocket, a controlled and contained explosion accelerates fuel to a high velocity. The ejection of this fuel from the engine nozzle is the action member of the force pair. The reaction is an equal force accelerating the engine (and structures connected to it) in the direction opposite the exhaust.

The trick with a successful jet or rocket is to minimize structural mass (and payload) and maximize fuel exhaust velocity.

## LINEAR MOMENTUM: A CONSERVED QUANTITY

As first-year college physics students learn, Newton's third law can be used to demonstrate that linear momentum ( $P$ ) is conserved in any physical system. Linear momentum is a vector quantity, which is defined as the product of mass ( $M$ ) and velocity ( $V$ ) and is written  $P = MV$ . If the chemical reaction in the rocket's combustion chamber increases the expelled fuel's momentum by  $P_f$ , conservation of linear momentum requires that the rocket's momentum changes by an equal amount as that of the expelled fuel, and that this change is oppositely directed to the change in fuel momentum.

In this text, the word *fuel* is used in a general context for simplicity. Actually, in most *chemical* rocket engines, there is some substance (the proper *fuel* that has to be burned, and some other substance (the *oxidizer*) that must be present to burn the fuel. Oxidizers contain oxygen, which is required for something to burn, hence its name. (Such substances altogether are named a *propellant*, in general.) This chemical reaction is called the *combustion*. Most of the energy released by such a reaction is found as kinetic energy of the reaction products (which are different from the propellant's molecules). They flow through a nozzle in gaseous form and achieve a final supersonic speed (the exhaust or ejection speed) with which they are exhausted away. Considered as a whole, this gas represents the reaction mass generating thrust. In solid rocket engines, fuel and oxidizer are appropriately mixed together and stored in the combustion chamber. In liquid rocket engines, fuel and oxidizer are kept separated in their tanks; they are channeled into the combustion chamber where they burn, producing the rocket's exhaust

## 16 The Rocket: How It Works in Space

Propellant and rocket are considered as an isolated system, which is only strictly true in the depths of space. Closer to home, atmospheric air resistance tends to decrease rocket efficiency, since linear momentum of air molecules encountered by the rocket changes during the interaction. Here, the atmosphere must be considered as part of the system, which includes rocket and propellant.

Close to a gravitating body, like near Earth's surface, a component of the total force must always be directed upward, so the rocket can remain in flight. Even in interplanetary space, the gravitational fields of Earth, Moon and Sun must be taken into account for estimating rocket performance.

### THE ROCKET EQUATION

If one applies elementary calculus to propellant-rocket linear momentum conservation and sets up the problem correctly, it is easy to derive the classic equation of rocket performance. We will not derive this important equation here, but will instead consider its application.

First some definitions: the mass ratio (MR) is the quotient of the total rocket mass at ignition (including fuel) to the mass of the vehicle when the propellant gauge is on Empty. Let's say, for example, that a particular rocket has a mass at ignition of 1 million kg. When the propellant has all been exhausted, the rocket's mass is 100,000 kg; hence, this vehicle has a mass ratio of 1 million/100,000, which is exactly 10, or  $MR=10$ .

Another significant quantity is the exhaust velocity of the rocket engine as measured by a sensor traveling with the vehicle,  $V_e$ . The final quantity expressed in the rocket equation is  $\Delta V$ , which is total change of the rocket's velocity or velocity increment, measured just as all the propellant has been exhausted. All of these symbols are combined in the rocket equation as follows:

$$MR = e^{\Delta V/V_e} \quad (2.2)$$

where  $e$  is approximately equal to 2.718 and is a universal constant called the "base of natural logarithms."

It is not necessary to be a rocket scientist or calculus whiz to appreciate this result. Let's say that the designers of a rocket wish the velocity increment to exactly equal the exhaust velocity. In this case, MR is 2.718 raised to the first power, or simply 2.718. For every kilogram of unfueled vehicle (payload, engines, structure, etc.), 1.718 kg of propellant are required.

This doesn't seem so bad, but let's examine what happens if we desire a velocity increment exactly twice the exhaust velocity. Now, MR is approximately equal to the square of 2.718, or about 7.4. For every kilogram of unfueled vehicle, 6.4 kg of propellant are required.

As a final illustration, consider what happens when the velocity increment is exactly three times the exhaust velocity. Now, MR becomes about 20, which means that approximately 19 kg of propellant are required for every kilogram of unfueled rocket.

This rapid, nonlinear increase of propellant requirement with velocity increment is called an “exponential” increase. This exponential increase demonstrates the impracticality of constructing a rocket to achieve much more than two or three times the exhaust velocity, particularly if the vehicle must overcome Earth’s gravity to reach a destination in outer space.

One of the most energetic chemical combinations known is the liquid hydrogen/liquid oxygen combusted aboard both the American Space Shuttle and the European Ariane launchers. The highest exhaust velocity for engines of this type is about 4.5 km/s.

If we desire to place a payload in low Earth orbit (LEO), say a few hundred kilometers above Earth’s surface, the spacecraft must be accelerated to about 8 km/s. If atmospheric drag during the early part of the rocket’s climb reduces effective exhaust velocity to about 4 km/s,  $\Delta V/V_e$  is equal to 2. From the rocket equation, 6.4 kg of rocket fuel is required for every kilogram of unfueled vehicle (engines, structure, and payload). In reality, things are worse because a launcher, increasing its speed, undergoes atmospheric drag. (This drag is nothing more than friction between the rocket and the atmosphere.) The rocket’s total  $\Delta V$  is higher by roughly 20–25 %, depending on the specific launcher design and the final orbit of payload into which it is injected.

To achieve LEO with a single-stage rocket would require advances in materials science. Strong, low mass structures would be required for vehicle components that must withstand the high accelerations of ascent to orbit. To date, the best that has been accomplished along these lines is the American Atlas missile and space launcher of the 1960s. The Atlas had an extraordinarily thin skin. If it weren’t for the pressure of the onboard fuel, the Atlas would have collapsed on the launch pad under the influence of Earth’s gravity. But even using this extreme measure, the Atlas was not quite a single-stage-to-orbit launcher. External boosters were used during the initial ascent phase and discarded when emptied.

If we desire a single-stage-to-orbit shuttle that is also reusable, the problem becomes even more daunting. Because of the equipment necessary to ensure reentry, the payload fraction of such craft would likely be very small, even accounting for great advances in materials and structures.

## STAGED ROCKETS

To squeeze efficiencies out of our space launchers, many of the world’s space ports are located near the equator. For a west-to-east launch direction, Earth’s rotation provides about 0.46 km/s to the rocket, which eases the problem a bit. But geography can do little to alleviate the basic economics problem of space travel—the exhaust velocities of existing and feasible chemical launchers are simply too low!

One way around this, albeit an expensive one, is to utilize rocket stages. Basically, a big rocket lifts off from Earth’s surface. Its payload consists of a smaller rocket. At burnout, the big rocket falls away and the small rocket takes over.

This approach allows us to utilize chemical rockets to achieve LEO, to escape Earth (which requires a velocity increment of about 11 km/s), and to fly even faster. But there is a penalty—the payload fraction decreases dramatically as the number of stages increases and reliability issues become more pressing.

## 18 The Rocket: How It Works in Space

Let's consider a simple example of a 2-stage rocket. Assume that each stage has a rocket with an exhaust velocity of 4 km/s and that the mass ratio of each stage is an identical 7.4. This means that at first-stage burnout, the vehicle is moving at 4 km/s. At second-stage burnout, the vehicle's velocity is up to 8 km/s, more than enough to achieve Earth orbit.

Next assume that the mass of the first stage is 100,000 kg, not including fuel, and that 20 % of this mass is payload—the second stage in this case. The fuel required for the first stage is 620,000 kg.

At first-stage burnout, the second stage ignites. At ignition, this stage has a mass that is 20 % of 100,000 kg, or 20,000 kg. But to achieve the required burnout velocity, the mass ratio of the second stage is 7.4, identical to that of the first stage. At its burnout, the second stage therefore has a mass of about 2,700 kg. If the payload fraction of the second stage is 0.2, identical to that of the first stage, about 540 kg of useful payload achieves Earth orbit.

Remember that the total mass of the spacecraft on the launch pad was 720,000 kg including fuel. Less than 0.1 % of the on-pad vehicle mass is useful payload.

Real rockets do somewhat better, fortunately, than this simple example. The on-pad mass of Europe's Ariane 5 is about 740,000 kg. This launcher can inject about 10,000 kg into low-Earth orbit and send a bit more than half that mass toward geosynchronous orbit. But the economics are staggering—a commercial communications satellite might mass about 1 % of the vehicle complex that propels it toward geosynchronous Earth orbit.

Very recently, another European launcher named VEGA finished its test flights and is beginning its operational phase, at least 10 launches (within 2015) to LEOs with scientific satellites as payload. The VEGA program,<sup>2</sup> to which Italy is the major contributor in terms of design, technical management and manufacturing, is a four-stage launcher. The first three stages are thrust by solid-propellant rockets, whereas the fourth one is a rocket with liquid (but not cryogenic) bipropellant engine. Its total mass at liftoff amounts to 137 metric tons, and is capable of delivering scientific spacecraft weighing from 1.1 to 2.3 tonnes to LEOs—from 300 to 1,500 km in altitude, and from 5 to 90° in orbital inclination over the Earth equator. The orbital altitude and inclination, chosen by the (institutional or private) customer, determines the maximum weight of the satellite (similarly to other launchers). Thus, the maximum payload fraction takes on  $2.3/137=0.0168$ , or 1.68 %. This is a high value indeed for non-cryogenic chemical engines, the exhaust velocities of which range from 2.75 to 3.09 km/s, approximately. This payload performance is mainly due to the high-tech materials of its structures (very light). Using non-cryogenic engines with advanced structural materials for putting scientific payloads into operational LEOs reduces the launch costs remarkably.

---

<sup>2</sup>The reader is suggested visiting:

(1) <http://www.elv.it/en/> and its pages,

(2) [http://www.russianspaceweb.com/vega\\_lv.html](http://www.russianspaceweb.com/vega_lv.html)

(3) [http://www.esa.int/Our\\_Activities/Launchers/Launch\\_vehicles/Vega](http://www.esa.int/Our_Activities/Launchers/Launch_vehicles/Vega)

for broad information on the VEGA launch vehicle.

## CHEMICAL ROCKETS AND THEIR ALTERNATIVES

The basic components of a typical chemical rocket are shown schematically in Fig. 2.1. In the chemical rockets, the payload is usually attached above the fuel and oxidizer tanks. A mixture of fuel and oxidizer is delivered to the combustion chamber and then ignited in what can only be called a “controlled explosion.” The product of this high-energy (exothermic) chemical reaction is squirted out the nozzle at the base of the combustion chamber as exhaust. In a reaction to the exhaust’s explosive release, the rocket accelerates in the opposite direction.

In the most energetic chemical rockets, the reactants are hydrogen ( $H_2$ ) fuel and oxygen ( $O_2$ ), which serves as the oxidizer. For those readers a bit rusty in chemistry, the subscript “2” means that each oxygen or hydrogen molecule contains two oxygen and hydrogen atoms, respectively.

In many fuel/oxidizer mixtures, a device much like an auto’s spark plug is required to ignite the reactants. Hydrogen and oxygen react spontaneously, however. The product of this reaction is ordinary water ( $H_2O$ ) and the reaction can be expressed as follows:



In this balanced chemical reaction, two hydrogen molecules combine with one oxygen molecule to produce two molecules of water vapor.

Some rockets use liquid fuels, such as the mixture just considered. Others, such as the space shuttle’s solid boosters, burn solid fuels. There are advantages and disadvantages to both approaches.

In general, liquid fuel combinations are more energetic. But they are more difficult to store, both on Earth and in space. Many liquid rockets can be stopped and restarted. Like a skyrocket, a solid rocket once ignited burns until all fuel is exhausted.

Lots of engineering effort goes into optimizing the components shown in Fig. 2.1, not to mention the complex plumbing connecting them. Engineers try to reduce the mass and the complexity of the payload faring that protects payloads as the rocket ascends through the atmosphere. Fuel tank mass is also minimized—as mentioned earlier, some fuel tanks (like those of the American Atlas boosters that orbited the Mercury astronauts) are supported by the pressure of the on-board fuel.

Combustion chambers must be low in mass, temperature resistant, and able to withstand the pressures of the expanding, ignited fuel mixtures. Millions of euros, dollars, and rubles have been expended on nozzle optimization, in an effort to squeeze the last few meters per second out of a rocket’s exhaust velocity.

To overcome some of the limitations of the chemical rocket, various nonchemical rockets have been experimented with. If you don’t mind a certain amount of radioactive fallout in your environment, you might consider the nuclear-thermal rocket. Ground tested by the US during the 1960s, these rockets heat a working fluid (usually water or hydrogen) to an exhaust velocity as much as twice that of the best chemical rocket. Reusable, single-stage-to-orbit nuclear-thermal shuttles are a possibility.

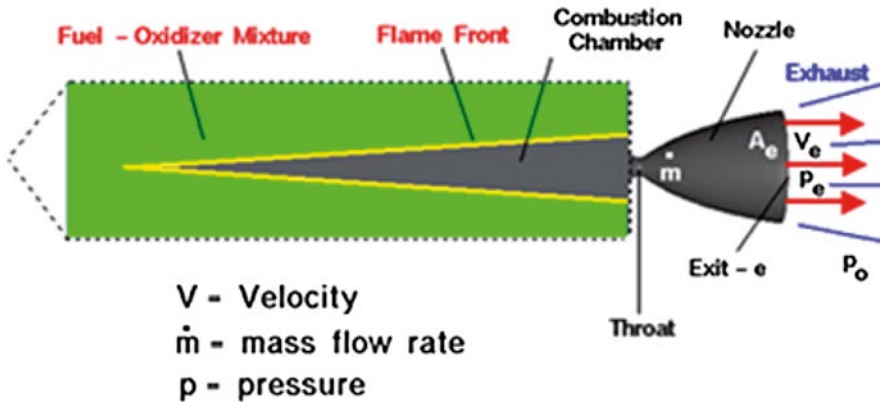
If you can’t abide the idea of nuclear rockets streaking through the atmosphere, some of the nuclear thermal rocket’s technology is applicable in the solar-thermal rocket. In this

## The Basic Components of a Chemical Rocket



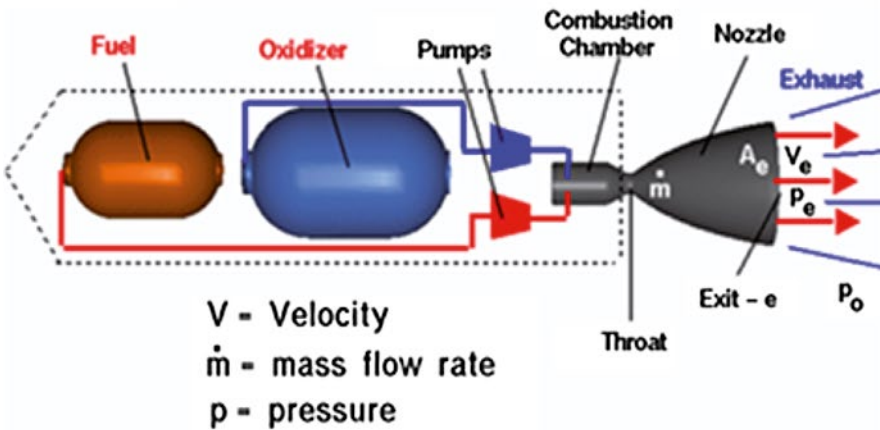
### Solid Rocket Engine

Glenn  
Research  
Center



### Liquid Rocket Engine

Glenn  
Research  
Center



$$\text{Thrust} = F = \dot{m} V_e + (p_e - p_0) A_e$$

2.1 Main components of chemical engines (Courtesy of NASA)



low-thrust device suited for in-space, but not ground-to-orbit, application, sunlight is focused on the working fluid, which then squirts through a nozzle at an exhaust velocity comparable to that of the nuclear-thermal rocket. (Thrust, the “action” force of the rocket, is measured in newtons and is defined as the product of the fuel flow rate in kilograms per second and the exhaust velocity in meters per second. A rocket must have a thrust greater than the rocket’s weight in order to rise from the ground.)

Another low-thrust possibility is to use collected solar energy or an on-board nuclear reactor to ionize and accelerate fuel to exhaust velocities in excess of 30 km/s. Several versions of these solar-electric or ion drives have seen application in robotic lunar and interplanetary missions.

From the point of view of exhaust velocity, the ultimate rocket is the nuclear-pulse drive. Nuclear-pulse rockets, which work well on paper, would be most dramatic to watch in flight since their fuel consists of nuclear charges (i.e., nuclear bombs) ignited a distance behind the craft. Fusion charges (hydrogen bombs) and even matter/antimatter combinations could conceivably propel such craft. The next chapter considers the potential and limitations of various chemical and nonchemical applications of the rocket principle.

## FURTHER READING

Many details of chemical, electric and nuclear rocket propulsion are reviewed in monographs such as:

1. Martin J. L. Turner, *Rocket and Spacecraft Propulsion*, 2nd ed., Springer-Praxis, Chichester, UK, 2005.
2. T. W. Lee, *Aerospace Propulsion*, John Wiley & Sons, Ltd., 2014.

# 3

## Rocket Problems and Limitations

Although the rockets described in the previous chapter have opened the solar system to preliminary human reconnaissance and exploration, there are severe limitations on rocket performance. This chapter focuses on these limits and what we may ultimately expect from rocket-propelled space travel.

### LIMITS OF THE CHEMICAL ROCKET

A common science fiction theme during the 1950s was the exploration of the Moon by single-stage, reusable chemical rockets. Sadly, this has not come to pass. And because of the fact that the exhaust velocities of even the best chemical rockets may never exceed 5 km/s, this dream may always remain within the realm of fantasy.

During the late 1960s and early 1970s, the United States launched nine crews of three astronauts each to lunar orbit or the Moon's surface. An appreciation of the chemical rocket's severe limitations for large scale application beyond low Earth orbit can be arrived at by consideration of these NASA Apollo expeditions.

Everything about Apollo's Saturn V booster is gargantuan. Standing on its launch pad, this craft was 110.6 m high, taller than the Statue of Liberty. It had a fully fueled prelaunch mass of about 3 million kg. Of this enormous mass, only 118,000 kg reached low Earth orbit and 47,000 kg departed on a translunar trajectory. But the Apollo command modules that safely returned the three-astronaut crews and their cargoes of Moon rocks to Earth had heights of only 3.66 m and diameters of 3.9 m.

The Apollo lunar expeditions were a splendid human and technological achievement. But they did not lead to the economic development or settlement of the Moon. In fact, the economics of lunar travel using chemical rocketry has been compared with a European traveler who wishes to visit the US. Being exceptionally wealthy, she commissions the construction of her own private, full-scale Airbus, for an investment of a billion euros or so. She flies the aircraft to New York, parachutes out above the Empire State Building, and allows the entire aircraft to plunge into the Atlantic Ocean. You could not afford a great many intercontinental visits if that was the only way to go!

By pushing chemical rocket technology and materials science to their limits (perhaps in commercial efforts directed by those promoting space tourism), we may ultimately produce a reusable two-stage or even single-stage Earth-to-orbit shuttlecraft. But payload will be limited. Orbital construction will be required if we wish to venture further afield in the cosmic realm. Chemical rocket costs will severely limit the number of lunar and interplanetary missions fielded by even the wealthiest nations.

### **NUCLEAR AND SOLAR THERMAL ROCKETS: AN IMPROVEMENT WITH ISSUES**

Let's look at various nonchemical rocket approaches in an attempt to overcome some of these limitations. Two options are the nuclear thermal or solar thermal rocket, in which the energy output of a nuclear reactor or solar collector is used to heat a working fluid (e.g., hydrogen) to a high exhaust velocity (Fig. 3.1). If the working fluid is hydrogen, exhaust velocities of 8–10 km/s are possible, about twice those of the best performing chemical rockets.

During the 1960s, nuclear thermal rockets such as NASA's KIWI (Fig. 3.2) were subject to elaborate ground tests. They are high-thrust devices and are at least as reliable as their chemical brethren. Why haven't we seen the emergence of single-stage-to-orbit nuclear thermal shuttles?

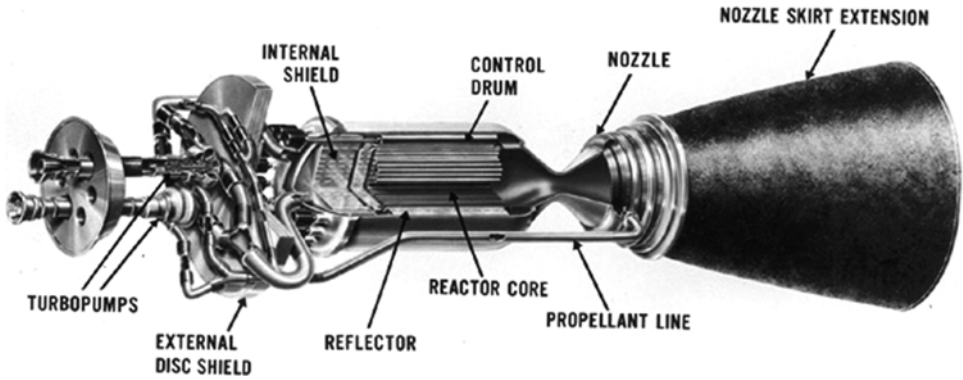
One issue with this technology is environmental pollution. Because of mass limitations, no ground launched economical nuclear rocket could be completely shielded. As a point of fact, a lot of additional mass has to be employed for blocking all nuclear radiations. Invariably, some radioactive fallout will escape to the atmosphere.

Another problem is nuclear proliferation. If many governmental and private space agencies began to employ this technology for dozens of launches per year, what type of security measures might be required to protect the nuclear fuel from terrorists and agents of rogue states?

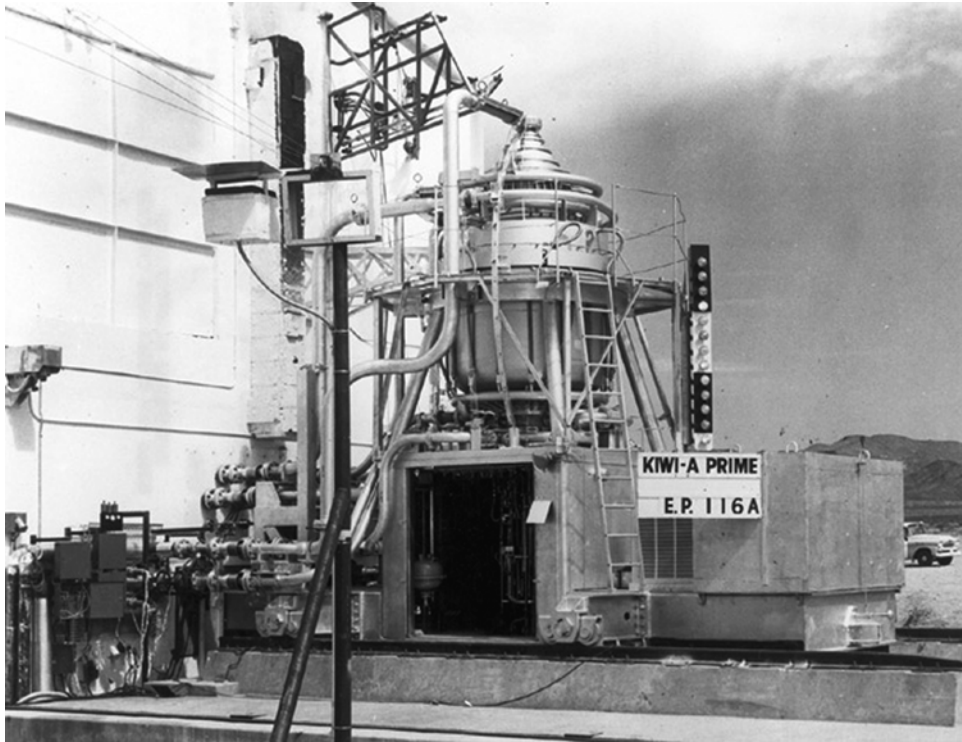
It would be possible to launch the reactor in a safe, inert mode, and turn it on well above Earth's atmosphere. Although this pollution-free option will do little to reduce launch costs, it might have the potential to improve the economics of lunar and interplanetary travel.

There are two problems with this approach. First and foremost is the difficulty of storing the required hydrogen for long durations in the space environment. This low molecular mass gas tends to evaporate rapidly into the space environment unless elaborate (and massive) precautions are taken. Nuclear rocket designers could switch to fuels other than hydrogen. But exhaust velocity decreases with increasing fuel molecular mass, and the advantage of nuclear over chemical would soon vanish.

A second problem involves nuclear fission reactor technology. While it is certainly possible to launch an inert reactor toward space to minimize radioactive pollution from a catastrophic launch accident, it is not possible to turn the reactor off completely once fission has been initiated. A nuclear thermal propelled interplanetary mission would have to contend with the problem of disposing spent nuclear stages in safe solar orbits.



3.1 The NASA NERVA nuclear-thermal rocket concept (Courtesy of NASA)



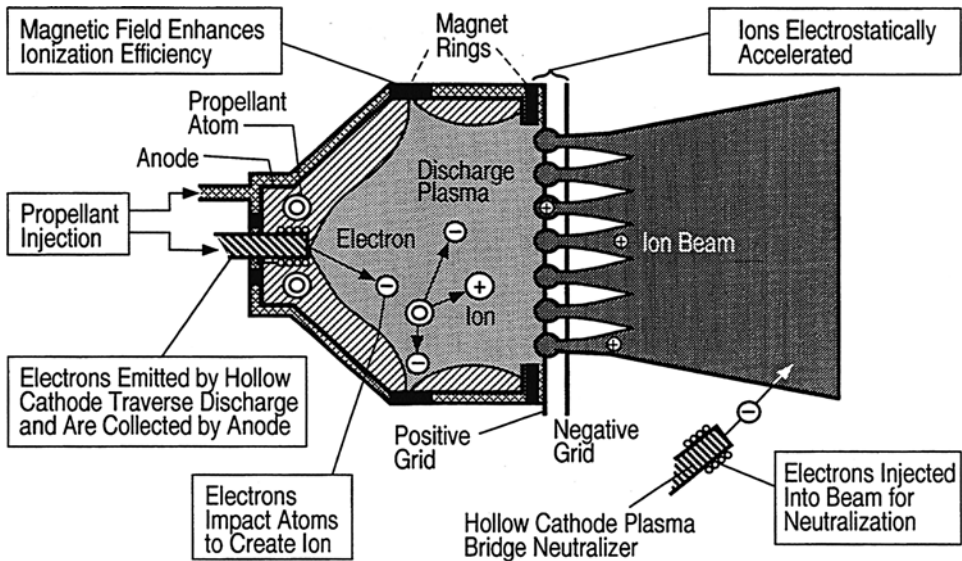
3.2 The NASA KIWI nuclear-thermal rocket reactor on its test stand (Courtesy of NASA)

The solar thermal rocket replaces the reactor with a solar concentrator such as a thin film Fresnel lens. Although exhaust velocities for solar thermal rockets fueled with molecular hydrogen are comparable to those of nuclear thermal hydrogen rockets, the diffuse nature of solar energy renders them low thrust devices. No solar thermal rocket will ever lift itself off the ground. Typical accelerations for these devices, in fact, are of the order of 0.01 Earth surface gravities. Major applications of this technology might be for orbital transfer—like the economical delivery of communications satellites to geosynchronous Earth orbit.

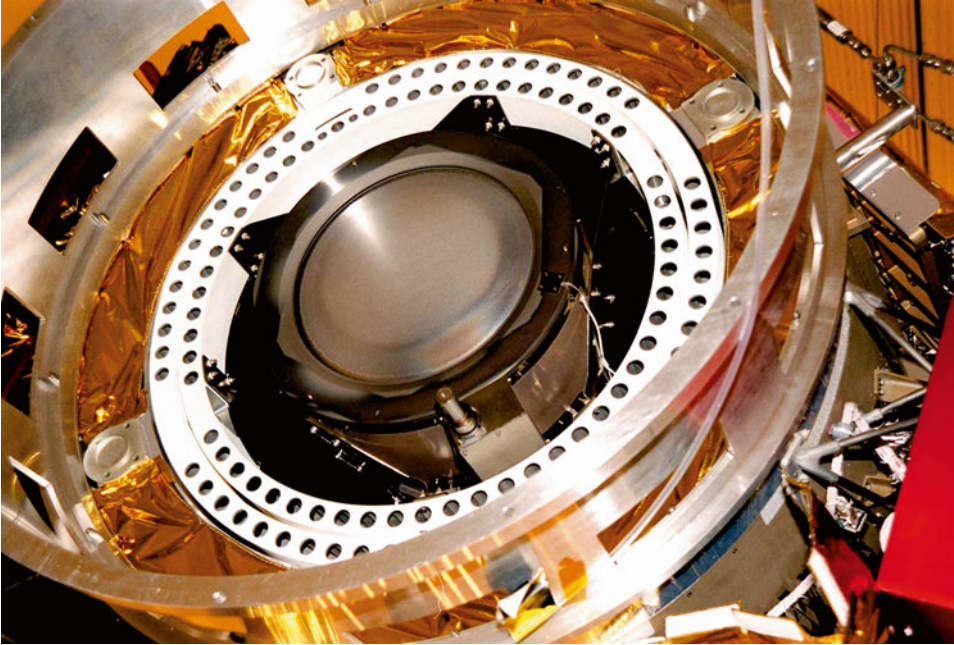
One should note that, strictly speaking, a solar powered rocket is not a rocket because the energy for heating the propellant does not reside in the vehicle. However, such energy is always much, much less than the propellant mass times  $c^2$ , the square of the speed of light in vacuum. Thus, for the space flights we are considering here, we can continue to consider it as a rocket.

### SOLAR AND NUCLEAR ELECTRIC ROCKETS—THE ION DRIVE

Another nonchemical rocket option is the so-called electric rocket, or ion drive. In the electric rocket (Fig. 3.3), sunlight or nuclear energy is first used to ionize fuel into electrons with negative electric charges and ions with positive electric charges. Solar- or nuclear-derived electricity is then directed to electric thrusters, which are utilized to accelerate fuel ions (and electrons) to exhaust velocities of 30 km/s or higher (Fig. 3.4). Typical accelerations from these low thrust devices are 0.0001 Earth surface gravities, so electric



3.3 Schematic of an Ion drive (Courtesy of NASA)



3.4 An ion thruster on the test stand (Courtesy of NASA)

rockets must be deployed in space and fired for weeks or months to achieve high spacecraft velocities.

Unlike nuclear rockets and solar thermal rockets, solar electric rockets are now operational as prime propulsion for robotic interplanetary probes such as NASA's Deep-Space 1 and SMART-1, the European Space Agency's (ESA) first European mission to the Moon. SMART-1 was equipped with a type of electric propulsive device known as the Hall effect engine, after a plasma phenomenon discovered by American physicist Edwin H. Hall in the nineteenth century. Solar cell panels supplied power to the xenon ion engines, producing a thrust of about 68 mN, but operating for 7 months. The overall flight time to the Moon was about 14 months; during this time only 59 kg of propellant was consumed. The primary goal of this mission was not to reach the Moon, but rather to demonstrate that low thrust, high exhaust, velocity ion thrusters work very well in space as the primary propulsion source. ESA decided to extend the mission by more than 1 year until September 3, 2006, in order to gather more scientific data. Additionally, studies are under way in many countries that may soon increase the effective exhaust velocity of ion thrusters to 50 km/s or higher.

So it may be surprising to the reader that electric rockets have so far been employed only for small robotic missions. Why have these reliable, high exhaust velocity engines not yet been applied to propel larger interplanetary ships carrying humans?

One problem is power. A lot more solar (or ultimately nuclear) power is required to ionize and accelerate the fuel required to accelerate a human-occupied craft massing about

100,000 kg than is required to accelerate a 200 kg robotic probe. But a more fundamental issue is fuel availability.

A number of factors influence ion thruster fuel choice. First, you want a material that ionizes easily, so that most of the solar or nuclear energy can be used to accelerate fuel to high exhaust velocities rather than to sunder atomic bonds. Argon, cesium, mercury and xenon are candidate fuel choices satisfying this constraint. But since space mission planners are also subject to environmental constraints, toxic fuels such as mercury and cesium are avoided in contemporary missions. Fuel storage during long interplanetary missions is also an issue—so contemporary electric rockets are fueled with xenon.

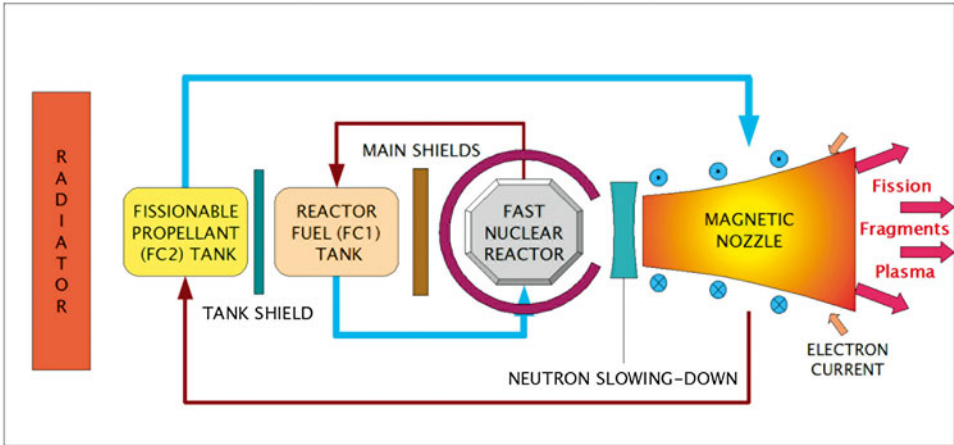
But if we propose an interplanetary economy based on large electric thrusters expelling xenon, we must overcome another issue. This noble (nonreactive) gas is very rare on Earth. Most of its commercial inventory is utilized for fluorescent lighting. Even a modest non-robotic interplanetary venture would quickly exhaust the world supplies of this resource.

## **NUCLEAR DIRECT: THE NONTHERMAL NUCLEAR ROCKET CONCEPT**

Although interstellar missions are not discussed until Chap. 9, in this section we briefly discuss a concept originated for interstellar flight in order to show some additional limitations related to rocket propulsion. In the 1970s, a number of investigators considered either nuclear fission or nuclear fusion for accelerating a spaceship to 0.1 *c*. The resultant one way trip time of between 40 and 50 years to Alpha Centauri was very appealing from the human lifetime viewpoint (35–40 years still represents a sort of minimum requirement for hoping to get approval for very advanced missions beyond the solar system). Here we comment on a concept (originated by author Vulpetti) that aimed at analyzing a multistage rocket starship exclusively powered by nuclear fission.

Figure 3.5 may help us to figure out the central point of the nuclear direct (ND) propulsion concept. Two types of fissionable elements are necessary in the form of two chemical compounds, say, FC1 and FC2 for simplicity. FC1 may be uranium dioxide or plutonium dioxide, whereas FC2 may be an appropriate compound of plutonium 239. They are stored in special tanks and supply two systems: a (so-called) fast nuclear reactor and a magnetic nozzle. The former one burns FC1 and produces an intense beam of fast neutrons, which are subsequently slowed down at the magnetic nozzle. Here, these neutrons induce fissions in FC2. The fission fragments and the electrons form high energy plasma that is exhausted away through the magnetic field forming the nozzle. Why such a complicated arrangement? The main reason is to utilize the enormous fission energy without passing through the production of heat to be transferred to some inert propellant like hydrogen. In other words, nuclear direct would have avoided the exhaust speed limitations of the nuclear thermal rocket (about 10–20 km/s). As a point of fact, the plasma from ND systems may be exhausted with a speed of 9,000–10,000 km/s. Figure 3.5 presents an oversimplified schematic of the ND concept. Some of the related problems were analyzed quantitatively in the 1970s. Many major difficulties were found to relate to the practical realization of the reactor and the magnetic nozzle. The same concept has not been examined in the light of current knowledge about nuclear reactors, materials science and sources of very strong





3.5 Conceptual scheme of a nuclear-fission engine exhausting the fission products directly, namely, using them as reaction mass (Courtesy of author Vulpetti)

magnetic fields. In any case, even if a multistaged starship of such a type were realizable by future technologies, the amount of fissionable elements to be managed would be so high that even the concept’s author would be somewhat perplexed.

One should note that even a small scale version of the ND concept would not be suitable for a human flight to Mars. Simply put, a crewed spaceship to Mars (and back) should have a rocket system capable of a jet speed of 20–40 km/s and an initial acceleration of 0.03 m/s<sup>2</sup>. If one attempts to use a rocket with a jet speed 300 times higher, but using the same jet power per unit vehicle mass (in this case approximately 0.5 kW/kg), then the initial spaceship acceleration would be about 0.0001 m/s<sup>2</sup>. Attempting to escape Earth—for a crew—with such an acceleration level would last months in practice and full of risk from radiation. So, one should go back to the nuclear thermal rocket or the ion drive and solve the problems mentioned in the previous sections.

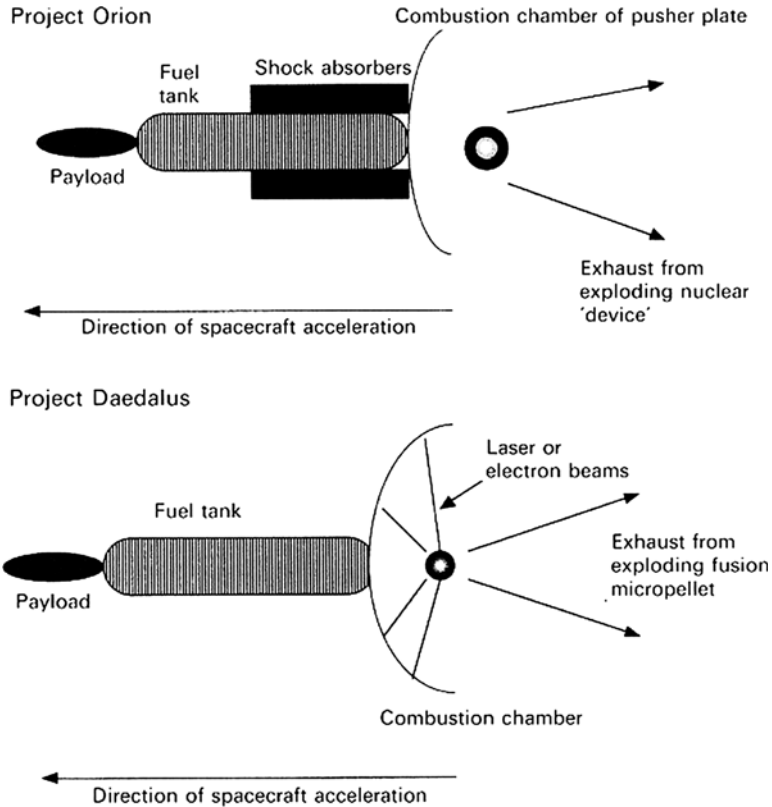
## NUCLEAR PULSE: THE ULTIMATE IN ROCKET DESIGN

Let’s say that you’re not content with slow accelerations and flights to Mars requiring 6 months or more, and let’s also assume that the challenges of a nuclear thermal single-stage-to-orbit do not go away. Instead, you become interested in the ultimate space voyages—across the 40 trillion km gulf separating the Sun and its nearest stellar neighbors, the three stars in the Alpha Centauri system. Are there any rocket technologies capable of interstellar travel?

During the late 1950s and early 1960s, US researchers pondered a remarkable, although environmentally very incorrect, rocket technology that was code named Project Orion (Fig. 3.6). In its earliest incarnations, Orion would have flown as either a single stage or a Saturn V upper stage.



### 30 Rocket Problems and Limitations



3.6 Two nuclear-pulse concepts. Note the shock absorbers; these would ease the stress on the craft (and its occupants) from the uneven acceleration resulting from the reflection of nuclear debris (From G. Matloff, *Deep-Space Probes*, 2nd ed., Springer-Praxis, Chichester, UK, 2005)

Orion passengers and payload would ride above the fuel tank, as far from the combustion chamber as possible. Fuel would consist of small nuclear fission “charges” that would be ejected and ignited behind the main craft. Remarkably, materials exist that could survive the explosion of a nearby nuclear device.

On paper, Orion would have opened the solar system. Huge payloads could have been orbited by Saturn V with an Orion upper stage; this technology could have been used to perform rapid voyages throughout the solar system.

But Orion does not exist just on paper. Scale models, like the one on display in the Smithsonian Air and Space Museum in Washington, DC, flew through the air on the debris of chemical explosives and then parachuted safely to Earth.

As well as being a high thrust device easily capable of launch from Earth's surface, the exhaust velocity of Orion's highly radioactive fission-product exhaust would have been 200 km/s.

If the small nuclear charges were replaced with hydrogen bombs and if Earth launched Orions were replaced with huge craft manufactured in space, perhaps using extraterrestrial resources, Orion derivatives could serve as true starships. In the unlikely event that the world's nuclear powers donated their arsenals to the cause, super Orions propelled by hydrogen bombs could carry small human communities to the nearest stars on flights with durations measured in centuries.

But sociopolitical Utopia is a long way off. So, in the early 1970s, a band of researchers affiliated with the British Interplanetary Society began a nuclear pulse starship study that was christened Project Daedalus. As shown in Fig. 3.6, a Daedalus craft would replace the nuclear or thermonuclear charges with very much smaller fusion micropellets that would be ignited by focused electron beams or lasers after release from the ship's fuel tank. The Daedalus fusion pulse motor could theoretically propel robotic craft that could reach nearby stellar systems after a flight of a century or less. Larger human occupied "arks" or "world ships" would require centuries to complete their stellar voyages. The proper propellant choice would greatly reduce neutron irradiation that would always be a problem for Orion craft. But major propellant issues soon developed.

The ideal Daedalus fusion fuel mixture was a combination of deuterium (a heavy isotope of hydrogen) and helium-3 (a light isotope of helium). Deuterium is quite abundant on Earth, but helium-3 is vanishingly rare. We might have to venture as far as the atmospheres of the giant planets to locate abundant reserves of this precious material.

## THE LONG-TERM ICARUS DESIGN CONCEPT

In the same manner that Project Orion inspired the engineers and scientists who contributed to Project Daedalus, during the 1970s Daedalus has inspired an ongoing study of interstellar pulsed fusion propulsion called Project Icarus. Like its predecessor, Icarus is conducted by an international team of researchers under the auspices of the British Interplanetary Society.

Like the earlier studies, Icarus is constrained to consider fusion pulse propulsion. However, here is where its similarity to Orion and Daedalus ends. Participants in this study endeavor to expand our knowledge base regarding this type of rocket propulsion.

Issues addressed in Project Icarus include possible starship configurations and staging strategies. Since the main probe is designed to perform an undecelerated fly through of the destination star system, are there efficient technologies (including the solar sail) that can be applied to decelerate sub-probes to allow for longer stay times near the destination star?

Are alternative fusion fuel propellant combinations feasible? Is refueling in the destination star system a possibility? Has technology development since the 1970s offered improved possibilities for laser or electron-beam ignition of fusion micropellets?

Of special interest is analysis of failure modes. Might repeated micropellet ignition in the reaction chamber cause acoustic vibrations resulting in catastrophic failure? If ignition beams miss a micropellet, will these beams damage the reaction chamber?

The primary destination of the Icarus interstellar probe has also replaced the proposed destination of the Project Daedalus spacecraft. In the 1970s, observational data supported the hypothesis that Barnard's Star, a red dwarf star located 6 light years from the Sun and at present our Sun's second-nearest stellar neighbor, had one or more Jupiter-sized planetary companions. Since recent research has not confirmed these early observations, the primary Icarus destination is currently the Alpha/Proxima Centauri triple-star system, which is our Sun's nearest stellar neighbor at a distance of 4.3 light years. Observational data released in 2012 indicates that Alpha Centauri B, the smaller of the two solar-type stars in the Alpha Centauri system, has at least one Earth-sized planet. Although this world is apparently too close to its primary star to have evolved life as we know it, additional planets in or near the habitable zones of Alpha Centauri A and B are not unlikely. Thus, searching for a planet capable of hosting even elementary life is among the primary concerns in the aims of interstellar flight.

The Icarus researchers have somewhat descopeed the very ambitious Daedalus design. To achieve a ~60 year flight time to Barnard's Star, Daedalus must be accelerated to about 12 % of the speed of light (or about 36,000 km/s). Even for a fusion pulse ship, the required mass ratio would be enormous. Project Icarus would require much lower mass ratios since the craft could be designed to reach a closer destination in about 100 years.

Project Icarus has itself spawned a number of ongoing projects. Icarus Interstellar, a non-profit spin-off of Project Icarus, commenced operation in 2011 in the United States. This organization, which investigates many aspects of interstellar travel, including beamed energy propulsion as an alternative to fusion, aims to demonstrate an interstellar capability within this century.

In 2012, the Institute for Interstellar Studies was originated in the United Kingdom. The Institute accepts both financial donations and assistance in its research projects to further the development of humanity's interstellar capabilities. Interstellar travel, although perhaps the largest undertaking humanity may attempt, seems no longer to be impossible.

## **THE ANTIMATTER PROPULSION CONCEPT**

The economies of Daedalus and Icarus would be staggering. But they are nothing compared with the economic difficulties plaguing the ultimate rocket—one propelled by a combination of matter and antimatter.

A concept made popular by the televised science fiction series *Star Trek*, the antimatter rocket is the most energetic reaction engine possible, with exhaust velocities approaching the speed of light. Every particle of ordinary matter has its charge-reversed antimatter twin (see the "antimatter" item in the Glossary). When the two are placed in proximity, they are attracted to each other by their opposite electric charges. And when they meet, the result is astounding. In their interaction, all of their mass is converted into energy—far dwarfing the mass-to-energy conversion fraction of fission and fusion reactions (which never exceed 1 %).

Antimatter storage is problematic. If even one microgram of antimatter fuel were to come in contact with a starship's normal matter fuel tank, the whole complex would be destroyed in a titanic explosion. Tiny amounts of antimatter, however, have been stored for periods of weeks or months, suspended within specially configured electromagnetic fields.

But what really dims the hopes of would-be antimatter rocketeers is the economics of manufacturing the stuff. A few large nuclear accelerators in Europe and the US have been configured as antimatter factories. But an investment of billions of dollars and euros result in a yield of nanograms or picograms per year.

Someday, perhaps, solar powered antimatter factories in space will produce sufficient quantities of this volatile material to propel large spacecraft at relativistic velocities. However, until that far-into-the-future time arrives, we will have to search elsewhere to find propulsion methods for human occupied starships.

Perhaps it is a good thing that cost efficient antimatter manufacture is well beyond our capabilities. Imagine the havoc wrought by terrorists or rogue states if they had access to a nuclear explosive that could be stored in a magnetically configured thimble!

In ending this chapter on rocket's intrinsic limitations, we would like to make two points. The first one is conceptual. When one considers a very high nonchemical energy density source (to be put onboard a space vehicle), there is always a basic difficulty in transferring energy from the source particles to the particles of the rocket working fluid. If one attempts to use the source's energetic particles *directly* as the exhaust beam, then one unavoidably has to deal with significant difficulties: the higher the particle energy, the more difficult it is to build a jet with a sufficiently high thrust.

The second point regards the context of spaceflight, in general, and space transportation systems, in particular. The design and function of small space engines, even though important for a spacecraft, are essentially of a technological nature. Quite different is the problem of a new space transportation technique, which also entails financial problems, safety and security issues, international cooperation (if any), long-term planning and so on. Such problems are most obvious in developing a new launcher, which gives access to orbits close to the Earth. However, some difficulties arise even for in-space transportation systems to distant targets—not only for systematic human flights to other celestial bodies, but also for future scientific and utilitarian space missions, which will invariably increase in both complexity and number.

## FURTHER READING

Many references describe the Apollo lunar expeditions of the late 1960s and early 1970s.

For example, you may consult Eric Burgess, *Outpost on Apollo's Moon*, Columbia University Press, NY, 1993. A more technical treatment is found in Martin J. L. Turner, *Rocket and Spacecraft Propulsion*, 2nd ed., Springer-Praxis, Chichester, UK, 2005. Turner's monograph also considers in greater detail many of the rocket varieties examined in this chapter.

Various nuclear approaches to interstellar travel are discussed in a number of sources. For a recent popular treatment, see Paul Gilster, *Centauri Dreams*, Copernicus, NY, 2004. A recent technical monograph is Gregory L. Matloff, *Deep-Space Probes*, 2nd ed., Springer-Praxis, Chichester, UK, 2005.

## 34 Rocket Problems and Limitations

A photographic sequence showing an Orion prototype in flight is reproduced in Eugene Mallove and Gregory Matloff *The Starflight Hand-book*, Wiley, NY, 1989. The history of Projects Orion and Daedalus are also reviewed in this semipopular source.

Progress made by Project Icarus is described in many scientific and technical articles. Two of these, both published in the *Journal of the British Interplanetary Society (JBIS)*, are:

K. F. Long, R. K. Obousy, A. C. Tziolas, A. Mann, R. Osbourne, A. Presby and M. Fogg, "Project Icarus: Son of Daedalus—Flying Closer to Another Star," *JBIS*, **62**, 403-416 (2009).

R. K. Obousy, A. C. Tziolas, K. F. Long, P. Galea, A. Crawl, I. A. Crawford, R. Swinney, A. Hein, R. Osbourne, and P. Reiss, "Project Icarus: Progress Report on Technical Developments and Design Considerations," *JBIS*, **64**, 358-371 (2011).

The discovery of an Earth-mass planet circling near Alpha Centauri B, was accomplished using the HARPS instrument at the European Southern Observatory (ESO). The ESO press release regarding this discovery can be accessed at <http://www.eso.org/public/news/eso1241/>

# 4

## Non-Rocket In-Space Propulsion

Now that we've examined rocket theory, potential and limitations, we are ready to consider some of the alternatives to this mode of propulsion. If our spacecraft is ground-launched, we might consider a jet as the first stage, where oxygen is ingested from the air instead of carried on board. Other launch alternatives include igniting the rocket while it is suspended from a high-altitude balloon or accelerating it upon a magnetically levitated track prior to ignition.

Although these alternatives are fascinating and well worth further study, we will not consider them further here. Instead, we will concentrate in this chapter on non-rocket alternatives that can alter the motion of a vehicle already in space.

### AEROASSISTED REENTRY, DECELERATION, AND ORBIT CHANGE

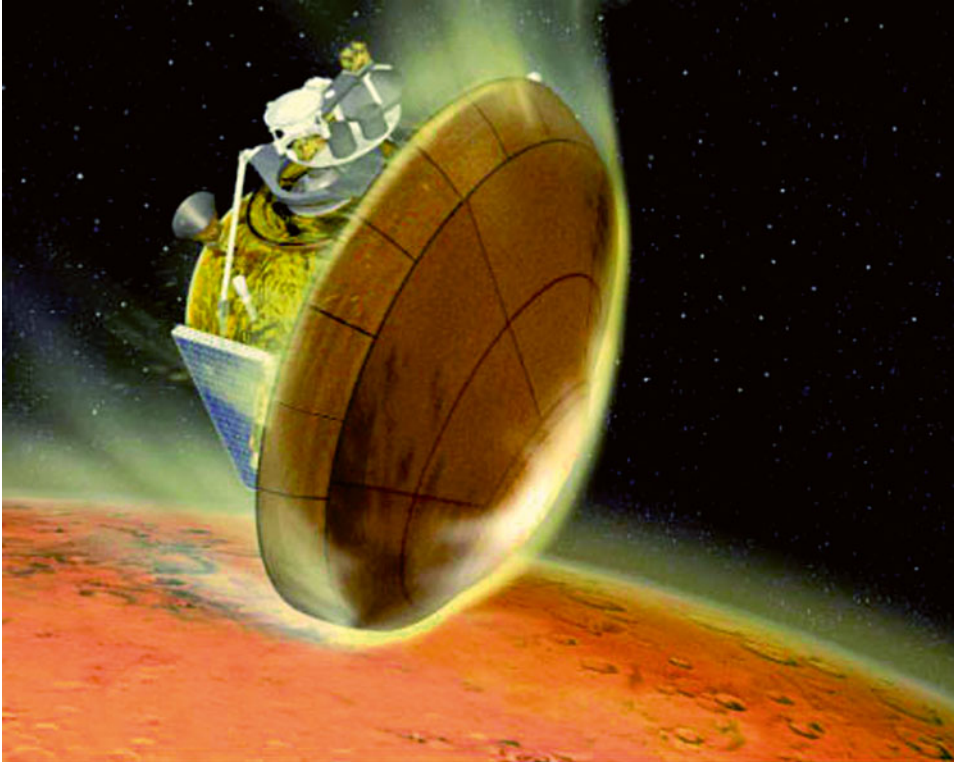
Consider an Earth-orbiting spacecraft near the end of its mission that is ready to return home. We could simply fire the rocket in reverse and expend enough fuel to cancel the low-Earth-orbit velocity of 8 km/s. At great expense in mission size and complexity, the craft would simply fall vertically toward Earth.

Very early in the space age, mission planners realized that such a procedure would be totally inadequate. Instead, they opted for aeroassisted reentries.

In an aeroassisted reentry, the spacecraft is first oriented so that a small rocket (a retro-rocket) can be fired to oppose the spacecraft's orbital direction. The craft drops into a lower orbit where it encounters the outer fringes of Earth's atmosphere. Atmospheric friction further slows the craft so that it drops deeper into the atmosphere.

During an aeroassisted reentry, a spacecraft must be protected against the high temperatures produced by the frictional interaction between the vehicle and atmospheric molecules. In many cases, an ablative heat shield is utilized. Ablation is akin to evaporation—small fragments of heat shield material evaporate at high velocity, carrying away much of the frictional heat. Some spacecraft, such as NASA's space shuttle, use instead temperature-resistant ceramic tiles to protect the craft and crew during reentry.

When the craft has slowed sufficiently and descended further into the atmosphere, aerodynamic forces can be applied to control the craft's trajectory. Some returning space



4.1 A rigid aeroshell could protect a payload during aerocapture (Courtesy of NASA)

capsules—like Russia’s Soyuz and China’s Shenzhou—return to Earth ballistically with the aid of parachutes. Others, such as the space shuttle, are equipped with wings so they can glide to a safe landing. Some robotic craft—especially rovers bound for Mars—bounce across the surface on inflatable airbags after the descent.

In addition to the Earth, the planets Venus, Mars, Jupiter, Saturn, Uranus and Neptune and Saturn’s satellite Titan are equipped with dense atmospheres. Interplanetary robotic explorers have applied aerobraking at Mars and could apply this technique while orbiting other atmosphere-bearing worlds.

To perform an aerobrake maneuver, a spacecraft is initially in an elliptical orbit around an atmosphere-bearing world. If the low point of the orbit grazes that world’s upper atmosphere and the spacecraft is equipped with a large, low mass surface such as a panel of solar cells, it can utilize atmospheric friction on each orbital pass to gradually circularize the orbit, without the expenditure of onboard fuel.

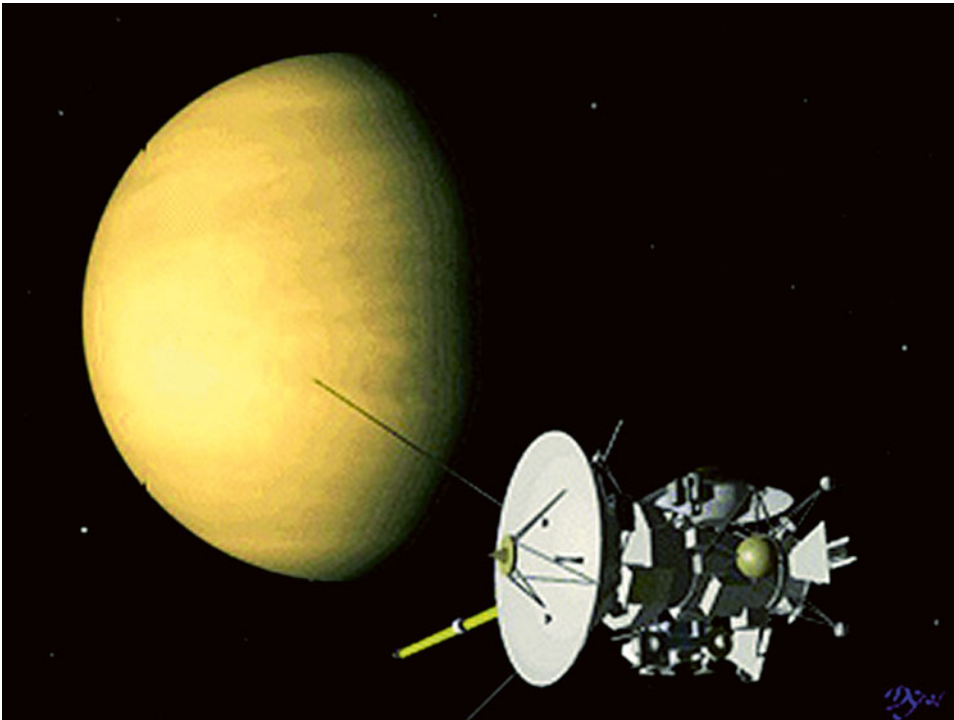
A more radical maneuver is aerocapture (Fig. 4.1), which has not yet been tried in space for a planetary mission. Here, a probe approaches the destination **planet** in an initial Sun-centered orbit. Its trajectory must be very carefully calibrated and it must be equipped with a heat-resistant, low mass, and large area component that would ideally function like a parachute. In an aerocapture maneuver, one atmospheric pass is sufficient for the planet to capture the probe into a planet-centered orbit.

## PLANETARY GRAVITY ASSISTS: THE FIRST EXTRASOLAR PROPULSION TECHNIQUE

Aeroassist is a fine non-rocket approach to deceleration. But how can a spacecraft increase its velocity without rockets? One approach, first used on the Pioneer 10/11 and Voyager 1/2 missions of the 1970s, is to transfer orbital energy from a planet to a spacecraft. Utilizing this technique based on a discovery in celestial mechanics, the Pioneers and Voyagers flew by the outer planets Jupiter, Saturn, Uranus and Neptune; they have continued into the interstellar vastness beyond, as humanity's first emissaries to the Milky Way galaxy.

This maneuver works best when the spacecraft approaches a massive planet with a high solar-orbital velocity. Although Earth, the Moon, Venus (Fig. 4.2), Saturn, Uranus and Neptune have been also been utilized, the best world in our solar system for gravity assists is Jupiter.

Let's say that you are planning a mission that will fly by Neptune and have a comparatively small booster. To maximize payload and not exceed your budget, you might initially consider flying a minimum-energy ellipse, with the perihelion at Earth's solar orbit (1 astronomical unit [AU], see Glossary) and the aphelion at Neptune's solar orbit (about 30 AU). You'd better be patient and have a very young science team—the travel time will be about 31 years.



4.2 The Venus gravity-assist performed by Saturn-bound Cassini in 1999 (Courtesy of NASA)



To save time, you will likely choose to inject the spacecraft into a Jupiter-bound minimum-energy ellipse, which requires a flight of only 2.74 years. You would then graze Jupiter appropriately to add velocity to the spacecraft and reduce its travel time to Neptune. This technique was utilized by Voyager 2, which required “only” 12 years to perform its Jupiter and Saturn-aided flybys of Uranus and Neptune.

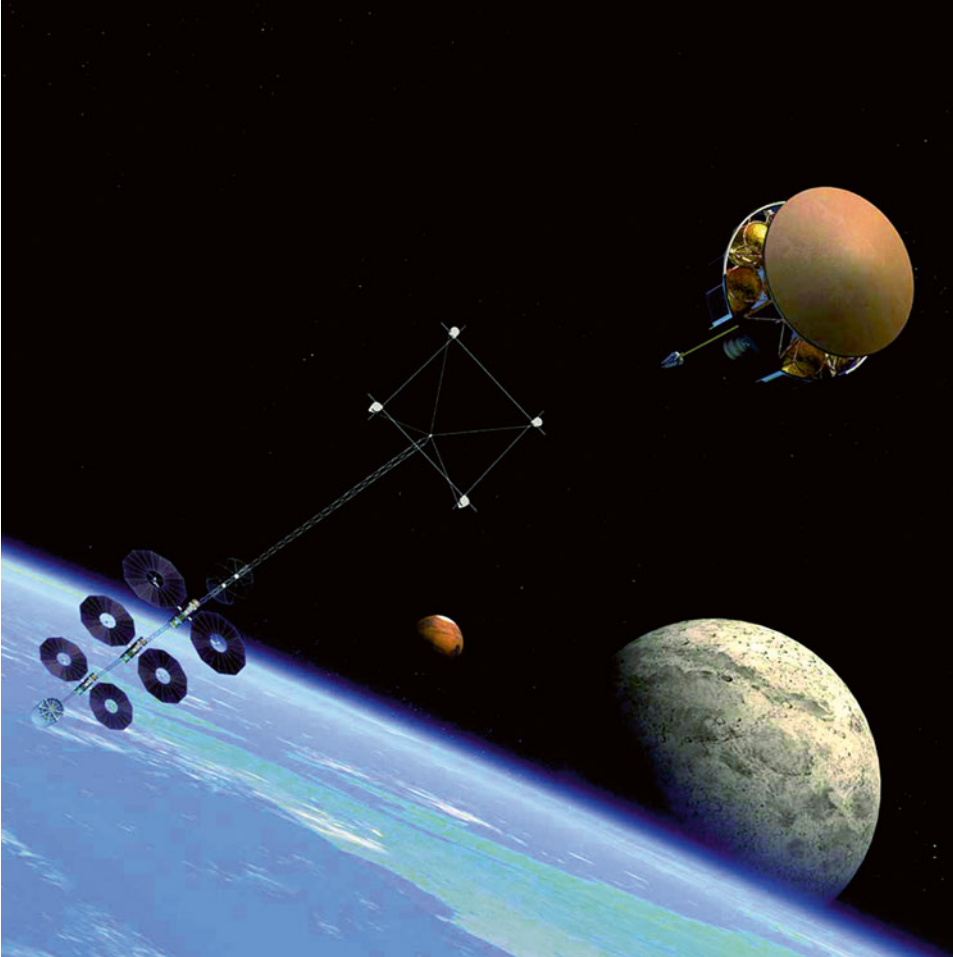
There are limits to gravity assist maneuvers. If you approach a planet appropriately and your trajectory direction is altered by  $90^\circ$  by the flyby, you can increase your spacecraft’s Sun-centered velocity by about 13 km/s—the orbital velocity of Jupiter about the Sun. If your craft arrives at Jupiter with very low velocity relative to that planet, your trajectory direction might be bent by  $180^\circ$ . Then, you can increase spacecraft velocity by about 26 km/s—twice Jupiter’s solar-orbital velocity. In both cases, Jupiter will slow an infinitesimal amount in its endless journey around the Sun.

Another way to use the gravitational field of a large celestial body to accelerate a spacecraft is to perform a powered maneuver during closest approach to that body. Although such a powered gravity assist technically does not replace a rocket, it certainly increases the effectiveness of a rocket motor in altering a spacecraft’s velocity. The most efficient **rocket**-powered gravity assist within our solar system would utilize a flyby of the Sun with the rocket ignited as close to the Sun as possible.

A general issue about planetary gravity assist is that it depends strongly on the target planet’s position; as a consequence, the launch window can be narrow, year-dependent, and low in mission repetition. Strictly speaking, gravity assist is not a real propulsive mode: it is rather an advanced technique of celestial mechanics applied to spaceflight. It has been very fruitful in the past decades, but future astronautics needs devices that are also able to energize a space vehicle almost continuously, far from any planet. Such systems do not exclude a mixed mode, namely, advanced spacecraft propulsion and gravity assist combined.

## **ELECTRODYNAMIC TETHERS: PUSHING AGAINST THE EARTH’S MAGNETIC FIELD**

A tether is nothing more than a long, thin cable that attaches two spacecraft or spacecraft components (Fig. 4.3). If that cable is long (kilometers in length) and electrically conducting, then it can conduct electricity and use the interaction of that electricity with Earth’s magnetic field to produce thrust. The physics is not complicated, but it is difficult to visualize. A current-carrying wire generates a magnetic field. Conversely, a wire moving through a magnetic field produces a voltage difference across the length of the wire. If electrical charge is available at one end and the circuit “closes” back with the other end, then a current will flow across this potential difference and through the wire. If the wire happens to be moving through space around Earth, then it is moving through a magnetic field. (For proof, just get out your compass to see the effects of Earth’s magnetic field.) In low Earth orbit, there are lots of ions and electrons to provide the current



4.3 A satellite moves toward a higher orbit after release from a tether-equipped spacecraft  
(Courtesy of NASA)

(in what is commonly called the *ionosphere*) and the circuit closes with only one wire being used by virtue of electrical conduction through the ionospheric plasma created by these same ions and electrons. The current flowing through the wire tether then experiences a force due to its motion through the magnetic field. This force is perpendicular to both the **local** magnetic field and to the direction of current flow. Since the current is trapped inside the wire, the force effectively pushes on the wire in either its direction of motion through space (accelerating it) or, if the current is flowing in the opposite direction, decelerating it.

The tethered satellite system and plasma motor generator missions of NASA demonstrated the electrodynamic properties of tethers in space in the 1990s. The use of electrodynamic tethers for propulsion in space remains to **be** demonstrated.

## **MOMENTUM EXCHANGE TETHERS: KING DAVID'S SLINGSHOT TO SPACE**

Using a tether to exchange momentum or orbital energy between two spacecraft was demonstrated in space by the flight of the small expendable deployer system (SEDS) missions in the mid-1990s. The SEDS-1 mission saw the deployment of a 20 km non-conducting tether from the upper stage of a Delta-II rocket after its primary mission was complete. The SEDS deployed a tethered, spring-ejected, 25 kg end mass (basically a deadweight) from the Delta-II stage. The spring gave the end mass enough of a “kick” to move to a distance where the *gravity gradient* (see **Glossary**) took over, resulting in the end mass being fully deployed 20 km from the stage. After reaching its full 20 km length, the tether was cut at the deployer, sending the end mass to reentry. This technique might be used to boost the orbit of valuable space assets, while assisting others to reentry—all without the expenditure of propellant.

A momentum exchange tether might work like this. Let's say that you are expedition commander aboard the International Space Station (ISS). Periodically, you must schedule a short rocket burn to counter atmospheric drag and maintain the station's orbit. If you happen to have a long momentum exchange tether, say one that is 50–100 km in length and a space shuttle has checked in for a visit, you can cancel the thruster burn and save fuel. All you must do is to attach the shuttle and the ISS with the tether, position the shuttle below the tether, and slowly unravel the tether. When the shuttle is at a sufficient distance below the ISS, sever the connection. The shuttle will drop to a lower orbit and position itself for reentry; the ISS will soar to a higher orbit.

The main issue delaying operational application of these devices is safety. Mission directors are concerned about the orbital debris that could result from a malfunctioning tether.

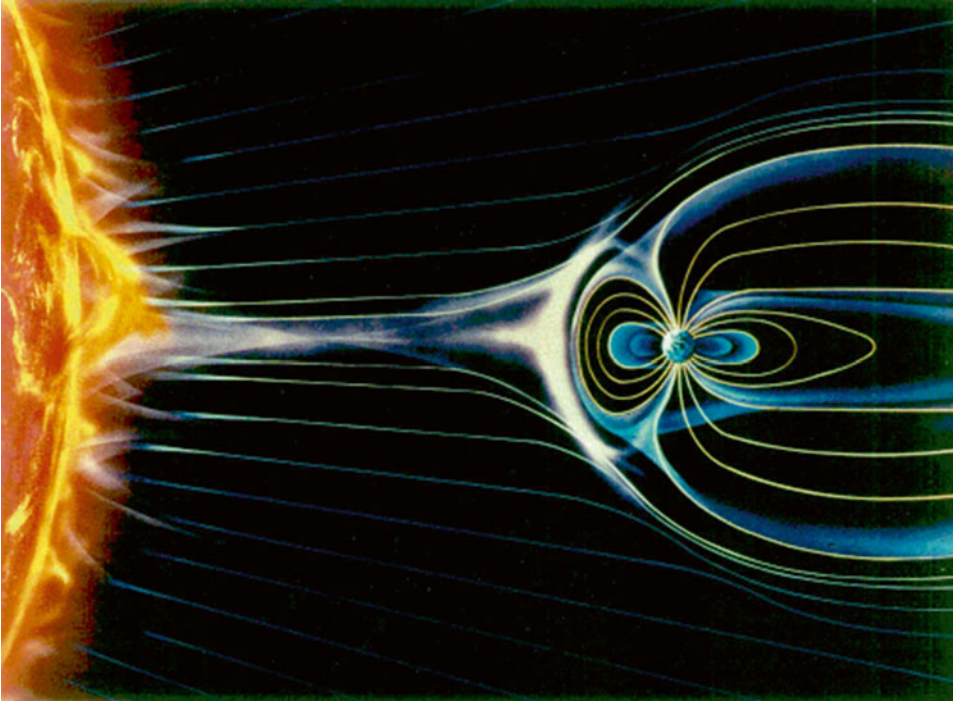
But tethers could be applied all over the solar system, wherever there are gravitational and magnetic fields and sources of electrons. This technology may even have interstellar applications.

## **MAGSAILS AND PLASMA SAILS: RIDING THE SOLAR WIND**

In addition to electrodynamic tethers, there are other propulsion **concepts** that use purely electromagnetic interactions instead of rocket-based momentum exchange to derive thrust. Two of these are the MagSail and its cousin, the plasma sail.

A MagSail uses the magnetic field generated by a large superconducting wire loop to reflect solar wind ions. These ions, generated in copious amounts by the Sun, stream outward into the solar system. As with the electrodynamic tether, in which a magnetic field exerts a force on moving electrically charged particles, the MagSail magnetic field is generated by current flowing through superconducting coils. This field reflects solar wind particles, transferring their initial linear momentum to the MagSail.

In reality, things are very complicated. Not only is the reflection of solar protons not guaranteed at any distance from the Sun, but also the flux of the incoming protons



4.4 The solar wind's interaction with Earth's magnetosphere (Courtesy of NASA)

changes considerably during days, months and years. Since we cannot control such fluctuations, a big problem arises because of the difficulty in ultimately controlling the spacecraft motion.

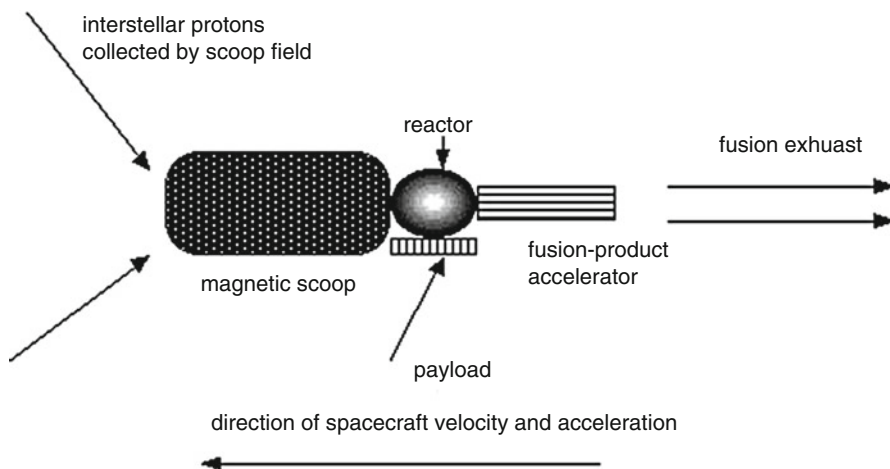
Dr. Robert Winglee at the University of Washington proposed another version of the MagSail. The Winglee concept is called mini-magnetospheric plasma propulsion (M2P2). The M2P2 would function in space by creating a small-scale version of Earth's magnetosphere. (The magnetosphere is defined as the region of space near Earth in which electromagnetic interactions are dominated by Earth's magnetic field. It includes the ionosphere [Fig. 4.4].) The M2P2 would generate an artificial magnetosphere in which trapped charged particles would reflect the solar wind over a wide area (many kilometers). This, in theory, would allow an attached spacecraft to accelerate outward from the Sun without the enormous expenditure of rocket fuel. Conceptually speaking, though, M2P2 is similar to a rocket because of consumption of helium (stored onboard) necessary for producing a magnetized plasma bubble around the vehicle body. Early experiment and analysis are inconclusive regarding the overall feasibility of the technology, but stay tuned: the idea is still in its infancy. Even if M2P2 fails as a non-rocket-propulsion device, it may be useful in protecting astronauts in deep space from cosmic rays by acting as a large deflecting screen.

## INTERSTELLAR RAMJETS AND THEIR DERIVATIVES

Speaking of interstellar applications, this chapter would be incomplete if we did not mention the most dramatic rocket alternative of them all. This is the interstellar ramjet (Fig. 4.5). When first proposed by the American physicist Robert Bussard in 1960, it seemed to demonstrate an economically acceptable method of achieving spacecraft velocities arbitrarily close to the speed of light.

Even though interstellar space is a very perfect vacuum by terrestrial standards, it is far from completely empty. As well as the occasional dust particle, galactic space is filled with a diffuse (mostly) hydrogen gas with an average density of about one particle per cubic centimeter. Bussard proposed a spacecraft that would fly through this medium at high speeds. Utilizing electromagnetic fields, it would ingest interstellar hydrogen, probably in the ionized form of protons and electrons, and funnel this material into a thermonuclear fusion reactor very far in advance of any technology we can dream of. Instead of the comparatively easy reactions between heavy hydrogen isotopes and low mass helium isotopes that fusion researchers experiment with today, this reactor would burn hydrogen directly to obtain helium plus energy, thereby duplicating the energy-producing process of the Sun and most other stars.

Because there is no onboard fuel, the ramjet's ideal performance is limited only by its mass and the density of the local interstellar medium. Under optimum conditions, it could accelerate constantly at one Earth gravity. The interstellar ramjet would approach the speed of light after only about 1 year of operation. Due to relativistic time dilation, the onboard crew could reach very distant interstellar destinations within years or decades from their point of view, although much longer time intervals would pass from the viewpoint of stay-at-home Earthlings.



4.5 Bussard's proton-fusing interstellar ramjet concept (From Gregory L. Matloff, *Deep-Space Probes*, 2nd ed., Springer-Praxis, Chichester, UK, 2005)

Almost immediately, the interstellar ramjet became the darling of science fiction. If a star-bound astronaut invested her salary before launch and collected compound interest, would she own Earth upon her return a century later? If a malfunction occurred, might a time-dilated star crew keep accelerating and witness the final heat death of the Universe and a new Big Bang, as is what happens in Poul Anderson's classic tale *Tau Zero*?

Alas, issues for the ramjet soon emerged, which dimmed the initial enthusiasm. From an astronomical viewpoint, it became apparent that our solar system resides in a vast galactic bubble of interstellar gas with a density of less than 1 hydrogen atom or ion per  $10 \text{ cm}^3$ , far smaller than the average interstellar gas density. This implied that an enormous electromagnetic scoop radius would be required—in the vicinity of thousands of kilometers—for even a reasonably massed starcraft.

But physics was no friendlier to Bussard's wonderful dream. The required proton-proton reaction is not only a bit more difficult to ignite than currently feasible fusion reactions, but it is many orders of magnitude more difficult! Indeed, to fly to the stars using an interstellar ramjet, we might need a star to ignite the interstellar hydrogen—not the most mass effective of interstellar propulsion modes!

So a number of less challenging derivatives of the ramjet concept have been introduced. One is the ram-augmented interstellar rocket (RAIR). This theoretical “ducted” rocket carries fusion fuel as its energy source. It could, in principle, increase the efficiency of its fusion-pulse rocket by adding collected interstellar ions to the exhaust stream. If we replace the onboard fusion reactor with a receiver of laser energy beamed from the inner solar system, onboard fuel requirements are greatly reduced.

Another concept is the ramjet runway, in which a trail of fusion-fuel pellets is deposited in advance of the accelerating starship, which collects, reacts, and exhausts the pre-deposited fuel. Another possibility is to utilize the electromagnetic scoop to slowly and gradually collect **fusible nuclei** from the solar wind prior to an interstellar fusion rocket's departure.

All of these approaches have their own developmental issues. Although they are not as efficient nor elegant as the pure ramjet, at least they offer some hope to designers of future interstellar spacecraft.

But even if the physics problems in the construction of certain ramjet derivatives may not be insurmountable, there are major technological issues. Setting aside the major issues involved in fusion-reactor design, it must be noted that construction of electromagnetic interstellar ion scoops is far from straightforward.

Early scoop concepts were generally developed analytically during the 1970s. Further analysis with plasma physics computer codes revealed that most scoop concepts would tend to reflect interstellar ions rather than collect them. In other words, an electromagnetic scoop field would serve better as an interstellar drag brake rather than as an aid to non-rocket acceleration.

Most of the above propulsion concepts are particular cases of the Multiple Propulsion Mode (MPM), a concept introduced by author Vulpetti in 1978 and improved in 1990. Such a mode does not entail a multistage space-vehicle necessarily. Its principle is different: if one uses rocket, ramjet, and laser sail in a special configuration of *simultaneous* working and sharing the total power available to a (huge) starship, then truly relativistic speeds could be achieved. As a point of fact, it has been proved mathematically that these

three propulsion systems may be made equivalent to a single rocket endowed with an exhaust beam of almost the speed of light, but with a thrust enormously higher than that obtainable for a relativistic photon rocket. The mass of such a starship may be greatly lessened only if antimatter were used as the rocket fuel. However, the antimatter amounts for reaching nearby stars would be much, much higher than our current production capability. Nevertheless, MPM studies show implicitly that even utilizing advanced concepts of current physics, *fast* interstellar travel is completely out of our current or medium-term capabilities; although the MPM is conceptually clear, a real MPM-based starship would be so complex that, simply put, we do not know how to engineer it. Different approaches are necessary for the interstellar flight, including an appropriate enlargement and understanding of our present physics.

### FURTHER READING

The kinematics of minimum energy or Hohmann interplanetary transfer ellipses are presented in many technical books on Astrodynamics. One good source is Roger R. Bates, Donald D. Mueller, and Jerry E. White, *Fundamentals of Astrodynamics*, Dover, NY, 1971.

For a technical review of planetary gravity assist technology, interstellar ramjets, MagSails and the mini-magnetosphere, consult Gregory L. Matloff *Deep-Space Probes*, 2nd ed., Springer-Praxis, Chichester, UK, 2005.

A more popular review of these topics is Paul Gilster, *Centauri Dreams*, Springer Copernicus Books, NY, 2004.

G.L. Matloff, L. Johnson, C. Bangs, *Living Off the Land in Space*, Praxis Copernicus, 2007. Aeroassist, tethers and related technology are treated in this book as well.

For the multiple propulsion mode concepts, papers were published in the *Journal of the British Interplanetary Society* (JBIS) in the 1970s and 1990s.

# 5

## The Solar Sail Option: From the Oceans to Space

In the previous chapters, we described the space rocket engines, how they work, their role in past and current spaceflight and their limitations. We have also shown that the rocket is not the only propulsion type that could be employed in space. Among the types of space propulsion currently under investigation, one is particularly promising: the solar sail. This propulsion mode is not conceptually new, even though only recent technology gives it a good chance to make a quality jump in spaceflight. Its principles and how to efficiently use a sail vehicle could be understood better by reviewing what happened about four millennia ago on the seas and by referring to the progress of physics in the nineteenth and twentieth centuries. Early pioneers of solar sailing conceived a space use of sails in the first half of the twentieth century, whereas the first technical publications and space designs began in the second half. But let us proceed in chronological order.

### A BIT OF HUMAN HISTORY

Well before physics was founded as a branch of scientific knowledge, human beings needed to travel on water: rivers, seas and oceans. Modern studies about human history and its evolution have shown that many peoples migrated through oceans, too, although the ancient boats were built and applied empirically. In particular, about twenty-five centuries B.C. a Middle East zone, corresponding to modern Lebanon, Israel and part of Syria, saw the first settlements of a famous people, mentioned in the Bible and named the Phoenicians after Homer.

Although Phoenicia consisted of many city-states (Sidon, Tyre, Beritus [now Beirut], Tripoli [near Beirut], Byblos, Arvad, Caesarea, etc.), they considered themselves one nation, which had a significant impact on their evolution. At their beginning, Phoenicians navigated using rafts. Then, they built more sophisticated boats that were used for fishing and coasting, but only in the daytime. Phoenicia occupied a geographic position strategic for land and sea commerce in the context of the Egyptian and Hittite empires. However, Phoenicians should not be confused with Anatolian Hittites, originating from Anatolia (peninsula of Turkey) nineteen centuries B.C. This Hittite empire was at its maximum expansion in fourteenth century B.C. (Anatolia, northwestern Syria, and northern Mesopotamia),



while Phoenicians were under the control of Egypt. As a point of fact, Egypt conquered Phoenicia about eighteen centuries B.C. and controlled its city-states until about the eleventh century B.C. (Some scholars suppose that even the biblical Hittites were different from Phoenicians.)

Once independence was restored, Phoenicians began their expansion, not excessively in terms of military conquest, but above all as the most skilled navigators and clever merchants of the whole ancient world. In practice, they invented the modern concept of commerce and exploited its power. Their fleets were employed to expand commerce, explore new lands, found new colonies and to transport precious goods.

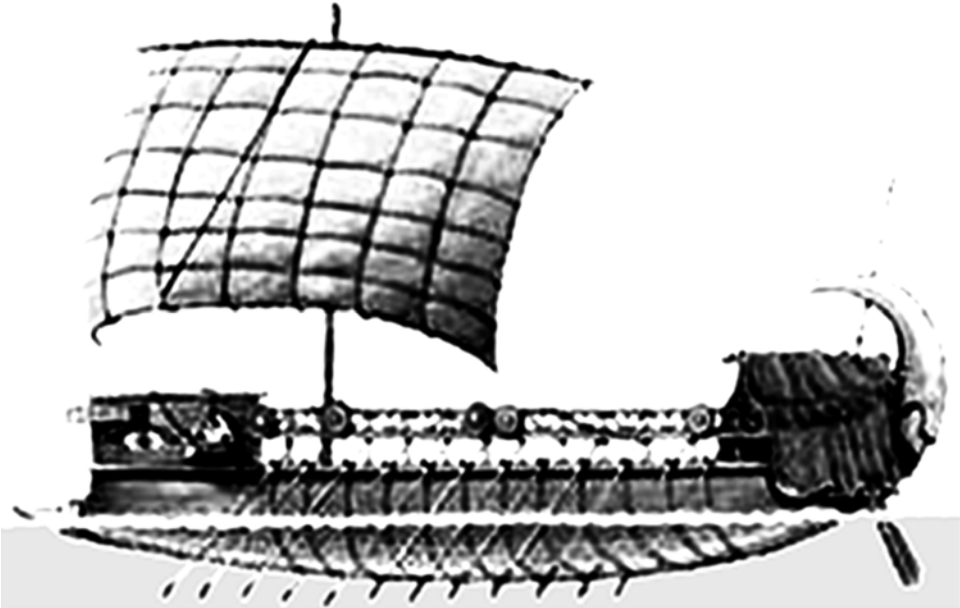
According to the ancient Greek writers, Phoenician sea craft resulted in two kinds of somewhat sophisticated large boats: war vessels and merchant ships. With their ships, Phoenicians not only dominated the Mediterranean Sea, but also traversed the Pillars of Hercules (now called the Straits of Gibraltar) and entered the Atlantic Ocean, reaching as far as the Canary and Azores Islands; they traveled past the coast of France and reached Wales, where they controlled the tin market.

Herodotus wrote that Phoenicians managed to circumnavigate Africa and pioneered a way to Asia about six centuries B.C., but there is no further witness regarding this extraordinary adventure. Around 950 B.C., King Solomon entrusted Phoenician crews for a commercial mission onto the Red Sea, whereupon their ships are said to have reached the southwest parts of India (actually, some relics of their journey have been found there). In the ninth century B.C., Phoenicians founded Carthage, located close to modern Tunis. That powerful city, which continued the commercial activities after Phoenicia's decline, was destroyed by Rome after three wars lasting more than a hundred years.

How, in those ancient times, was such extended exploration and trade possible? Let us list the key points. In the course of time, Phoenician ship builders, whose knowledge was based almost exclusively on experience rather than analysis, endowed their ships with a well-designed keel, different from the ships of other nations or cities. Ships were long, streamlined and exhibited two or three lines of oars (with related rowers) on different planes (biremes, triremes). In addition, a Phoenician ship had a mast with one sail. Although sails were of the square type and inappropriate for moving upwind (e.g., close hauled, close reach, beam reach), Phoenicians utilized them intelligently. At one point in their nautical history, they replaced one line of merchant ship rowers by a sail, thus achieving three objectives:

1. The weight and volume of rowers and oars were occupied by a significantly heavier payload,
2. Travel duration decreased,
3. The vessel was endowed with two complementary propulsion systems—rowing and sailing—which were engaged according to the winds or on contingency. Another key point was that they learned to navigate by stars, especially the Polar Star, and to plot a course!

Figure 5.1 shows an outline of a Phoenician merchant vessel. Sailing, as developed by Phoenicians, was the foundation for all the improvements and new discoveries that allowed big vessels to navigate extensively on the seas and the oceans of the world. Today, the sail is still used as the main propulsive engine in a few places. Though replaced by steam, oil and nuclear engines, water and land sailing are very much alive as sports. Looking back



5.1 Outline of Phoenician merchant vessel

on previous millennia, one can assert that sailing has not been the ultimate maritime propulsion, but has represented a period of transition until knowledge made another quality jump possible. Many things were accomplished in such a transition! We have more than one reason to believe that similar things could and should happen in space.

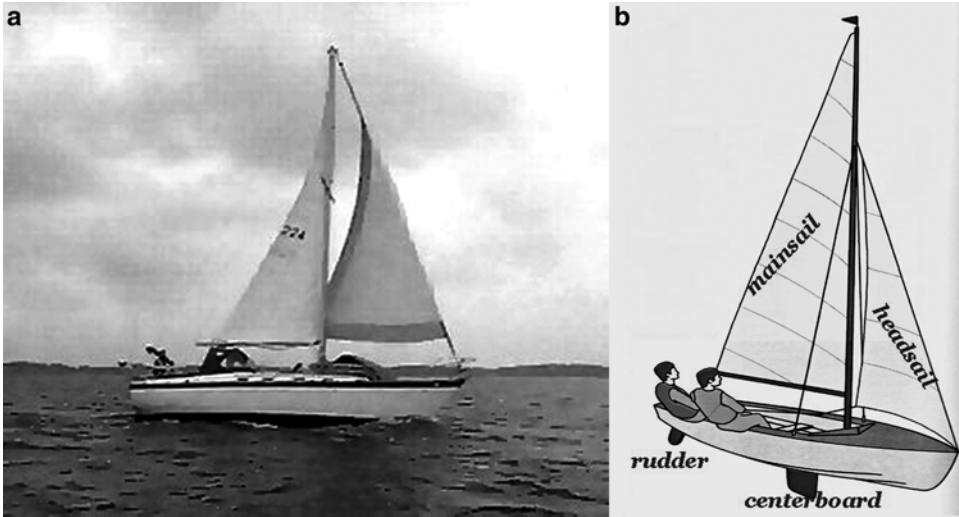
Again, to better grasp space sails and what one could do with them, it is appropriate to devote a few words to sea sailing. In particular, we emphasize the roles of the different forces acting on the sail and the boat. It will be useful to find analogies and differences when we discuss the many types and applications of space sailcraft, especially since the IKAROS mission opened the space sailing era in Astronautics.

## SEA SAILING

Even a small boat with one sail is a very complicated system. Here, we are concerned with the forces that allow a sailboat to move and remain stable. We shall use an oversimplified picture for illustrating them, but maintain qualitative correctness.

### Just a Few Words About Wind

We sense wind as a mass of air moving from some direction. For most purposes, such movement can be considered almost horizontal. Winds are classified by either the kinds of forces acting on the air, their movement scale or the geographic zones where they periodically occur or persist. There are a great variety of winds.



5.2 (a, b) A two-sail boat

The main physical causes of air motion are the variable solar heating at different places and Earth's rotation. The former causes a difference of pressure between the air parcels at different places. Also important is the distance between the points with different pressure. A nonzero pressure difference is the main driver for moving a fluid (a gas or a liquid). The abundant energy that the Sun delivers to Earth causes many important phenomena, including the regional temperatures and pressures we hear about from television or read on Internet weather forecasts. Winds are powered by transformed solar energy, which is absorbed by atmosphere, lands, oceans and so forth. If there were no solar radiation impinging on Earth, there would be no wind. As we shall see in the next section, a terrestrial sailboat utilizes this clean solar energy. In May 2010, we began to do the same thing with space sails, i.e. the IKAROS mission by the Japanese Aerospace Exploration Agency.

### How Can a Sailboat Navigate?

Although many small sailboats resemble the ones in Fig. 5.2a, b (with two sails that behave as one combined sail), to understand sailing, it is sufficient to discuss one boat with one sail. As well as the sail, one important thing to be noted is the centerboard, which serves as the keel on larger sailboats.

The velocity of a body is a **vector**, namely, a mathematical object with magnitude and direction of motion. (Accelerations and forces can be pictured by vectors as well.) Often in physics, the magnitude of the vector velocity is called **speed**. If an observer sees two bodies with the same (vector) velocity, this means that both bodies have the same speed and direction of motion with respect to the observer. (The observer can be a scientific device as well.) There exists no absolute velocity. Some frame of reference has to be defined. However, sometimes when the phenomenon (to be studied) includes many different bodies, one may call the velocity of the body  $B_j$  (i.e., the body labeled

with “j”) with respect to observer O (who is at rest with respect to some main reference frame) the absolute velocity of  $B_j$ , or  $V_j$ . If another observer is connected solidly to  $B_k$ , then this observer sees  $B_j$ , moving with respect to  $B_k$ , with the relative velocity  $V_j - V_k$ . If you remember your high school science, you may recall that such difference follows the rule of parallelograms for summing two vectors. In fact, it may be written  $V_j + (-V_k)$ , where the term in parentheses means “the opposite of  $V_k$ .”

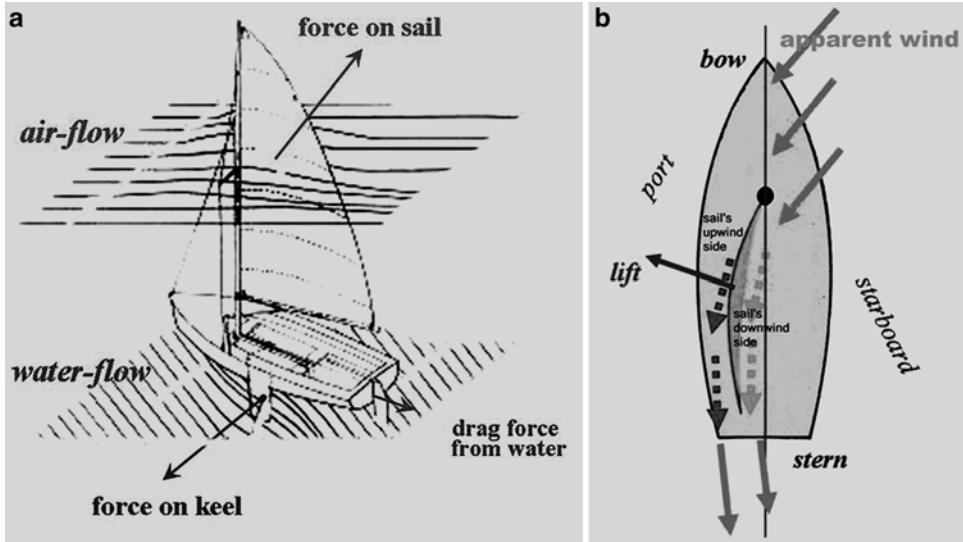
Let us describe a simple but meaningful case: a boat with no sail, or other propulsive device, is floating on a water stream moving with respect to the land with a speed of 10 knots (1 knot equals about 0.51 m/s) and parallel to the shore, for instance from left to right as observed by a person on shore and facing the sea. We can denote such boat by B1, the sea stream by B2, and the person by P1. In addition, this observer senses a wind (B3) with the same velocity. Let us assume that a sailor (S1) is simply seated on B1. Apart from seeing the land moving from *his/her* left to right, what else does he/she observe? S1 senses both water and air at rest. Furthermore, the *relative* velocity between water stream and wind (B2 and B3) is zero as well (according to the technical note in the above box).

The direction of a **plane** (or an almost-plane) surface is that of the line perpendicular to the surface itself. For instance, by saying that a sail is downwind or upwind means that it is perpendicular to the wind velocity.

Now, suppose that the sailor raises a small sail. What happens to the boat motion? Nothing, of course, since no wind, as seen from S1 onboard, is blowing on the sail. Instead, let us suppose that P1, on the land, observes an increase of the wind’s velocity up to 15 knots. Let us move to the sailor’s viewpoint. S1 senses an *aft* wind of 5 knots parallel to the shore and the wind fills the sail, pushes the boat, and increases the boat speed with respect to the sea, namely, it now creates a nonzero *relative* velocity between the boat and the water. (Implicitly, here we have supposed that the sail is downwind-oriented.)

We are not finished. In addition to the action (or force) of the wind on the sail, there is another action (or force) on the hull, because B2 is now striking that part of B1 immersed in the water. In this simple example, the action from the water consists only of an increasing resistance, called the **drag**, to the sailboat motion. As the boat speed increases, the drag balances the force on the sail progressively: when the vector sum of these contrasting forces vanishes, the sailboat cruises. All this takes place because, as pointed out above, water and air have a nonzero relative velocity, which ultimately allows the boat to *control* its motion. Everybody who wants to go offshore on a small sailboat knows (at least intuitively) that no sailing is possible if air and water do not move with respect to one another.

What happens if the sail is at an arbitrary angle with respect to the direction of the wind sensed onboard? In general, we can have a complicated situation, but let’s keep it simple. If the sail is oriented like that of Fig. 5.3, then it behaves similarly to a well-shaped vertical wing. The pressure on the sail’s downwind surface (i.e., the sail’s convex side) is higher than the pressure on the sail’s upwind surface (i.e., the sail’s concave side). Thus, a net force

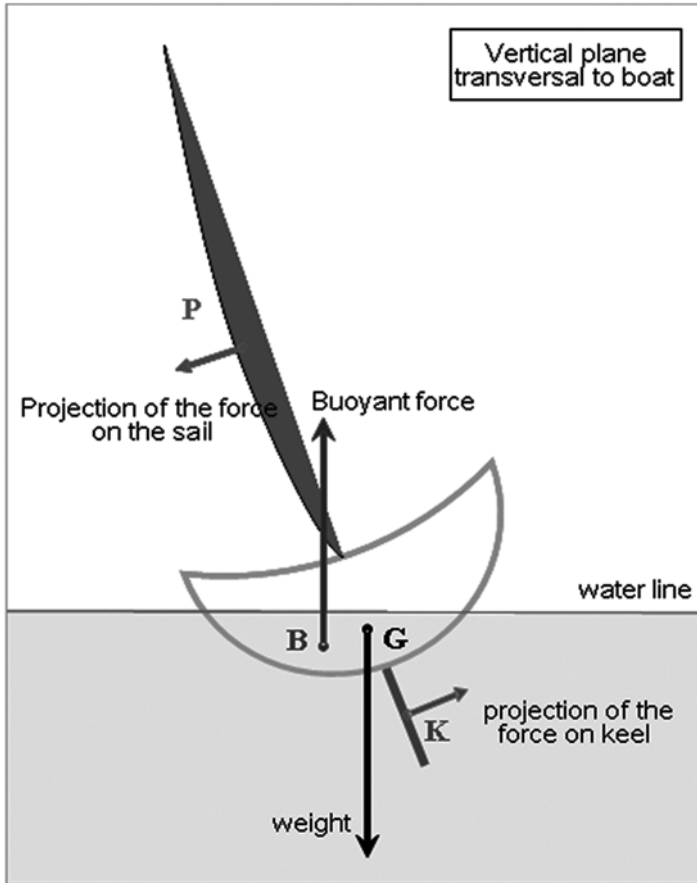


5.3 (a, b) Water, wind and boat configuration

(called the **lift**) acts on the sail; it actually is a lateral or leeway force with respect to the boat stern–bow axis. A problem arises. Although there is a large component of the force along the longitudinal axis of the sailboat, there is also a significant leeward component. What prevents the sailboat from experiencing an uncontrolled sideways drift? Here is the role of the water. If the boat is endowed with a keel (or its small version, the centerboard), namely, a large quasi-flat surface under the boat, then the strong resistance of the water on this surface prevents the whole boat from being moved transversally. Thus, sailors can sail. Figure 5.3a shows the main forces: the (aerodynamic) force on the sail, and the (hydrodynamic) forces on the keel and the hull. The sailboat can accelerate along the course determined by the sum of such forces until this total vanishes. Afterward the sailboat can cruise. If the skipper turns the rudder or the wind changes, then new cruising-equilibrium conditions arise.

Figure 5.4 shows that the various forces are applied to different points. For instance, the lift is applied to the sail pressure center, say,  $P$ , whereas the force on the keel can be envisaged as “concentrated” on its pressure center, say,  $K$ . Let us look at Fig. 5.4 showing the boat from the stern/bow. Since  $P$  and  $K$  do not coincide, there is a torque that causes the sailboat to tilt leeway. This is the **heeling torque** that would cause the sailboat to capsize, if unbalanced.

Is there anything that may halt this otherwise progressive tilting? Yes, there is. As a point of fact, two other significant forces act on the sailboat. One is its weight, downward-applied to the center of mass (or the barycenter), say,  $G$  of the whole boat, including any crew. The other one is the Archimedes force, or the **buoyancy**, which is upward-applied to the barycenter, say,  $B$  of the water mass *displaced* by the hull.  $B$  is also called the center of buoyancy. The pair of these forces generates a torque that rotates the sailboat in the way opposite to the heeling torque, namely, the weight-buoyancy pair forms a counter torque. Therefore, besides the balance of the forces themselves, one has to maneuver to also achieve the balance of the above torques. As a result, the sailboat can cruise stably upwind (but not *directly* upwind) in a configuration similar to that shown in Fig. 5.4.



5.4 Main forces on a sailboat (Courtesy of author Vulpetti)

The orientations of both sail and sailboat are complicated, but quite necessary to navigate and change course. Although the forces acting on a space solar sail are of different kinds, the orientation of a space sail shall be controlled accurately to obtain the desired path toward any target far from Earth.

## EARLY HISTORY OF SPACE SAILING

If rockets are inappropriate (and they are indeed) for advanced and long-range missions in future spaceflight, one is required to search for valid propulsion alternatives. As previously discussed in Chap. 4, there are many potential non-rocket propulsive devices. That means that external-to-vehicle sources of energy are used; otherwise the spacecraft would be a rocket (as explained in Chap. 2).

Where would one find an external powerful source with plenty of energy free of charge? It is natural to resort to the nearest star, which is not Proxima Centauri! It's the Sun. Our Sun is really a stupendous energy-producing engine. Deep inside the Sun, an enormous amount of hydrogen (over 4 million metric tons per second) is continuously transformed into helium via nuclear fusion. The total energy stored in the solar core is so high that, if the fusion were halted now, the Sun would remain luminous for at least 20 million years. On the other hand, the energy produced by the solar nuclear reactions in a given time interval requires thousands of years to reach the visible solar surface (also known as the photosphere).

Above the photosphere, there is a thin layer named the **chromosphere** and above that, an extended zone known as the **solar corona** (much lower in density than the photosphere, but much hotter). Above the photosphere, sunlight is essentially free to move through space in every direction. The corona produces additional light, which propagates into space. As a result, our star emits abundant ultraviolet light, visible, infrared and—in much lower amounts—radio waves and X-rays. We shall see in the next section that all forms of light are of the same nature—the **photon**—solely differing in energy. All photons are massless. Here, we call this overall “stream” of light the **solar photon flow**.

In addition, the Sun releases plenty of massive particles, essentially protons and electrons (95 %), alpha particles (4 %), and other ionized atoms. Such particles form what is known as the **solar wind** and should not be confused with the solar photon flow in any case. For spaceflight purposes, say that solar wind is inhomogeneous, variable, and largely unpredictable. When the solar wind approaches a body endowed with a magnetic field (like Earth and some other planets), the interaction is most complex and dependent in part on the Sun–body distance. Thus, it seems improbable that controlled spacecraft trajectories may be obtained, for months or years, by something so variable. Here is the first important difference with sea sailing: we shall not use a wind of matter particles, such as the usual wind, for pushing space sails.

Then, may we utilize the solar photon flow for space sailing? If so, what should we do in practice? The latter question is largely related to various technological developments. In contrast, the former question is more conceptual and is related directly to the physics of light.

### **The Amazing Nature of Light**

Light was the object of a very active investigation by some ancient natural philosophers, long before the physicists of the modern era. Here are some examples.

In the first century B.C., Lucretius asserted that the solar light and heat consist of corpuscles; he pursued the basic idea of Democritus (400 B.C.) and his followers that everything is composed of indivisible minute particles that he called **atoms**. Ptolemy dealt with the phenomena of reflection and refraction of light. His assumptions were expanded and improved upon by the Persian mathematician Alhazen, who wrote many books on optics and tried to verify his theory by experiments around 1000 A.D. His major work was translated into Latin in 1270, but published in Europe only in 1572, 20 years before the birth of Pierre Gassendi, the great scientist and philosopher who also insisted on the atomistic view of light.

Isaac Newton started from Gassendi's work and oriented himself with the corpuscular view of light. Newton's theory on light appeared somewhat consistent with the luminous phenomena known at that time (i.e., reflection and refraction). Newton knew that his theory was unable to explain *partial* reflection, but he did not worry excessively. Newton's view about the nature of light dominated physics for many decades in the eighteenth century. Nevertheless, in the second half of the seventeenth century, Robert Hooke and Christian Huygens published their work (30 years apart) about a wave theory of light. This theory was able to predict the significant phenomena called the *interference* and the *polarization* of light. Thomas Young showed experimentally, by focusing on the *diffraction* of light, that light behaves as waves. Euler, Fresnel and Poisson argued that the phenomena related to light could be more easily explained by special waves propagating in a medium filling all space (the ether), obeying the principles contained in the theory. Even partial reflection could be explained by the wave theory of light, *provided that* the light involved is sufficiently intense.

In 1873, James Clerk Maxwell published *A Treatise on Electricity and Magnetism*. By a stupendous conceptual synthesis of the previous ideas and experimental results, including those connecting light to electromagnetism (Michael Faraday, Armand Fizeau), he derived

*Partial* reflection is not an unusual phenomenon observed only in the laboratory, but is very common indeed. If you have a transparent medium (water, glass, Plexiglas, etc.) and a source of light (directed out of it) on the same side as you, you can be sure that most of the emitted light passes through the medium. However, a small fraction of it is reflected from the surface nearest you, hence its name. (Examples of this phenomenon include the moonlight reflected from a lake and looking at a shop's window, which allows one to see objects behind the glass as well as the reflected images of external objects.) In addition, you can note the same thing from a second subsequent surface, and so forth, of the medium or set of media. If you arrange a laboratory experiment where you can use many slabs (usually, one at a time) of different thickness, a source of one-color light (e.g., a red laser like the pointer of a lecturer), and a detector of light, the experimental outcomes are really strange, so strange that the phenomenon persists even when the source gets dimmer and dimmer. Only quantum physics can explain this phenomenon fully.

the fundamental equations that still bear his name governing the behavior of the electric and magnetic forces in space, in time and inside matter. In electromagnetic theory, light consists of high-frequency waves that are able to propagate in vacuum and in any direction at an ultra-high (constant) speed (see *speed of light* in the Glossary). The electromagnetic theory asserts that radio waves, thermal radiation and visible light all are of the same nature: the only difference is in the vibration frequency or, equivalently, the wavelength. (How the electromagnetic range or spectrum can be subdivided will be discussed in Chap. 18.)

Scientists of the nineteenth century accepted Maxwell's theory: everything about light was apparently and elegantly explained. Plenty of experiments were arranged in the subsequent years for testing electromagnetic theory. Thus, the particle view of light fell into disrepute.



However, some problems were appearing on the horizon. Let us mention one having basic relevance to sailing in space. In his treatise, Maxwell pointed out that if waves propagate in a certain medium, then one should expect a pressure on a surface perpendicular to the propagation direction. During 1873–1874, William Crookes claimed to have found the experimental proof of the radiation pressure by means of his radiometer. However, a careful analysis by many scientists showed that he was measuring a different phenomenon. In 1876, independently of Maxwell, Italian physicist Adolfo Bartoli showed, by a *conceptual experiment* (see Glossary), that the celebrated second law of thermodynamics, which the whole Universe obeys, requires that the light emitted by a body at any temperature must exert a pressure on a material surface.

Although very small, as predicted by the Maxwell theory, the pressure of light represented a crucial point because of its profound meaning. In 1887, Heinrich Hertz proved the existence of electromagnetic waves experimentally; he showed that such waves can travel through

During the course of the nineteenth century, many scientists worked experimentally on another strange phenomenon: when ultraviolet light or X-rays (i.e., electromagnetic waves of high frequency) impinge on a metal, the metal becomes charged because something endowed with negative charge is emitted. The phenomenon was called the **photoelectric effect**. The first observation can be traced back to Alexandre Becquerel (1839), followed more extensively by Heinrich Rudolf Hertz (1887), Wilhelm Hallwachs (1888), Augusto Righi, Aleksandr Grigorievich Stoletov, Julius Elster and Hans Friedrich Geitel (from 1889 to 1902). In 1899, Joseph Thomson inferred that the so-called cathode rays were particles with negative charges. Later, such particles were called **electrons**, one of the main components of any atom. From 1899 to 1902, Philipp von Lenard investigated how light frequency affects the energy of the electrons released by the photoelectric effect. Experimental data accumulated, but no satisfactory theoretical explanation was found. Albert Einstein explained this effect in 1905. In the years that followed, heated discussions occurred among scientists about the theory of light and the quanta. The wave-particle duality permeates not only considerations on light, but also studies of elementary particles, atoms and molecules. Other famous scientists contributed to this effort in the 1920s and the 1930s. Even though some of them were reluctant to accept or were opposed to the new ideas, the path toward quantum mechanics and quantum electrodynamics (which includes Einstein's special relativity) was unavoidable. In particular, the quantum and wave aspects both confirm that light can exert pressure on a material surface. In addition, even when light impinges on such a surface, both the principles of energy and momentum conservation still hold. These facts are quite important for space sailing.

space and set some theoretical foundations that Guglielmo Marconi subsequently extended and applied to his invention of the radio. Finally, in 1900, Russian physicist Pyotr Lebedev measured the pressure of light on a solid surface by means of an ingenious device. This was possible also because of the advancement of such technologies as intense light sources and

pumps capable of producing near-vacuum conditions in a small volume. Lebedev's work was confirmed by US physicists Ernst Fox Nichols and Gordon Ferrie Hull in 1901 by means of a radiometer. Thus, this prediction of electromagnetic theory was confirmed.

An intense flux of sunlight impinges on any material surface in space. However, in general, the correct force of the solar photons on a surface cannot be obtained by simply multiplying the solar photon pressure (see Glossary) by the surface's area. It is the twofold photon nature that intervenes in the interaction between light and material surface. The main aspects of this important interaction are presented qualitatively in Part II, whereas a more technical description can be found in Part V of this book. Here is an example of an ideal case: If sunlight is fully reflected by a surface, then the force on a perpendicular sail of  $0.11 \text{ km}^2$  at 1 AU would amount to 1 newton (0.225 lbf). If the whole sailcraft has a mass of 169 kg (372.6 lb), then the solar-pressure acceleration on this space vehicle equals the Sun's gravitational acceleration at 1 AU or  $0.00593 \text{ m/s}^2$ . (This is the same acceleration that compels Earth to revolve about the Sun.) It is very challenging to design a spacecraft with a mass-to-area ratio equal to  $169 \text{ kg}/0.11 \text{ km}^2 = 1.536 \text{ g/m}^2$ . However, by modern technology and new sailcraft subsystem concepts, this value should be more achievable.

Max Planck's hypothesis was published in 1900. In 1905 (the same year as special relativity), Albert Einstein explained all features of the photoelectric effect by quanta of light.<sup>1</sup> Thus, light appeared to be an electromagnetic wave endowed with the particle properties of energy and **momentum** (see Glossary) in *discrete* amounts! In 1926, US chemist Gilbert Lewis proposed the term **photon** for the electromagnetic quantum of light.

### Benefits for Spaceflight

Can the above property of photons be utilized for space propulsion? In the first years of the twentieth century, Swedish chemist Svante August Arrhenius suggested that spores, pushed by solar-light pressure, might diffuse life through the solar system and beyond. In the 1920s, Russian scientists Konstantin Tsiolkovsky and Friedrich Arturowitsch Zander wrote that a very thin space sheet, thrust by solar-light pressure, should be able to achieve high speeds in space. Subsequently, the Americans Carl Wiley (1951) and Richard Garwin (1958) published the first technical papers on solar sails of the modern era. Garwin was the first to use

---

<sup>1</sup> In 1900, Max Planck published the first quantum theory, in which light is treated as a particle endowed with *discrete* amounts of energy, called **quanta**. Planck considered such particles to be the basic units of energy. According to Albert Einstein, the energy of such an element is expressed by  $E = h\nu = hc/\lambda$ , where  $\lambda$  denotes the wavelength. Although very simple, this relationship contains two of the most important constants of nature, the speed of light ( $c$ ) in vacuum and the **Planck constant** ( $h$ ) (see Glossary). In addition to energy, such elements transport **momentum** ( $p$ ) (see Glossary) given by  $p = E/c = h/\lambda$ . Even though it is the carrier of energy and momentum, the quantum of light does not have mass!

the term **solar sailing** applied to space vehicles. Other scientific papers were published by T.C. Tsu (1959), H.S. London (1960), N. Sands (1961) and W.R. Fimple (1962); they regarded solar sail spacecraft trajectories that are different from the usual Keplerian orbits.

In the following years, there was a certain interest in such options for navigating in space, but most of the attention by propulsion and mission designers was focused on energetic chemical engines, advanced rocket engines (such as the full nuclear rocket) and the nuclear-electric thruster. In the 1970s, the NASA Jet Propulsion Laboratory studied a solar sail interplanetary probe for a rendezvous with Comet Halley (which was returning to the inner solar system in 1986), but the study did not lead to a flight article. In the 1970s and 1980s, extra-solar and interstellar space sails pushed by photons were proposed and analyzed deeply by G.L. Matloff, E.F. Mallove, M. Meot-Ner and R.L. Forward. Many new mission concepts and strategies were introduced. Solar sails moving in the solar system were analyzed also by J.C. van der Ha, V.J. Modi, R.L. Staehle and E. Polyakhova. Such studies helped to develop understanding some of the potentialities of the pressure of light—together with appropriate spacecraft technology—for many types of space mission, from those ones in the Earth–Moon space to missions to the near interstellar medium and beyond.

In the 1990s and in the first years of this century, new meaningful studies, findings and technological realizations have been made in the US, Europe and Japan. After NASA and the Japanese space agency (JAXA), ESA and other national European space agencies have become aware—through a number of meaningful (either independent or contract) studies—of the importance of the solar sail option for advanced space exploration and utilization. The main consequences of such historical and recent findings are the subject of Part II of this book.

The 1990s also witnessed the first deployment experiments in space of gossamer devices that could be considered as experimental solar sails. Conducted by space shuttle astronauts and cosmonauts aboard the Mir space station, these experiments indicated that thin-film structures could be manufactured on Earth, stowed for launch and then unfurled or inflated in the environment of space.

In the first years of the new millennium, the tempo of solar sail research stepped up. A non-governmental organization, The Planetary Society, attempted to deploy a test sail first from a sub-orbital rocket and later from a satellite in low Earth orbit (LEO). Sadly, both launches of this privately funded Cosmos-1 sail failed because of carrier rocket malfunctions. During the same period, NASA and ESA performed various vacuum chamber sail deployment tests. JAXA conducted a successful sail-unfurlment test from a sub-orbital sounding rocket near the top of that rocket's ballistic trajectory.

The year 2010 marked a milestone in the development of the solar sail as an operational in-space propulsion system. JAXA succeeded in unfurling the IKAROS solar sail technology demonstrator in interplanetary space between the solar orbits of Earth and Venus. This craft demonstrated that the sail could be used for both interplanetary propulsion and to control the sail's attitude relative to the Sun. In the US, NASA launched and unfurled Nanosail-D2 in LEO. This spacecraft was designed to demonstrate that solar sails could be unfurled in low orbits to function parachute-like and hasten the atmospheric reentry of carrier rockets and obsolete satellites attached to them. Curiously, in 1997, author Vulpetti was consultant at ESA/ESTEC (Noordwijk, Holland) in the preliminary phases of the project Daedalus, a small real sailcraft to be launched by Ariane. One of his tasks was to

analyze the deorbiting induced by solar radiation pressure thrust. But due to funding reasons, ESTEC Daedalus (planned for December 21, 1999) did not become the first sailcraft in the history of Astronautics.

In conclusion, the following key points particular to solar photon sailing should be emphasized:

- Since the solar photon flow is constantly present in the solar system, a spacecraft equipped with a sail undergoes a continuous thrust that allows it to reach any destination.
- There is no need for the expenditure of onboard propellant during interplanetary travel.
- As is the case with terrestrial sailboats, space sailcraft require some device that can control the orientation of the sail.
- As is the case with terrestrial sailboats, interplanetary sailcraft can be fully reusable.
- There is no need to build a staged sailcraft (unless one wants to accomplish some very special missions).
- Depending on how well the navigation is, flight times for certain missions can be decreased significantly with respect to those obtainable by rockets.

There are other properties relevant to space sailcraft; some of them will be explained in Part II and for the interested, mathematically inclined reader, in Part V.

## FURTHER READING

### Phoenicians

<http://phoenicia.org/index.shtml>.

<http://phoenicia.org/cities.html>.

[http://www.worldwideschool.org/library/books/hst/ancient/History of Phoenicia](http://www.worldwideschool.org/library/books/hst/ancient/History%20of%20Phoenicia).

<http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Phoenicia>.

<http://www.cedarland.org/ships.html>.

<http://phoenicia.org/ships.html>.

<http://www.barca.fsnet.co.uk/basics.htm>.

<http://www.mnsu.edu/emuseum/prehistory/aegean/theculturesofgreece/phoenician.html>.

<http://www.lgic.org/en/phoenicians.php>.

<http://www.bestofsicily.com/mag/art150.htm>.

<http://www.cedarseed.com/water/phoenicians.html>.

### Sea Sailing

Bob Bond, *The Handbook of Sailing*, Knopf, New York, 1992.

Ross Garrett, Dave Wilkie, *The Symmetry of Sailing: The Physics of Sailing for Yachtsmen*, Sheridan House, 1996.

## 58 The Solar Sail Option: From the Oceans to Space

J. J. Isler, Peter Isler, *Sailing for Dummies*, Hungry Minds, Inc. 1997.

Bryon D. Anderson, *The Physics of Sailing Explained*, Sheridan House, 2003.

<http://www.nationalgeographic.com/volvoceanrace/interactives/sailing/index.html>.

<http://www.wb-sails.fi/news/SailPowerCalc/SailPowerCalc.htm>.

### History of Physics and Light Pressure

R. D. Purrington, *Physics in the Nineteenth Century*, Rutgers University Press, 1997.

<http://www.aip.org/history/einstein/>.

[http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/History\\_of\\_physics](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/History_of_physics).

[http://www.biocrawler.com/encyclopedia/Radiation\\_pressure](http://www.biocrawler.com/encyclopedia/Radiation_pressure).

<http://galileo.phys.virginia.edu/classes/252/home.html>.

<http://www.britannica.com/eb/article-9062400>

**Part II**  
**Space Missions by Sail**

# 6

## Principles of Space Sailing

The romantic-sounding term **solar sail** evokes an image of a majestic vessel (similar to the great sailing ships of the eighteenth century) cruising the depths of interplanetary space (Fig. 6.1). In a very literal sense, this imagery is very close to the anticipated reality of solar sails. Very large and diaphanous sail-propelled ships will traverse our solar system and perhaps, one day in the future, voyage to another star. From what will these ships be made and how will they work?

The **solar wind** is a stream of charged particles (mostly hydrogen and helium) emitted by the Sun. The solar sails, which are the primary focus of this book, are not blown by the solar wind, though there have been proposed “sails” that will do just that. The “wind” that blows a solar sail is sunlight. The ever-present, gentle push of sunlight will eventually accelerate our starships to speeds far above that achievable by chemical or electric rockets—or the solar wind.

### WHAT IS A SOLAR SAIL?

To understand how sunlight propels a solar sail, one must first understand at least a little bit about the interaction of light with matter. When sunlight, which has momentum, falls on an absorptive surface (consider a surface painted black), very little sunlight reflects from the surface; most is absorbed. In space, where there is no air resistance and an object is essentially free from other forces, the sunlight falling on a black sail will transfer its momentum to the sail, causing the sail to move. If the same material is now painted with a light-reflecting material (like a mirror), it will reflect the photon instead of absorbing it. Like the black sail, this one will also begin to move, and the reflective sail will accelerate at a higher rate than the one with a dark surface. The reflected light transmits more of its momentum to the sail than the light that was absorbed. The principle of momentum transfer applies to all forms of sails, including photon sails, magnetic sails, plasma sails and, very recently, electric sails.



6.1 Solar sails will propel our starships in much the same way that wind gave the great sailing ships their energy for more earthly exploration (Courtesy of NASA)

## MOMENTUM TRANSFER

You can test this at home using a rubber ball, a ball made of modeling clay (or Play Doh) and a hinged door. First, throw the ball of modeling clay at an open door and notice how far the door moves. The clay will most likely stick to the door, mimicking the absorption of light on a dark-colored sail. Next, open the door back to its initial position and throw the rubber ball, trying to throw with the same force as was used with the clay, and notice how far the door moves. If the experiment goes as it should (which is not always the case in experimental physics!), the rubber ball will bounce off the door and cause it to close farther than was achieved with the ball made of clay. In this case, the rubber ball (like the light) is reflected from the door, transferring twice as much momentum to the door as the ball of clay. This is analogous to the light reflecting from the sail.

At first thought, it might appear that a solar sail would be very limited in the directions it can move. For example, it seems intuitive that a solar sail might be used for a voyage to Mars or Jupiter, but not to Venus or Mercury. Venus and Mercury are sunward of Earth and one might think that the Sun will therefore constantly push a sail away from them. If the planets were not in orbit about the Sun, this would be correct. But the planets *are* in orbit about the Sun and we can take advantage of this fact to allow a solar sail to fly either toward or away from it.

Just like a wind-powered sailing ship, a solar sail can tack—sort of. Instead of maneuvering back and forth “into” a head wind so as to move the ship toward the prevailing wind



(sunlight), the sail can be tilted to alter the angle at which the light strikes and reflects from the sail—causing it to either accelerate or decelerate. Earth orbits the Sun at 30 km/s (>66,000 miles/h), and any sail launched into space from Earth will therefore be in an orbit around the Sun with about the same orbital velocity. Since the distance a planet or spacecraft orbits around the Sun is determined by how fast it is moving, one may change that distance by either speeding up or slowing down. For a solar sail, this means changing the orientation of the sail so that it reflects light at an angle such that the momentum from the sunlight pushes the sail either in the direction it is already moving (acceleration) or in the opposite direction (deceleration). In either case, part of the light's momentum will be perpendicular to the direction of motion, causing the sailcraft to move slightly outward at the same time it is accelerating or decelerating. Adding up the various forces can be complicated, and making sure the net force is causing motion in the desired direction is an engineering challenge. Fortunately, we know how to model these effects and control them, just like a seasoned captain knows how to tack his boat against the prevailing wind.

Steamships and modern diesel electric cruise ships must refuel or they will be dead in the water. As long as the wind blows, a sailboat will be able to move. Like steamships, rockets must refuel. Solar sailcraft needn't bother! As long as the Sun shines, they will be able to use the sunlight to move. Unfortunately, this means they can only accelerate or decelerate in the inner solar system where sunlight is plentiful. When they reach distant Jupiter, the available sunlight is only a fraction of that available on Earth and the resulting forces on the sail are too weak. As we will discuss in later chapters, there are tricks that may be used to allow a solar sail to traverse the entire solar system (or stay in it on recently discovered orbits) and perhaps take us to the stars.

In order to work, a solar sail must be of very low mass. The momentum transferred from sunlight to the sail is very small. If the sail and its payload are massive, the resulting acceleration will be slight. Simply stated, heavy is bad. What is needed are highly reflective, strong and lightweight sails. Modern materials science has provided several promising candidates and building viable sails from them is now within our reach.

## **HOW CAN THE SOLAR WIND BE USED FOR SAILING?**

As mentioned above, there are other sail concepts that use entirely different physical processes to sail through space. Since three of them use the solar wind, it will be useful to discuss shortly the nature of that "wind" before describing how they harness it to produce thrust.

The solar wind is an ensemble of electrons and positively charged ions (mostly hydrogen and helium) produced by the Sun. Just like sunlight, there is a continuous stream of this plasma flowing outward from the Sun into the solar system. Unlike sunlight, there may be intense bursts of these charged particles emitted by the Sun at any time and in any direction. These ions and electrons race outward from the Sun at speeds in excess of 400 km/s. In fact, during periods of high sunspot activity, these speeds have been measured to be greater than 800 km/s! Could we use this wind to propel our spaceships?

One way to take advantage of the solar wind for propulsion is the magsail. As the name implies, a magsail uses the interaction of the solar wind with a magnetic field to produce

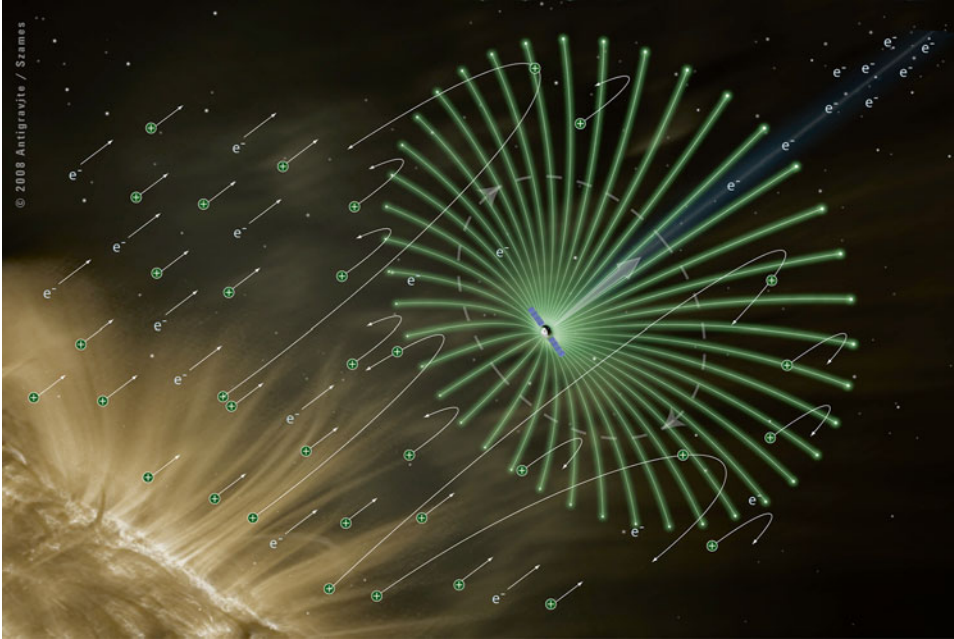
thrust. A charged particle moving through or into a magnetic field will experience a force, causing it to speed up, slow down or change direction, depending on the direction in which it is moving with respect to the field. And since Newton taught us that “for every action there is an equal and opposite reaction,” the magnetic field will likewise be affected. In this case, the structure from which the field originates will experience the opposing force, giving it acceleration.

Conventional magnets made of iron are heavy (after all, they are made of iron!). Flowing a current through a wire can make lighter weight magnets. Flowing a large current in a low-resistance wire will produce a strong magnetic field. Magsail designers postulate the use of large superconducting wire loops carrying high currents to interact with the solar wind—sailing the solar wind.

While technically interesting and somewhat elegant, magsails have significant disadvantages when compared to solar sails. First of all, we don’t (yet) have the materials required to build them. Second, the solar wind is neither constant nor uniform. Combining the spurious nature of the solar wind flux with the fact that controlled reflection of solar wind ions is a technique we have not yet mastered. The notion of sailing in this manner becomes akin to tossing a message in a bottle into the surf at high tide, hoping the currents will carry the bottle to where you want it to go.

In 2004, a new concept arose for trying to utilize the momentum flux of solar wind: the electric sail (see Further Reading below). Pekka Jahnunen, a researcher in the Finnish Meteorological Institute, is the originator of such concept. Like the magsail, this concept uses the solar wind for producing thrust. However, differently from the magsail, this sail interacts with the solar plasma via a mesh of long and thin tethers kept at high positive voltage by means of an onboard electron gun. In its baseline configuration, the spacecraft spins and the tethers are tensioned by centrifugal acceleration. It should be possible to control each wire voltage singly, at least to within certain limits. Thrust originates since the solar wind protons (remember that any proton in the Universe is positively charged) are repelled by the positive voltage of the mesh. In contrast, the electrons are first captured and then ejected away by an onboard electron emitter because accumulation of electrons would neutralize the mesh voltage rapidly. (The reverse configuration, i.e., electrons repelled and protons re-emitted, would produce a thrust about 2,000 times lower). Figure 6.2 is an artist picture of the electric sail concept. At this point one might object that the solar wind fluctuations are always present and no trajectory design would be reliable, quite analogously to the magnetic sails. However, this spacecraft could directly control the electric field that fills the space around it. In particular, the magnitude of the thrust could be controlled between zero and some maximum value by adjusting the electron gun current or voltage. Are such advantages sufficient, for instance, to issue a thrust level almost independent of the high variable solar wind intensity? Would it possible to use the electric sail for planetary defense? Would it be possible a rendezvous with outer planets? An active research is in progress.

It is important to realize that any propulsion type needs to be controlled for designing the vehicle’s motion with high probability (the mathematical certainty is not achievable in practice). Otherwise, one could not know where it is going to or when it arrives at the target. Solar sailing cannot be an exception. Even sunlight is variable with time and mostly unpredictable. However, the fluctuation level is very low and we can design/predict a



6.2 Artist picture of the electric-sail concept. Differently from the magnetic-sail mode, current and voltage of the onboard field generator could be controlled (Courtesy of Alexandre Szames, Antigravité, Paris, and Dr. Pekka Janhunen, Finnish Meteorological Institute)

mission in all phases. Perhaps, this is the biggest difference between sunlight based and solar wind based sailcraft. There are in fact other phenomena in the solar wind that could increase the difficulty of propulsive application. However, such intriguing aspects—found out in the Space era—are considerably technical and therefore beyond the aims of this introductory chapter. Nevertheless, additional information about the solar wind can be found in other chapters of this book. In any case, the electric sailing concept deserves an investigation deeper than what done hitherto in literature.

Solar sails, magsails and electric sails are all examples of the creativity of the human mind unleashed. Using the immense energy of the Sun for propulsion is an idea whose time has come, and solar sails are poised to be the first to make use of this never-ending supply of fuel for space exploration.

## FURTHER READING

For readers interested in science fiction stories that use the solar sail as a primary means of propulsion, we recommend Arthur C. Clarke, *Project Solar Sail*, ROC/Penguin, New York, 1990. A more technical treatment of solar sails can be found in Louis Friedman, *Starsailing, Solar Sails and Interstellar Travel*, Wiley, New York, 1988.

For graduate students in astronautical engineering or physics, a closer presentation of sailcraft concept and the solar-wind properties can be found at <http://www.giovanivulpetti.it/SolarSailing/SailPhotonPhysics/tabid/64/Default.aspx>, Lecture 2: Sailcraft Concepts, by author Vulpetti.

For technical readers interested in the electric-sail concept, we suggest the following scientific papers:

1. Janhunen P., *Electric sail for spacecraft propulsion*, J. Prop. Power, 20, 763-764, 2004
2. Janhunen, P., *The electric sail - a new propulsion method which may enable fast missions to the outer solar system*, J. British Interpl. Soc., 61, 8, 322-325, 2008
3. Janhunen, P., *On the feasibility of a negative polarity electric sail*, Ann. Geophys., 27, 1439-1447, 2009
4. Janhunen, P., *Increased electric sail thrust through removal of trapped shielding electrons by orbit chaotisation due to spacecraft body*, Ann. Geophys., 27, 3089-3100, 2009
5. Merikallio, S. and P. Janhunen, *Moving an asteroid with electric solar wind sail*, Astrophys. Space Sci. Trans., 6, 41-48, 2010
6. Janhunen, P., *Photonic spin control for solar wind electric sail*, Acta Astronautica, 83, 85-90, 2013

# 7

## What Is a Space Sailcraft?

Chapters 1–4 discussed the importance of the rocket propulsion in the first 50 years of spaceflight, and its limitations with respect to what space-faring nations (augmenting in number and quality) would want to accomplish in the solar system and beyond. Chapter 5 discussed the concept of sailing, first on Earth seas with conventional sailboats, then by extending the concept to space; there, the first similarities and differences between sea sailcraft and space sailcraft were emphasized. Chapter 6 detailed the principles of space sailing. Now this chapter will discuss what a space sail actually means, through the great impact it can have on the design of the different systems, which is not as obvious as it might seem.

One may think of the space sailcraft as the sum of two pieces: something like a conventional spacecraft (containing the payload) and a sail system consisting of a sail with booms, rigging, tendons and a device controlling its orientation in space. That's correct, in principle. However, such an oversimplified description may induce someone to believe that building a sailcraft means merely adding a sail to something that already is well known. In Chap. 5, basic analogies and differences between terrestrial sailboats and space sailcraft were mentioned. Here there is another important difference—the relative size: *In the space sailcraft, the two-dimensional size of the sail system overwhelms that of any other system.* This is due to three reasons:

1. Earth orbits the Sun at about 1 astronomical unit (AU).
2. The Sun's power emitted from its surface (technically called the **solar radiant emittance** or **exitance**) amounts to about 63.1 million W/m<sup>2</sup>.
3. The linear momentum a photon transports is scaled by the factor  $1/c$ , where  $c$  denotes the speed of light in vacuum. As a result, an object of 1 m<sup>2</sup> that is 1 AU distant from the Sun and perpendicular to the sunlight's direction can receive about 1,366 W (on average during a solar cycle).

What does it mean? If this object were a perfect mirror, it would experience a force equal to  $2 \cdot 1366/c = 0.0000091$  newtons (or about 0.000002 lbf). If the mass of such a body were 91 g, the ensuing acceleration would amount to 0.1 mm/s<sup>2</sup>. At 1 AU again, the solar

gravitational acceleration (which allows Earth to orbit stably about the Sun) is  $5.93 \text{ mm/s}^2$ . In other words, the solar light pressure acceleration on this particular object would be about 1/60 of the solar gravity at 1 AU.

The previous example (a typical one in solar sailing books) tells us two important things. First, such an acceleration level would be sufficient for many space missions (especially the first ones) and would correspond to an object having a mass-to-area ratio of  $91 \text{ g/m}^2$ ; second, if we aim at ambitious missions, we have to lessen this ratio by a factor of ten, at least. Despite the significant advancement in materials technology, key space systems (including the whole sail system) cannot be designed by decreasing their mass arbitrarily. As a result, a sailcraft has to have a large sail, from a few thousand to tens of thousands of square meters to begin with. (At the end of this chapter, we will discuss the micro-sailcraft concept.)

Now that we understand the above statement about relative size, we can analyze some implications of the major spacecraft systems. In this chapter, we adopt the following nomenclature: Sailcraft = Sail System + Spacecraft. Some of the topics briefly discussed here complement the discussion in Chaps. 11 and 12.

## **SAIL DEPLOYMENT**

Normally, once the whole sail system is manufactured on the ground, it should be folded and placed in a box. Subsequently, it will be unfolded in an initial orbit and, then, some initial orientation will be acquired. It is easy to guess that the sail system is considerably delicate. The sail configuration and the related deployment method affect the performance of the solar sail thrust, which is still a work in progress; some 20 m by 20 m sails have been unfolded in important experiments on the ground. This research area is considerably broad, and any deployment method must pass future tests in space. Let us mention just a few issues related to sail performance. Suppose that the sail is unfolded by means of telescopic booms, which slowly come out of the box. This means that the sail, either squared or polygonal in shape, has been divided into smaller (e.g., triangular) sheets. These sheets could be considered as a membrane subjected to two-dimensional different tensions in their plane. If the sheet undergoes a tension that it is much lower than the other-dimension tension, wrinkles develop. However, a sail divided into parts presents advantages from the construction and handling viewpoint.

Wrinkles should be avoided as much as possible because multiple reflections of light can occur among them. These wrinkles cause two undesirable effects: (1) locally, the sail can absorb much more energy than it would in normal conditions, and so-called hot spots develop; (2) if wrinkles cover a large fraction of the sail, the solar-pressure thrust decreases with respect to what is expected for a flat smooth surface. In one view, wrinkles increase the sail's intrinsic roughness (coming from the sail manufacturing process), which lessens the surface's ability to reflect the light in specular way.

Other deployment methods, some of which have been tested on the ground, apply to circular sails. For instance, the sail would be unfolded by a small-diameter inflatable tube attached around the sail circumference; once deployed, the tube has to be rigidized (in the space environment) to retain its shape without the need of keeping the tube under pressure

(a thing impossible to do for a long time). Although some corrugation may arise from such a method, it is expected that the sail could be almost wrinkle-free. One should note, however, that, replacing telescopic booms by inflatable tubes does not avoid wrinkles; the important thing is the circumferential geometry of the supporting beam (see the discussion of the Aurora collaboration in Chap. 13).

## SAIL CONTROL

This topic is discussed in detail in Chap. 11, but just a few issues that characterize a sailcraft are stressed here. After the separation of the *packed* sailcraft from the launcher, the first maneuver, the related commands and procedures (the so-called attitude acquisition) are performed in order to begin the planned mission time sequence. The first part of the sequence includes sail deployment. After sail unfolding and checkout (e.g., via the television cameras of the sail monitoring system) have been completed, the sail has to be oriented stably toward the Sun (not necessarily normal to the sunlight). The sail's first orientation maneuver (which can be considered the second **attitude acquisition**) is probably accomplished via some traditional equipment such as cold-gas thrusters, rotating wheels and extendable booms. Other ways can be developed. When the solar photons impinge on the sail, the center of pressure rises, as the sea wind does when it swells the sails of a conventional sailboat (see Chap. 5). From that moment on, two objects—the spacecraft and the sail system—are both subjected to gravity and will move through the action of the sail on the spacecraft and the reaction of the spacecraft upon the sail. However, since the spacecraft and sail do not form a rigid body, it should be possible to accomplish relative movement between the center of mass (of the sailcraft) and the center of pressure (of the sail). (This operation will involve only small electric motors.) The result will be a change in the sail orientation. Whereas Chap. 11 focuses on sail attitude control, here it is noted that small mass variations of the sailcraft cannot be excluded in a mission.

## COMMUNICATION SYSTEM

Let us consider the communication between the sailcraft and the ground station(s). Communications between the spacecraft and the ground control center are fundamental in a space mission, but the control center is not the only base. The spacecraft has to be tracked periodically from other ground stations with different tasks. NASA's Deep Space Network, ESA set of stations, and national centers (from different countries) are examples of ground stations. Both the station(s) and the control center receive and send electromagnetic waves to and from the spacecraft in different frequency bands. To do so, the spacecraft has to be "electromagnetically visible," and the onboard antennas have to point to Earth. Here is another implication of relative size. Where do we allocate the onboard antennas? This depends not only on the sail configuration, but also on the sail orientation along the sailcraft trajectory. On a spacecraft, there may be different types of antennas: scientific-data-return high-gain antennas, telemetry and command antennas, emergency

## 70 What Is a Space Sailcraft?

and low-gain antennas. Normally, a high-gain dish antenna works in different bands and thus performs different functions. Although it is very thin, the sail can cause obstruction of the antenna waves. It would not be very wise to put antennas close to the sail rim, as it could cause mechanical and electrical problems, induce sail instability, and make the normal sail control much more difficult. A possible solution may be to use the structure that normally forms the “axis” of the sail; for each antenna type necessary for the mission, we can place one on the front side of the sail and (a copy of) this one on the back side. In future advanced missions beyond the solar system, a small part of a wide sail might be designed to function as a big antenna, so large amounts of scientific data may be downloaded to Earth-based or Moon-based receiving antennas from distances as large as hundreds of astronomical units.

### SAILCRAFT TEMPERATURE

As for the power system on board a sailcraft, it is obvious that the required amount of watts depends on the mission type and purposes. The power system has to supply energy also to the thermal-control system. Space vehicles have to be designed to withstand the temperatures of space environments. Sail temperature can be adjusted solely by changing its orientation with respect to the incident light, but not too much, otherwise the sailcraft trajectory would change considerably. One has to design a trajectory by satisfying the temperature requirements of the sail materials and the mission target(s). The nonreflected photon energy is absorbed by the sail and then re-emitted almost uniformly. Therefore, if the sailcraft is sufficiently close to the Sun, other spacecraft systems may be hit not only by part of the light diffused by the sail, but also by a significant amount of energy in the form of infrared radiation, almost independently of their positions with respect to the sail. Therefore, the thermal control of such systems requires additional power in order to keep their range of operational temperatures.

A different situation occurs from sailcraft entering planetary shadows (penumbra and umbra). Since the sail is extended and very thin, the sail temperature drops and adapts to the space environment. When the sailcraft returns to light, the sail temperature rises more quickly. Although the space environment around a planet is very different from the interstellar medium, the sail’s temperature jumps may achieve over 200 K (in some planetary missions close to the Sun). Therefore, the sail materials have to be selected to withstand many high–low–high temperature cycles during their years of operational life.

### PAYLOAD

Usually, the mission payload consists of a set of instruments for detecting particles and fields, for receiving and sending signals, for taking pictures of objects, etc. Can the payload be affected by the sail? Suppose we design a planetocentric sailcraft, the payload of which will measure the detailed structure of the planet’s magnetic field, if any, in a large volume around the planet itself. The solar wind, interacting with such a magnetic region, continuously changes its shape and properties. One of the next-generation sailcraft



missions will probably be of a similar kind, for which the planet is Earth. Incidentally, although space satellites such as the NASA IMAGE spacecraft (March 2000–December 2005) and the ESA four-satellite CLUSTER (in operation since August 2000) have discovered fundamental phenomena in Earth’s magnetosphere, there are still many physical quantities to be measured better and longer in our magnetosphere.

How does a sailcraft behave inside a large region of magnetic and electric fields, and with many flows of charged particles? (Earth’s magnetosphere does not protect the planet completely.) If the sail size is wider than characteristic plasma lengths, then one of the expected effects consists of space plasma surrounding the sail’s front side by a positively charged sheath, whereas a wake of negatively charged flow extends beyond the sail’s back side significantly. Such a charge distribution changes the local properties of what the payload instruments can measure. Therefore, it is important to locate the scientific sensors sufficiently *ahead* of the sail system, where the plasma will be *undisturbed* by the sailcraft’s presence.

Since each mission has its own features, the payload-sail arrangement should be analyzed on a case-by-case basis.

## THE MICRO-SAILCRAFT CONCEPT

In Chap. 12, nanotechnology and its potential impact on solar sails will be discussed. Here, the discussion is limited to the following questions: If the ratio between the sailcraft mass and its effective area were kept fixed with the same sail orientation, would the motion of the vehicle remain unchanged, regardless of the sail size? What would happen if the sailcraft were scaled down further? In other words, how much can one reduce the size of the sailcraft? Is it only a technological problem or is there any physical limit that prevents having an (almost) arbitrarily small vehicle?

Let us start by noting that about 98 % of the solar irradiance is due to photons with wavelengths from 0.25  $\mu\text{m}$  to 3.5  $\mu\text{m}$  (micrometers) ( $\mu\text{m}$ ). The visible part of the spectrum (from 0.4 to 0.8  $\mu\text{m}$ ) carries about 49 % of the total solar irradiance. If one wants to utilize the solar energy at its best, it is difficult to think of building a sail with a diameter less than 10  $\mu\text{m}$ . Thus far, the telecom system has been based mainly on microwaves. Even if one envisages a complete system transmitting information at 100 gigahertz (GHz), the only antenna could not be smaller than 3 mm. If one turns to telecom system via laser, small lasers are possible, but there are other problems (e.g., pointing accuracy and receiving ground telescope) to be taken into account.

Consider a scientific payload. Interstellar spacecraft of 1 kg have been proposed; however, if one wishes to accomplish some high-performance deep-space mission science by tiny volume detectors, the probability of interaction between any space particle and the detector decreases dramatically. Even if we have one-event (large) detectors, getting a sufficiently high number of events is fundamental for analyzing data the mission is seeking. The minimum size of scientific instruments can vary significantly; it depends not only on technology, but also on the underlying physics.

What about nanoscience and nanotechnology for solar sailing? These quite intriguing topics deserve attention; they will be discussed in Chap. 12 with regard to sailcraft.

## 72 **What Is a Space Sailcraft?**

Here, it is noted that a few years ago, author Matloff discussed the possibility of a swarm of many tiny spacecraft, or nanoprobes, that collectively behave like a large spacecraft. As the reader can see, this is a very advanced concept; in principle, the probe might look like many small antennas that act together as a very large non constructible antenna, but much more intricate. This concept will be analyzed more deeply as nanoscience develops.

### **CONCLUSION**

Most of the above mentioned problems can be solved, as many other problems have been in the history of spaceflight. This chapter has shown that the sailcraft represents something considerably different from the satellites and probes launched into space so far, and it is just the beginning.

# 8

## Sails Versus Rockets

Rockets move spacecraft around in space from one destination to another. Solar sails also move spacecraft around in space from one destination to another. That is just about the only similarity between these two methods of spacecraft propulsion—commonality of function. Once you get to the next level and begin to describe how they work, their processes and support systems and the mission-level requirements they each possess, the similarity ends—with a vengeance. In this chapter, characteristics particular to solar sails are in italics.

### ROCKETS AND BOMBS

A rocket is essentially a bomb that goes off slowly. As was tragically seen in the loss of the American Space Shuttle Challenger and unmanned rockets too numerous to count, a rocket failure produces a spectacular explosion. This failure is often caused by nothing more than the rocket system's inability to contain the chemical reaction producing its energy.

In a conventional rocket, combinations of chemicals are mixed together in a manner so as to produce energy, resulting in the rapid expansion of a hot gas. If properly contained and directed, this hot gas safely and in a controlled manner exits the rocket producing thrust. If it is not properly contained, then the hot gas rapidly expands outward from the combustion chamber in more than one direction—having the same net effect as a bomb. If the reaction products are not appropriately directed, then the rocket cannot produce thrust in a useful manner, while not as spectacular a failure as an explosion, having the rocket fly off in an unplanned direction is as much of a mission failure as if it had exploded.

Having mentioned Challenger, it might be instructive to look at the “bomb equivalent” result that occurs when the energy expended during a rocket launch is instead used to blow things up. In a rocket, a fuel is mixed with an oxidizer, resulting in an energy-producing reaction that rapidly heats a gas, causing it to expand through a nozzle in a direction opposite to the direction of desired motion. This is a fancy way of saying that we burn fuel in a tank with an opening on one end. Burn the fuel in the same tank—this time without an opening—and you get an explosion as the pressure resulting from the combustion increases to the point where the tank walls fail. This is a bomb.

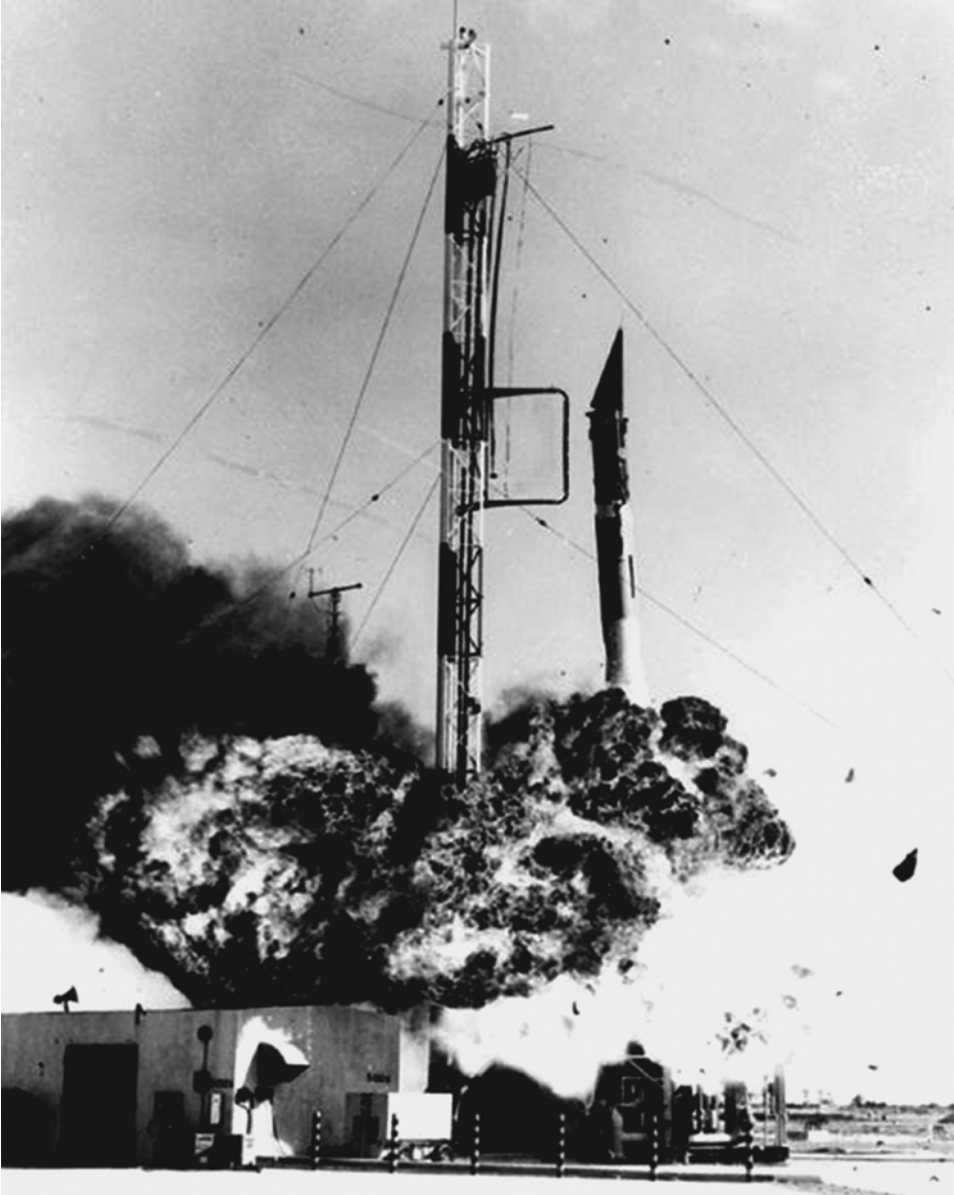
As many a rocket designer will tell you, getting the bomb to go off slowly is not an easy job. The history of almost all successful rockets begins with the designers learning this hard lesson. Here are but a few examples:

1. Leading up to the launch of America's first satellite was a string of impressive launch failures. Shown in Fig. 8.1 is the U. S. Navy's Vanguard Rocket exploding at launch on December 6, 1957.
2. The N-1 was the rocket that would have sent Soviet cosmonauts to the moon, potentially beating the Americans there. But it was not to be so. Between 1969 and 1972 all four attempts to launch the N-1 ended in failure. The launch attempt made just weeks before the successful liftoff of Apollo 11 ended in a disaster that some consider to be the biggest explosion in the history of rocketry. Figure 8.2 shows two N-1 rockets on their launch pads in the Soviet Union.
3. The Europeans have also suffered their share of launch failures. The most spectacular was probably that of the first launch of the Ariane-5 rocket. In June 1996, the inaugural flight of the Ariane 5 was to carry a set of science spacecraft into space. Instead, it blew them apart. Figure 8.3 is a photograph of what happened to that ill-fated rocket at launch, just 40 seconds into flight.
4. Not all rocket failures happen on the ground. Catastrophic failures happen in deep space as well. For example, the Mars Observer mission, launched by NASA in 1992, failed to achieve Martian orbit. The leading candidate as the cause for the failure and loss of the mission is an explosion in the propellant line just as the engine was being prepared to fire in order to capture the spacecraft into orbit around Mars.

Even today, getting a rocket off the pad is not trivial. Within a 12-month period, from the summer of 1998 to the spring of 1999, the United States alone suffered the loss of six rockets. Not all of these losses were caused by the rockets going "boom," but some were. Others were caused by the failure of other critical systems that must work flawlessly in a very short period of time in order for a launch to be successful.

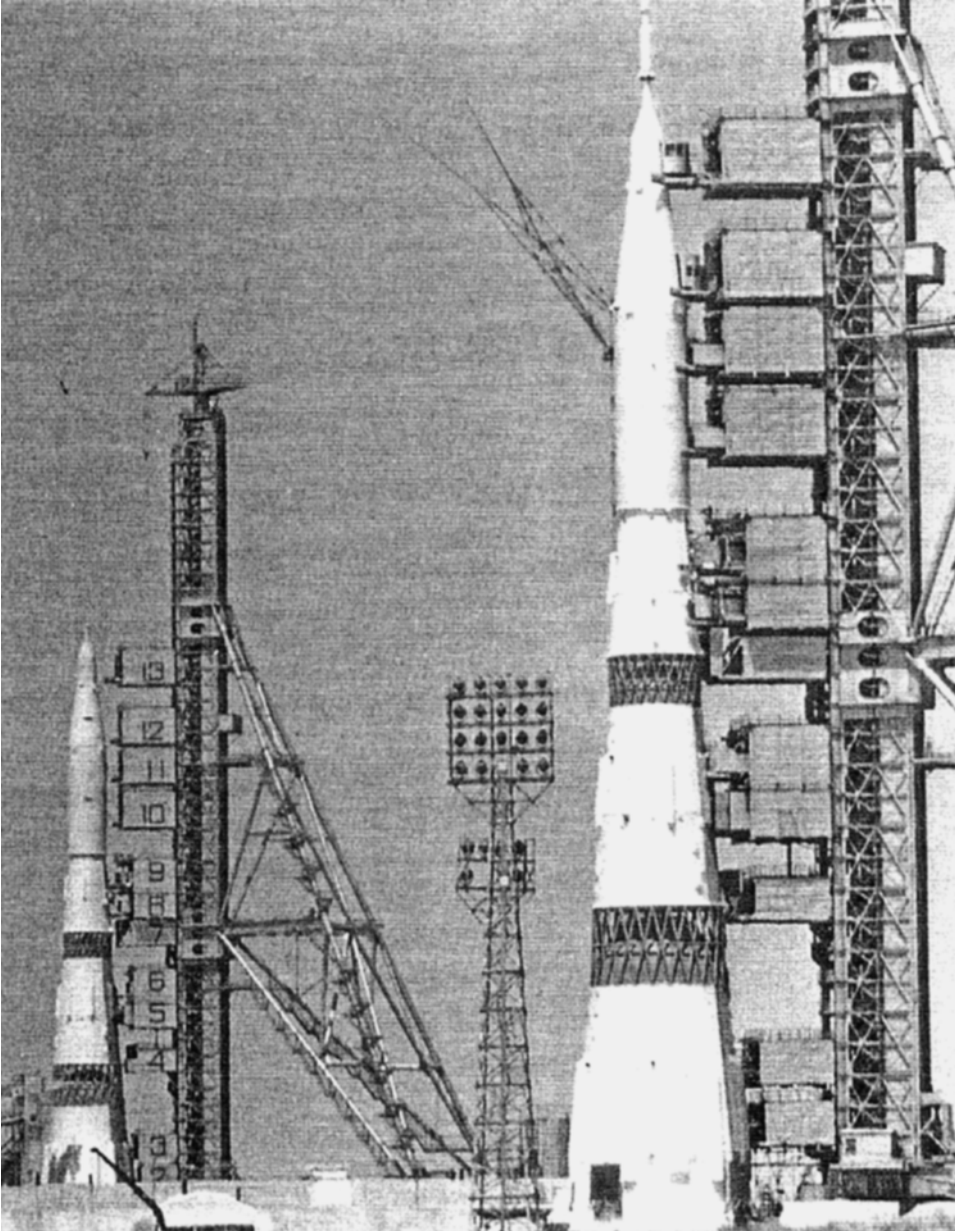
But what does this have to do with solar sails? The operation of a solar sail is pretty boring when compared to a rocket. To be fair, there are many ways a sail may fail. But none of the possible failure modes for a solar sail are as spectacular as a chemical rocket exploding into a cloud of expanding gas. A solar sail contains no combustible material. A failed sail would bear more resemblance to a broken fan than an exploded bomb. This is not just an aesthetic concern. Many people have been killed either onboard or around exploding rockets. The risk of using or being around a rocket is very high. There is virtually no risk associated with using or being near a solar sail.

Another significant issue favoring solar sailing is space debris, which by now surrounds Earth at virtually any altitude up to and around the geostationary orbit (35,786 km high). Most of it is the remnants of either the explosion of launchers' upper stages or spacecraft orbit-maneuver engines, or collisions of satellites with other debris. If a sailcraft fails in orbit about Earth, there is one big piece in area (but not in mass) to be monitored, not many millions of particles that eventually spread on a large range of altitude. If ever garbage collection space vehicles were designed in the future, approaching a failed sailcraft would be much less complicated than locating many small pieces (dangerous indeed) endowed with very high speed (~8–10 km/s) with respect to the chaser



8.1 A Vanguard rocket failure

system. Apart from that, sail-endowed vehicles orbiting about Earth not only can use the sail during their operational lives, but also can be utilized to enter the upper atmosphere so as to burn at the end of the mission. This would avoid the formation of new big orbital debris (as has been shown by author Vulpetti in a theoretical study for the European Space Agency, June 1997).



8.2 Soviet N-1 rockets would have sent cosmonauts to the Moon



**8.3** Ariane 501, the maiden flight of Europe's Ariane 5 launcher, veers off course and is destroyed by its automated destruct system (Courtesy of ESA)

## TOXIC FUMES, FLAMMABLE LIQUIDS AND ALL THAT STUFF

To further compare a rocket with a solar sail, we will now look at what makes them go: a rocket needs fuel and a solar sail needs light. Fuel is carried onboard the rocket; light for a solar sail is obtained by facing the sun. At first thought, this is a difference, but is it one that matters? Yes, it matters—and it matters a lot.

Rocket propellants range from being relatively benign to caustic and dangerous. Here is a list of some frequently used fuels and the complications that arise from their use:

1. RP-1, an early and still widely used rocket fuel, is derived from petroleum. The Saturn V rocket's first stage used RP-1 as it sent men toward the moon. Like its familiar counterparts, kerosene and jet fuel, it is volatile and requires care for safe handling.
2. Hypergolic propellants are widely used in deep-space spacecraft because they readily and reliably react with an oxidizer—even without any reaction starter. Given their volatility, which is the very reason they are considered so reliable, they must be handled with extreme care before and during launch and mission operations. Common hypergolic propellants in use today are hydrazine, monomethylhydrazine (MMH) and nitrogen tetroxide ( $N_2O_4$ ). Efficient liquid bipropellant engines for

orbital maneuvers utilize MMH and  $N_2O_4$ . The US Space Shuttle uses MMH for orbital maneuvering. Hypergolic propellants are also highly toxic. For example, when the debris was being recovered after the Space Shuttle Columbia crashed, volunteers were warned to stay away from any propellant tanks that they might find due to possible contamination from any remaining propellant. In addition, complex and burdensome handling requirements are evoked when spacecraft using hypergolic fuels are being loaded onboard a rocket for launch. The potential for a propellant leak causing worker injury or death is significant.

3. Cryogenic propellants are widely used in rockets because of their high efficiency. Unfortunately, they are rather difficult to store because, as their name implies, they must be kept cold. The Space Shuttle's main engines used liquid hydrogen propellant and liquid oxygen oxidizer. Both are gaseous at room temperature and therefore must be kept refrigerated to remain liquids. Hydrogen has a nasty tendency to burn and is notoriously difficult to store due to its low molecular weight and small size. (Those tiny hydrogen molecules easily leak from storage chambers, tanks, and the plumbing associated with a rocket engine.)
4. Solid propellants are typically less volatile than their liquid counterparts, but they have their own problems. For one, they cannot be easily throttled or stopped. Once a solid rocket motor ignites, it will most likely continue to burn until the fuel runs out. This kind of performance might be good for an earth-to-orbit rocket, but is of almost no use for deep-space maneuvering where precise and flexible rocket performance is required.

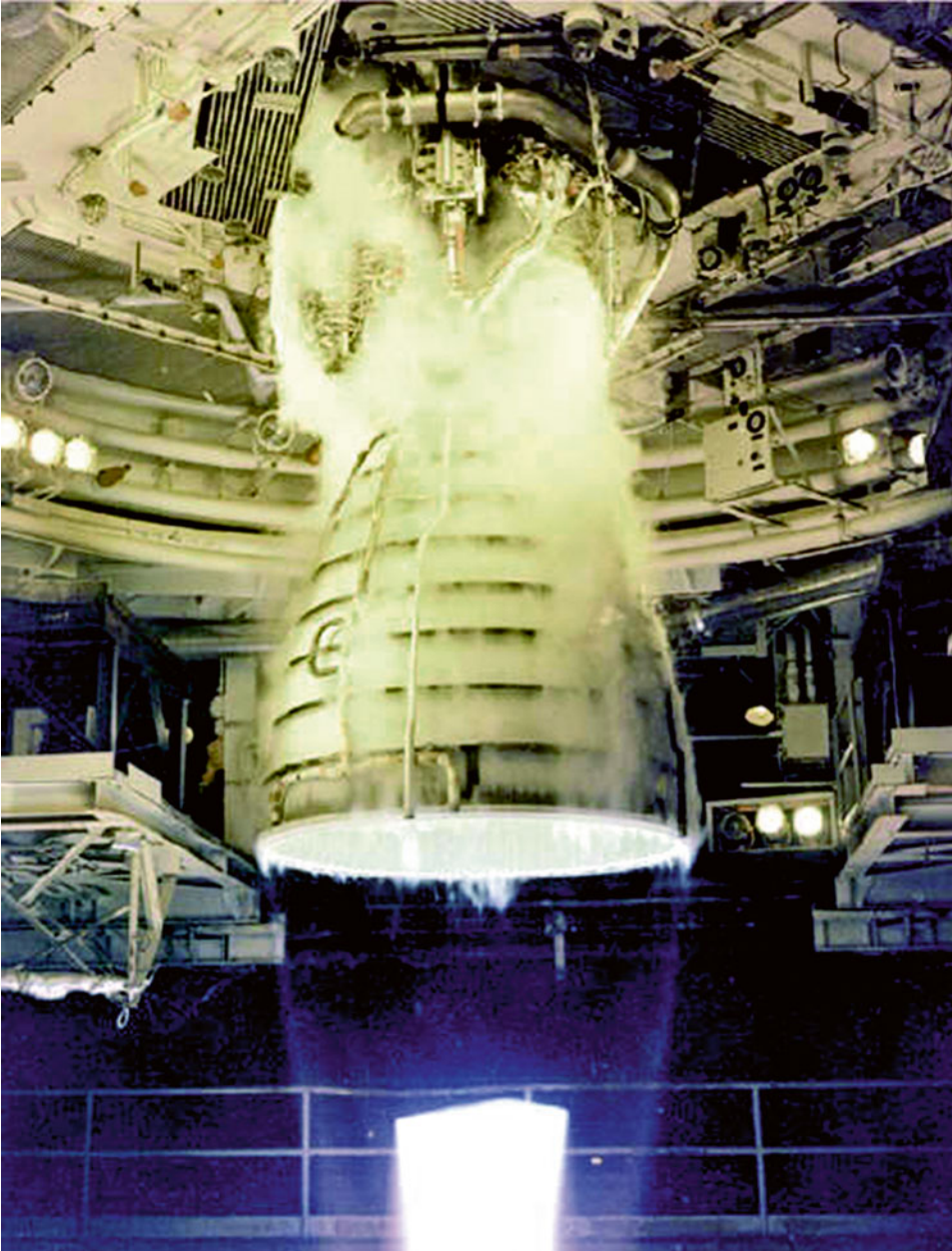
*A solar sail uses no fuel; therefore, there is zero risk from toxic fumes or fire. There are no cryogenic components, no propellant tanks and relatively few safe-handling concerns during prelaunch operations and integration of the spacecraft with the launch vehicle.*

## **COMPLICATED PLUMBING, BIG TANKS AND TURBO-MACHINERY**

Rocket propulsion is complex. After all, it is not called “rocket science” for nothing! A typical liquid fuel rocket engine has many moving parts, pumps, valves, lines and chambers, every one of which must work perfectly or the rocket may become the bomb mentioned at the beginning of this chapter.

While not used for propulsion in deep space, the Space Shuttle main engine (SSME) is nonetheless a good example (perhaps the best example) of both rocket performance and engineering complexity. A picture of the Boeing SSME is shown in Fig. 8.4. According to NASA, the SSME “operates at greater temperature extremes than any mechanical system in common use today” [1]. The temperature of liquid hydrogen fuel is 20 K (423°F), the second coldest liquid on Earth. When the hydrogen is burned with liquid oxygen, the temperature in the engine's combustion chamber reaches almost 3,600 K (+6,000°F)—that's higher than the boiling point of iron. Finally, “the SSME high-pressure fuel turbo-pump main shaft rotates at 37,000 revolutions per minute (rpm) compared to about 3,000 rpm for an automobile operating at 27 m/s (60 miles/h)” [2]





8.4 A test of the Space Shuttle's main engines (Courtesy of NASA)

Rocket engines used for in-space applications do not have to have this level of performance, but common design issues remain:

- Liquid fuel must be stored, pumped and mixed with oxidizer in a controlled fashion.
- Pumps (rotating machinery) must operate at high speeds, sometimes after being dormant in space for years.
- Combustion chambers must be capable of sustaining long-term operations at extremely high temperatures.

In 2004, the rocket engine used by the Cassini spacecraft to enter into Saturn's orbit had to fire for more than 90 min after being mostly dormant since its launch 7 years previously. The engine performed as designed, but as Project Manager Bob Mitchell is quoted as saying before the engine was ignited, "We're about to go through our second hair-graying event" [3], meaning that the successful firing of the onboard chemical rocket engine and the uncertainty as to whether it would work as designed was a very stressful event for the management and technical teams. Todd Barber, Cassini's leader for the propulsion system, called that system, "a plumber's nightmare" [3]. So complicated was the engine that a complete backup was launched onboard in case the primary were to fail. The cost of carrying a full backup engine is far more than the money spent to build it. The mass required for the spare engine might have been used to accommodate more science instruments.

Chemical propulsion systems are also big. In addition to the rocket itself, fuel tanks and propellant feed systems are needed. Taken together, the overall propulsion system typically accounts for most of the mass of any spacecraft we launch into deep space. This is a significant point—most of the spacecraft mass is devoted to propulsion, not to science. Anything that can reduce the mass of the propulsion system will allow more science to be included.

*Solar sails comprise but a small fraction of a spacecraft's overall mass. They are relatively lightweight and require no big tanks, no fuel lines and no complex, rapidly rotating turbomachinery.*

### **RUNNING OUT OF GAS (NOT!)**

Another important difference between a chemical rocket and a solar sail is their inherent mode of operation. A chemical rocket typically operates for a very short period of time and delivers a large amount of thrust. A solar sail will operate for years and provide only a small (but continuous) thrust.

Most rocket engines are designed to burn once and for a very short period of time (typically tens of minutes or less). They are able to work this way because their very high thrust imparts a large change in velocity to the spacecraft, rapidly accelerating it. The penalty for high thrust is efficiency. A rocket engine operating at peak performance is limited in what it can do by the chemistry of the reaction that drives it. Most chemical reactions that occur when a propellant is burned in the presence of an oxidizer are inherently inefficient. Rockets provide a big boost, and then fizzle as they run out of gas. It is simply impossible to carry enough fuel to overcome this inherent inefficiency. The more fuel you carry, the

more fuel you require to simply move (accelerate) the mass of the additional propellant. This is a no win scenario that limits what missions can be accomplished by rocket propulsion.

*A solar sail produces a very small thrust, but it can do so continuously as long as it is near the sun. Rather than burn for a few minutes and then coast for years toward some interplanetary destination, a solar sail-propelled craft will slowly accelerate and then continue to do so as long as there is sunlight. In other words, while the chemical rocket will put a spacecraft on a mission trajectory quickly, a solar sailcraft will slowly catch up and then overtake its chemical counterpart, resulting in a much higher interplanetary velocity than can be achieved chemically. In addition, the ratio between the thrust acceleration and the solar local gravitational acceleration keeps almost constant independently of the Sun-sailcraft distance. Of course, the closer the sail is to the Sun, the higher its speed gain. Combining both features represents a significant advantage from the trajectory control viewpoint.*

*However, solar sails do not have the thrust required to lift a payload from the surface of Earth into space, nor could they operate in Earth's atmosphere due to their high atmospheric friction. In this region, rocket propulsion clearly wins. Once the craft is out of the atmosphere and into deep space, however, the calculus changes and the long-life, low-weight aspects of a solar sail propulsion system clearly give it the advantage over its chemical propulsion brethren.*

The general lesson that one can learn from the above comparison is that future ambitious space missions could be carried out in the multiple propulsion mode. Each propulsive mode could be appropriately selected, *and fully optimized*, according to the ambient where it shall operate, from the launch from ground to the final destination through a number of intermediate phases. So far, it may sound strange. Such a simple, but powerful, concept about spaceflight has not yet been realized in practice (apart from few exceptions regarding mission classes with targets close to Earth).

## REFERENCES

1. NASA (2004). Media Detail [Press release]. Retrieved from <http://mediaarchive.ksc.nasa.gov/detail.cfm?mediaid=24468>
2. NASA (2000). Public Lessons Learned Entry 0750: High Performance Liquid Hydrogen Turbopumps. Retrieved from: <http://www.nasa.gov/offices/ocel/llis/0750.html>
3. Harwood, William (2004, June 29). *Cassini mission hinges on Wednesday's engine firing, Space Place*, CBS News.

# 9

## Exploring and Developing Space by Sailcraft

Sailcraft offer unique opportunities to space mission planners. Some of these possibilities will be exploited in the near future, others within a few decades and some in the more distant future. We consider near-term mission possibilities first.

### NEAR-TERM (2015–2025) SAILCRAFT MISSION OPTIONS

The earliest operational solar sail missions will demonstrate the utility of this space-propulsion technique. Most likely, these missions will be directed toward destinations within a few million kilometers of Earth.

#### Solar Storm Monitoring

This section explains in a simple way what a solar storm is, its consequences on some human activities and how astronomical experts think of mitigating serious troubles in a near future.

Most are not aware that the “good old stable Sun” is not so stable. In addition to the usual solar wind (Chap. 6), several times a year (and more frequently during the peak of its 11-year cycle), the Sun emits Earth-sized bursts of high energy plasma (a mixture of charged particles; typically protons, electrons and alpha particles) into space. These enormous plasma bursts, often referred to as “solar proton events” by physicists and “space storms” by the media, speed outward from the Sun at 250 to 1,000 km/s.<sup>1</sup> Eventually, some cross the orbit of Earth and wreak havoc with Earth-orbiting spacecraft. We don’t directly notice their impact, unless we happen to be living near the North or South Pole, in which case we would see an increase in auroral activity as some of the radiation penetrates the ionosphere and gets trapped along the planet’s north or south magnetic field lines.

---

<sup>1</sup> There are two distinct flows of solar wind: the slow wind (with a mean speed of about 400 km/s) and the so-named *fast streams* (with a mean speed of about 800 km/s), which originate at different latitudes on the solar corona.

The resulting auroral glow, called the “northern lights,” are often spectacular as the ions spiral along the magnetic field lines deep into the atmosphere, ionizing atmospheric oxygen and causing it to glow a brilliant green. A brilliant light show, but not a threat to human life and activity, correct? Well, this would have been correct if stated 100 years ago, but not today, in our age of dependence on electricity and on spacecraft for communication, weather forecasting and national defense. Spacecraft using solar sails will help us mitigate the risks posed by such storms.

When a space storm reaches Earth, interesting things happen to the protective bubble around our planet called the **magnetosphere**. To understand this and how it is germane to our civilization, requires first some understanding of the magnetosphere itself. Recall that all magnets have both a north and a south pole, between which is generated a magnetic field. You cannot directly see this field, but you can observe its effects. For example, if you have two bar magnets and attempt to touch their two north poles together, you feel a repulsive force. Conversely, if you take the north pole of one magnet and attempt to gently touch it to the south pole of another, you have the opposite problem. They will attract each other, and you must exert force to keep them from coming together too quickly. Any magnet generates a magnetic field; it is through this field that adjacent magnets interact, and they interact by attracting or repelling each other, depending on their orientation.

Earth itself generates the equivalent of a bar magnet somewhere in its interior, with the magnetic north pole being near the “top” (or north spin axis point on the planet) and the south pole on the “bottom.” (In actuality, Earth’s spin axis “north pole” and its magnetic north pole do not physically coincide. They are offset by approximately 11°.)

The next piece of the puzzle that must be understood in order to explain the interaction of a space storm with Earth is the **ionosphere**. The ionosphere is a region of the atmosphere that begins at an altitude of roughly 80 km from the surface. The atmospheric density has decreased at this altitude to the point where sunlight strips electrons from their parent atoms (typically oxygen) and they exist for extended periods of time as “free electrons” before they collide and recombine with some other atom. The flows of ionized oxygen (and other) atoms and these free electrons form plasma.

Another interesting property of charged particles is that they are affected by both electric and magnetic fields. A charged particle, like an electron, in the presence of a magnetic field will experience a force that causes it to move in a direction perpendicular to both its initial direction of motion and to the magnetic field lines. The magnetic field exerts a force on the ions and electrons in the plasma that results in them spiraling along Earth’s magnetic field lines, bouncing back and forth between the North Pole and the South Pole.

Earth’s magnetic field, second only to Jupiter in strength within the planets of the solar system, acts as a shield against these intense solar storms, which repeatedly diffuse in the solar system. Without it, life on Earth might not be possible—and it certainly would not be what we see today. High levels of radiation can certainly harm living things, but it also damages or disrupts the function of electronic systems. Complex systems, such as those found in spacecraft, are especially vulnerable. Satellites launched into space are designed to minimize the effects of these storms and generally speaking, do so successfully. The easiest way to protect against the harmful effects of the ions in the solar storm is by adding shielding mass. Mass, simply put, blocks the ions from reaching whatever is behind it. Unfortunately, with launch costs near 15,000 USD/kg (7,000 USD per pound), most satellite users don’t want to spend a lot of money

adding mass to whatever it is they are launching into space. They instead prefer to either save the money or use whatever extra mass they have available to add more payload (whether it be transponders or science instruments), thus increasing either their revenue or overall science return.

Unless the owners and operators of Earth-orbiting spacecraft do something to mitigate the effects of these storms, damage will occur. The loss of a satellite might seem at first to be an esoteric risk that affects “someone else.” Instead, imagine the loss of weather satellite coverage for an extended period of time, including the hurricane season; the ability to accurately predict the location of landfall for a category 4 or 5 hurricane declines to the point that major population centers must be evacuated just because we don’t precisely know the track of any particular storm and people may be in its path.

Companies and whole industries use the global positioning system (GPS) and other satellite assets to accurately manage their inventories and track shipments. Corporate managers plan their business strategy and make decisions based on where certain products or materials are located at any given time. With a sudden loss in this capability, millions or even billions of dollars might be jeopardized.

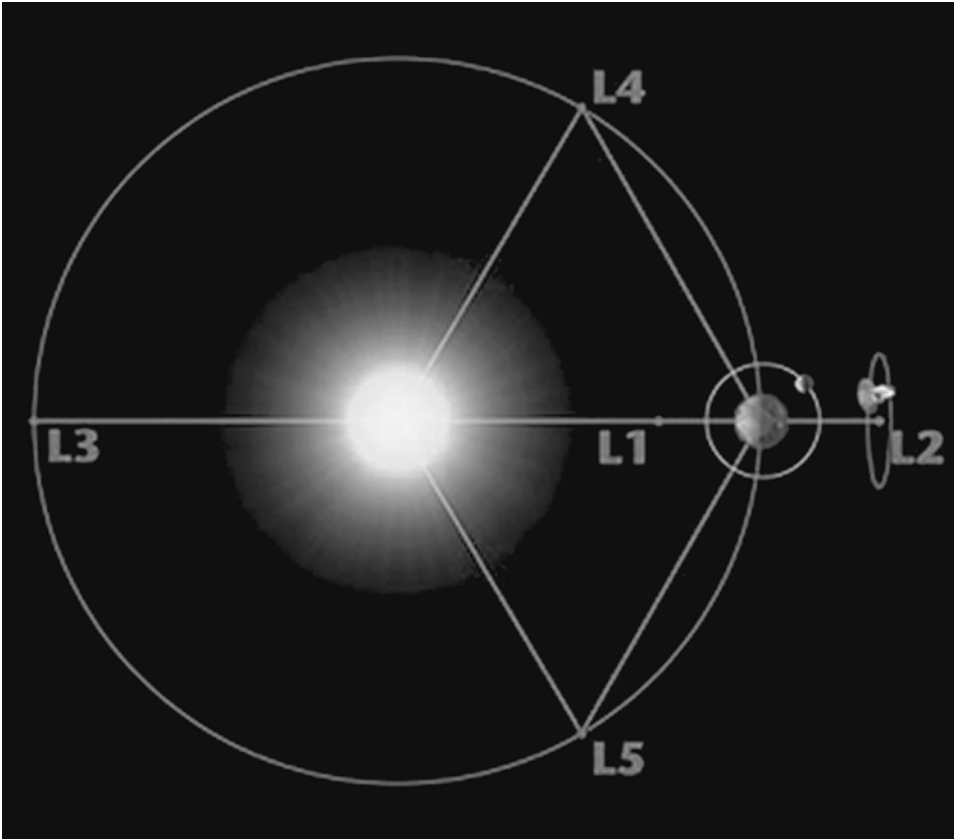
Cable television, now estimated to be in 68 % of television-equipped US households, is also at risk. After all, the cable only carries the television signal from your local cable company to your living room. The cable company gets the television signals from satellites located about 36,000 km above the equator. If the satellites go out, the cable companies go out of business.

Perhaps most importantly, the loss of the US’s military and spy satellites would leave whole countries vulnerable to a surprise attack. Knowing that the spy satellite infrastructure is “down” might be a very tempting opportunity for an adversary to take advantage of. (Of course, this also holds for other countries in the world.)

There are other, more down-to-earth impacts spawned by these storms, especially for those living at northern latitudes. Recall that charged particles moving through a magnetic field will experience force acting upon them. So also will a moving magnetic field induce an electric current in a wire. Electrical utility wires (particularly those hanging from telephone poles at northern latitudes) will feel the effects of solar storms as Earth’s magnetic field is compressed, varying in intensity with time. This changing magnetic field induces current flow in the wires, creating spurious currents that knock out transformers and otherwise disrupt or shut down the transmission of electrical power. This is a real effect and it has happened.

Fortunately, in addition to adding lots of mass to the spacecraft, there are two other ways to mitigate the effects of these storms, and both require some sort of advanced warning of an impending storm. One is to turn off particularly vulnerable spacecraft systems when the worst of the storm arrives, and power back up after the storm is over. The other would be to reorient the spacecraft so as to maximize any onboard spacecraft mass between the most vulnerable systems and the ionizing radiation in the plasma for the duration of the storm.

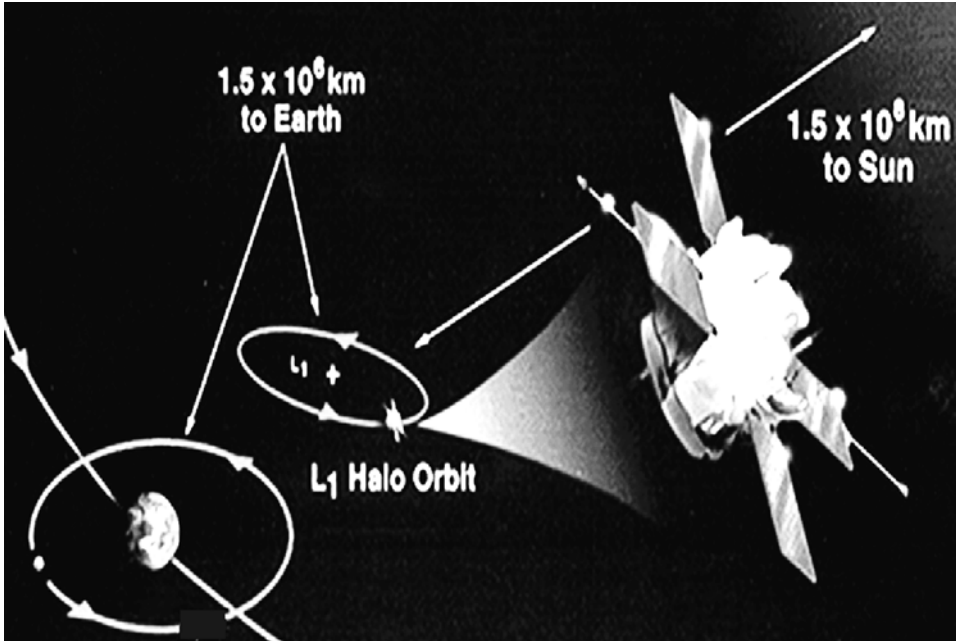
To provide at least some warning of impending solar storms, the US National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA) and NASA placed the Advanced Composition Explorer (ACE) spacecraft at one of the so-called Earth/Sun Lagrange points. In the seventeenth century, Italian mathematician Giuseppe-Luigi Lagrange (who worked in France for 27 years) discovered that there exist regions in space where the gravitational



9.1 The Lagrange points of the Sun-Earth system

attraction of the Sun and Earth mostly cancel each other out, meaning that a spacecraft placed in one of these regions will likely remain there unless acted upon by some outside force. These regions (around the so-called *libration* or L-points) are not 100 % gravity or disturbance free, so some spacecraft propulsion is required to remain within them (Fig. 9.1). The fuel required there, however, is much less than would be required should these regions not exist. The ACE spacecraft is located at the Earth/Sun L1 point (1.5 million km from Earth) and monitors the Sun for solar-proton events (Fig. 9.2). It detects such an event when the light from a solar flare associated with the event strikes its detectors; the spacecraft then sends a radio signal back to Earth. The radio transmission signaling the impending storm reaches Earth about 1 h before the ionizing radiation because light travels faster in the vacuum of space than do the charged particles in the storm. Unfortunately, 1 h is not much time, in general, even considering the very high number of aircraft in flight and the complexities of the various human activities that could be seriously degraded or halted by solar storms.





9.2 The ACE spacecraft around L1

Here's where the sail comes in. The next generation of L1-based solar observatories will use conventional rockets to escape Earth's influence and decelerate at L1. Then, the craft will deploy a modest solar sail, perhaps 50–100 m in diameter. Applied to correct for the various gravitational influences working to drag the solar monitor off station, the sail could maintain spacecraft position with a great reduction in onboard fuel requirements, which translates into longer spacecraft operational lifetime and lower costs.

Even better, a sailcraft can be positioned in a direct line between the Sun and Earth, remaining in this otherwise propulsive-intense location, and can be available to provide earlier warning of impending storms. The ship must thrust continuously to remain on station—a task ideal for a solar sail.

NASA is considering a mission using a solar sail to either replace the ACE spacecraft or act as a complement to its replacement. The potential mission has been called many names, from “Geostorm” to its current incarnation, “Heliostorm.” Trade studies to determine the optimal science instrument complement, spacecraft and solar sail propulsion system characteristics are ongoing, and will likely continue until the mission is approved for flight. An early Heliostorm concept would use a square sail, 70 m on each edge, with a total mass of <200 kg to accomplish the mission goals. It would be launched from Earth in a relatively small rocket, such as a Pegasus or Falcon, and propelled to 0.98 astronomical units (AU) by a conventional chemical rocket. The sail would then deploy and operations commence.

An advanced version of the Heliostorm concept (based on advanced technology) would consist of a sailcraft with a total mass of 300 kg and a circular sail 230 m in radius. Such



a spacecraft could orbit the Sun stably at 0.70 AU (never being captured by Venus) in the ecliptic plane with a period of exactly 1 year. Once put 0.30 AU from the Earth sunward, its mean position with respect to Earth would not change, and the space-storm warning time would range from 16 to 31 h. (A technical explanation of this mission concept can be found in Chap. 17.) Such time would be enough even for astronauts who will be working on the Moon, far from their lunar base.

### Pole Sitters

Another space mission of interest that could be implemented in the near term is the terrestrial pole sitter. Using the thrust on a sail provided by sunlight to balance Earth's gravitational attraction, a pole sitter is just that—a sail-propelled spacecraft that appears to “sit” above one of the Earth's poles. This is a high-latitude analogue to the geosynchronous position of most communication satellites, which are permanently stationed 35,786 km above the equator. The period of such an orbit is exactly one Earth rotation period (about 86,164 s) and the satellite will apparently remain stationary above the same location on Earth's surface and serve as a convenient target for radio beams.

A terrestrial pole sitter would be situated in the sky as near to the pole star's location as possible. Rather than rotating at the same angular velocity as Earth's surface, it would have a relatively constant location on the celestial sphere. Thus, designers of telecommunication, Earth-resource, navigation and weather satellites designed to serve high-latitude users cannot use this convenient orbit since high-latitude ground stations find geosynchronous satellites to be below or near their horizon.

The way that part of the solar wind reaches Earth's upper atmosphere is somewhat complicated and not yet completely explained. A significant step in our understanding of the solar wind interaction with Earth's magnetosphere has occurred in recent years based on key observations from a number of modern satellites designed for such an aim—the missions IMAGE (NASA) and CLUSTER (ESA). For the first time, there has been the observational evidence of something conjectured some decades ago: the magnetic reconnection. The solar wind carries the lines of the heliospheric magnetic field (HMF); when the HMF direction is opposite to that of the field of Earth's *magnetopause* (the magnetosphere boundary that acts as our magnetic shield), the lines of the two magnetic fields can first break and then reconnect with each other in such a way that one or more enormous “cracks” (typically larger than Earth) are produced in the magnetopause. The solar wind now slides along the terrestrial magnetic lines down to the ionosphere. In going down, the plasma tube area decreases to sizes typically equivalent to Japan. The unexpected feature of such magnetopause cracks is that they can stay open for many hours, thus provoking *severe space storms*.

Although high-latitude pole sitters are certainly possible, they will have certain annoying consequences for telecommunication customers. Studies indicate that solar sail pole sitters will function best if situated at the Moon's distance or beyond. This greater distance would introduce a longer time delay in telephone calls via pole-sitter spacecraft. This will not please all customers!

The ability to hover over a single area of Earth would be highly desirable for those monitoring the environment. Instruments placed on such craft would be able to continuously monitor local weather and environmental conditions. Military users would also benefit from the ability to continuously observe the activities of a potential adversary.

### **Near Earth Asteroid Reconnaissance**

The catalog of known near-Earth asteroids (NEA) grows yearly as newly discovered asteroids are added to the database. As of August 2012, there are more than 800 objects with a diameter greater than 1 km in the database. These objects are of interest for a variety of reasons. Some have the potential to strike the Earth at some point in the future. Others are rich in minerals and elements that are in short supply on Earth and, because of their composition, may be mined in the future. Many represent the best known record of what the early solar system may have been like and are interesting from just the science that can be learned from them. Still others are potential destinations for future human exploration and therefore we need to robot-reconnoiter them prior to sending humans.

Using a solar sail propelled spacecraft to survey NEAs is attractive from several points of view. First, NEAs are, by definition, near the Sun and therefore there is sufficient sunlight to make solar sail propulsion possible. Next, with a sailcraft, there are no expendables and therefore there is no intrinsic reason a sailcraft cannot visit multiple NEAs sequentially until something other than the propulsion system breaks down and stops functioning. Finally, the large DV produced by a sail allows the sailcraft to rendezvous with a NEA, matching velocity with the object and observing it close up for an extended period of time. With a conventional chemical or electric propulsion system, it would be difficult to flyby more than two NEAs, and almost impossible to rendezvous with them—the propulsive requirements are just too high.

The advent of solar sail technology, simultaneously with the emergence of cubesats (small spacecraft only a few tens of centimeters long and typically weighing between 3 and 12 kg), offers the possibility of sending out a swarm of 100 m<sup>2</sup> sailcraft to visit multiple NEAs, thereby characterizing these important residents of space near our Earth.

### **Magnetospheric Constellations**

An additional near-term, near-Earth possibility is to launch a number of mini-solar sails (not the micro-sails introduced in Chap. 7, but decidedly larger), or “solar kites” aboard the same rocket. Equipped only with miniaturized communications and navigation gear and instruments to monitor space radiation and fields, these craft could use solar sails to cruise through Earth’s magnetosphere between, say, 2,000–50,000 km above Earth’s surface. This scientific “constellation” would yield real time and synoptic data about variations in Earth’s magnetic field and radiation belts.

### **Target-Variable Magnetospheric Missions**

With regard to deeper scientific exploration of Earth’s magnetosphere and, at the same time, to experiment with solar sail technology and study its problems, the European

Space Agency considered a mission named Geosail. In reality, the primary goal of Geosail would have been the full demonstration of solar sailing, though the sail area had to amount to about 1,900 m<sup>2</sup> (2.5 times the area of a baseball diamond). Full demonstration means mainly sail packing, in-orbit sail deployment, sail attitude acquisition and control, sail-state monitoring, using solar pressure acceleration for continuous orbit change, sail attitude maneuvers, sail detachment, and even (indirectly) observing sail's materials degradation. The mean orbit of Geosail would have been well beyond the geostationary orbit, between 70,000 and 150,000 km; its perigee should touch or cross the near magnetopause, whereas its apogee should dive in the magneto-tail. Such an orbit should be high *variable*, not only because of the gravitational perturbations caused by the Moon and the Sun, but mainly because the magnetopause continuously changes also in orientation. As a point of fact, the solar wind moves radially from the Sun, and Earth revolves about the Sun; thus, the magnetosphere's elongated shape axis varies to be always aligned with the Sun. The scientific goal of Geosail should be very important; it could be considered an appropriate continuation of the Cluster mission. Geosail should last 3–5 years with a mass lower than 200 kg, thanks to the solar-sail propulsion. Nevertheless, after a study of phase-A, news about Geosail and its funding are not conclusive. For instance, at the time of this writing, the official website of this mission was last updated on September 1, 2008.

### Solar Polar Imager

Solar sails are especially effective at performing missions that otherwise require a large amount of propellant. A particularly propulsive-intense maneuver is required to change the orbital inclination of a spacecraft, whether it orbits Earth, another planet or the Sun. The orbit's inclination is simply a measure of the angle the orbit plane makes with respect to some reference plane, which usually is either Earth's equator or the ecliptic. (Note that the term **ecliptic** refers to the (mean) path of the Sun on the Earth's celestial sphere; also, it refers to the plane of such path, which is a great circle of this sphere. Often, but erroneously, the terms **earth orbit** and ecliptic are used interchangeably. See Glossary for more explanation.) Moving from the initial launch orbit to another "angle" in orbit is very difficult, and conventional propulsion systems are limited in performing this maneuver by the amount of fuel they can carry.

Taking advantage of a solar sail's virtually unlimited ability to provide thrust, scientists are eager to place a spacecraft into a highly inclined orbit around the Sun in order to study what happens near its poles. Current observations of the Sun are limited to spacecraft launched from Earth, which remain nearly in the ecliptic (because they are launched from Earth, which inhabits the ecliptic), limiting our views to those near the solar equator or its mid-latitude regions. The proposed mission to study the Sun's poles is called the Solar Polar Imager, and it can only be realistically implemented with a solar sail propulsion system. The Solar Polar Imager spacecraft would benefit from the quadrupled increase in solar propulsive thrust available from operating at 0.5 AU. While the proposed mission is just a concept at this time, studies show that current solar sail technology could be used to implement the mission with a square, three-axis stabilized sail no more than 150 m on a side.

### **L-1 Diamond**

Taking the Helios storm concept a step further and increasing the number of sunward, solar-observing, solar sail-propelled spacecraft in orbit around the Sun would dramatically increase our understanding of the star. The L-1 Diamond mission is one proposal to achieve simultaneous, multi-angle solar observations providing all the advantages inherent in having multiple views of complex phenomena. L-1 Diamond is proposed to be a constellation of four spacecraft working together to gather information about the Sun and the solar environment.

Three of the spacecraft would fly in triangular formation around the Sun. The fourth spacecraft would be located above the ecliptic, looking downward. Again, this mission could be achieved with first generation solar sails.

## **MID-TERM (2025–2040) SAILCRAFT MISSION OPTIONS**

Moving forward a few decades, we can reasonably expect major improvements in sail technology. Various sail structures and unfurlment techniques will have been perfected. Sails will be thinner, stronger and more temperature resistant. A number of exciting mission opportunities could be implemented during this time frame. One of these is the possibility of formation flying with a comet and returning comet samples to Earth.

### **Comet Rendezvous**

All the major planets and most asteroids circle the Sun in or near the same plane that Earth does—called the ecliptic. The constellations of the Zodiac are arrayed along the ecliptic track on the celestial sphere. Comets, on the other hand, are all distant from the ecliptic. It is very difficult to visit a comet at an arbitrary point of its orbit, because of the very high energy required to shift orbital inclination to match that of the comet. But given months or years, a solar sail in the inner solar system can perform such an inclination-cranking maneuver without the expenditure of an onboard propellant.

It's true that the current, conventionally propelled probes have visited the vicinity of a few comets, but these were short-term flybys (or in some cases fly-throughs) in which the probe traveled past the comet at relative velocities of 50 km/s or more.

A sail-propelled probe could utilize solar radiation pressure to match orbits with a comet and cruise in formation with that celestial object for weeks or months. Samples of comet material could be gathered for later return to Earth.

### **Particle Acceleration Solar Orbiter**

The Particle Acceleration Solar Orbiter would allow close-up imaging (<0.2 AU) and spectroscopic analysis of high-energy solar flares to determine their composition, development and acceleration mechanisms. Seeing the life cycle of a flare event from close solar orbit will significantly advance our understanding of these events.

### Mars Sample Return

Returning a sample from Mars has long been a goal for scientists interested in learning more about the possible development of life beyond Earth. Unfortunately, the complexity and associated high cost with performing this mission seem to push it indefinitely into the future. One aspect of the problem is the fuel required for the return trip to Earth. Getting a spacecraft to Mars requires a large, dedicated launch vehicle. Any sample return mission would have to include also a rocket landed on the surface of Mars to return the sample from the surface back into space. Once back in space, the sample would then have to be transported to Earth. To do this chemically would require multiple rocket launches. We simply cannot launch at one time enough fuel to get our spacecraft into orbit for the Mars ascent rocket, and the propellant required for returning to Earth.

If the mass required for any leg of the trip can be significantly reduced, the cost of the mission would decrease, making it more likely to happen. Solar sails provide a lightweight option for returning the sample from Mars to Earth. The scenario might go something like this:

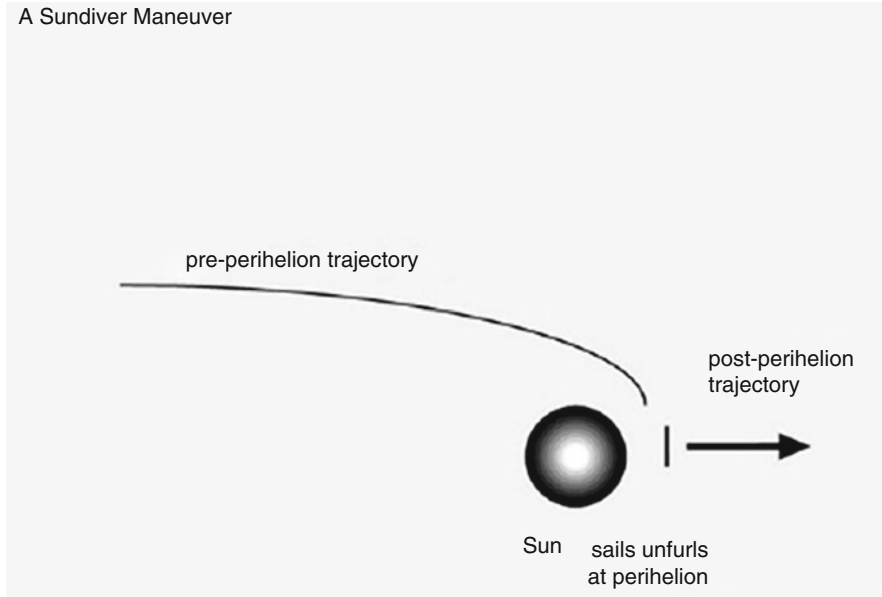
1. A rocket launches the mission spacecraft from Earth.
2. The spacecraft enters Martian orbit, sending a lander to the surface.
3. The lander collects the sample of interest and sends it back to space using a rocket that accompanied it to the surface.
4. The rocket has a rendezvous with a solar sail-propelled craft in Martian orbit, transferring the sample.
5. The sailcraft returns the sample to some parking orbit about Earth.
6. An orbital transfer vehicle moves the sample to the future space station. (Alternatively, the sailcraft could return the sample to the lunar base.)

In this scenario, the lightweight solar sailcraft replaces the heavy chemical propulsion stage that would otherwise be required to return the sample to Earth for analysis.

### Aerocapture Experiments

One method of reducing the cost of some scientific space missions is to utilize a new technique called **aerocapture**. In performing this maneuver, a space probe must be directed toward a solar system object with an atmosphere, such as the planets Venus, Earth, Mars, Jupiter, Saturn, Uranus and Neptune, or Saturn's satellite Titan. Instead of using rockets to decelerate for capture from a Sun-centered to planet-centered orbit, the craft grazes the planet's atmosphere. If the orbit is precise, atmospheric friction will decelerate the spacecraft sufficiently for planetary capture.

A number of specialized devices—aeroshells and ballutes (which are a cross between balloons and parachutes)—could be deployed by a space probe performing an aerocapture maneuver. Preliminary studies reveal that certain solar sail configurations could be applied during aerocapture. An added bonus to sail application in aerocapture, of course, is that the sail can utilize solar radiation pressure to accelerate a spacecraft, as well as functioning like a parachute to slow one.



9.3 A sundiver maneuver

One possible sail-aerocapture probe would be a Titan orbiter. After Earth launch, the sail would be utilized to accelerate the spacecraft toward Saturn. Arriving at Saturn, the sail would be utilized as an aerocapture device to steer the craft into a Saturn-centered orbit with an apoapsis (high point) near Titan. The sailcraft would once again apply aerocapture, grazing Titan's atmosphere with a fully unfurled sail, to become a satellite of that tantalizing small world.

Another mission option would involve a sail launch toward Mars, sail-aided aerocapture into Mars orbit and sail-aided maneuvering in the Mars system. Samples could be returned from the surfaces of Mars's small satellites Deimos and Phobos. If these samples contain ample amounts of water and other volatile materials, later human-occupied ships visiting the Red Planet could utilize these satellites to top off their fuel tanks.

### Extrasolar Probes

One might suppose that a low thrust Sun-pushed gossamer spacecraft will have no application in ventures testing the fringes of galactic space. One would be wrong!

In a maneuver called "sundiving" by science fiction authors Greg Benford and David Brin, the sailcraft is initially placed in a parabolic or elliptical solar orbit with a perihelion (point of closest solar approach) as close to the Sun as possible (Fig. 9.3).

At perihelion, the sail is pointed toward the Sun and the craft is ejected from the solar system. Contemporary, Earth-launched sail technology seems capable of achieving solar system escape velocities as high as 50 km/s, with or without the giant planet gravity assists utilized to accelerate Pioneers 10 and 11 and Voyagers 1 and 2.

The solar system escape velocities possible utilizing the sundiver maneuver are far in excess of the velocities of the Pioneers and Voyagers. Within a flight time of about two decades, a sail-launched extrasolar probe could reach the heliopause—the boundary between solar and galactic influence—at 200 AU or so from the Sun and measure local field strengths and particle densities. If the probe can survive another few decades—not impossible in light of Pioneer’s and Voyager’s longevity—data could be returned from the inner focus of the Sun’s gravitational lens at 550 AU, which would provide a check on Einstein’s general relativity theory as a mission bonus.

The possibility to fly by the Sun and get a high escape speed from the solar system is much more than a science fiction idea. We have a strict mathematical theory,<sup>2</sup> which tells us that even without resorting to far future technologies, a sufficiently light sailcraft could be controlled in such a way as to reach the solar gravitational lens with a speed of 120 km/s, at least. Of course, emerging technologies could do excellent things for the designs of whole sailcraft and help us to transform such theoretical results into reality.

Some may conservatively argue that probes to the edges of interstellar space may have little relevance to terrestrial life. But since mass extinction events on Earth may be linked to galactic influences, a few such interstellar craft may well be launched as our sail technology improves. And these early flights will only be the start of the sail’s flirtation with the galactic abyss. Because the solar sail is scalable, we may view these early efforts as humanity’s first true starships.

## **FAR-TERM (2040+) SAILCRAFT MISSION OPTIONS**

As time elapses, humanity’s technological progress is certain to continue. After 2040, a substantial in-space infrastructure may well exist. There may be facilities in near-Earth space where space resources or Earth-launched material can be processed to produce solar sails with near theoretical maximum performance.

Larger sails will be possible in this time frame—with dimensions measured in kilometers. And these large, space-manufactured sails will perform better than their Earth-launched predecessors.

### **Human Exploration Sailships**

Current technology, micron-thick, Earth-launched sails are not yet up to the support of human exploration of the solar system. These sails are too small to carry the tens of thousands of kilograms necessary to support humans between the planets and exploration gear. Also, sail-implemented missions to Mars (for example) using today’s sail technology would be of longer duration than rocket-propelled interplanetary ventures.

But when sail linear dimensions are measured in kilometers and sail thicknesses are in the sub-micron range, all this will change. The sail may then become the most economical means of transport throughout the inner solar system. New constellations of twenty-first

---

<sup>2</sup> This one is the theory of fast solar sailing, initiated by author Vulpetti in 1992, and completed by him in 2012. References to this theory can be found in Part V, a more technical part of this book.

century space clipper ships might be visible in Earth's night skies as they spiral outward toward Mars or the asteroids. The first of these might be rather modest, a mere 800 m on a side, carrying 5,000–10,000 kg payloads between Earth and Mars on a recurring basis. While too massive to launch from Earth, such a large diameter sail could be readily made in space to perform this mission without overly stressing the other sail figure of merit— areal density.

Initially, these craft will support exploration missions. But since sailships should be capable of many interplanetary roundtrips without fuel expenditure, human settlements will also benefit from the technology as they begin to grow on celestial bodies beyond the Moon.

We like to point out here that, via the management of sails of many squared kilometers, an efficient Earth-Mars-Earth (or Moon-Mars-Moon) reusable shuttle should become a reality. In the winter 2014, Prof. C. Circi (and his team) and author Vulpetti began a preliminary study of such a shuttle concept at Rome University La Sapienza's Department of Astronautical Engineering.

### **Rearranging the Solar System**

Although Mars exploration has captured the hearts and minds of the public, altering orbits of some near-Earth objects (NEOs) of asteroidal or cometary origin may be of much greater terrestrial significance.

There are thousands of these bodies scattered between the orbits of Venus and Mars. And it is known that they occasionally whack Earth, with disastrous consequences.

The most famous of these impacts occurred about 65 million years ago in the Yucatan region of Mexico. Eons before the Mayan rulers sported in the warm waters of the Caribbean, the tremendous fires and ash from the impact of this 10 km object may have helped cause the demise of the dinosaurs and the rise of mammals to ascendancy.

But smaller objects, such as the 100 m radius object that impacted in Tunguska Siberia in 1908 with the force of a 20 megaton hydrogen bomb, strike much more frequently than NEOs of the dinosaur killer's size—at intervals of a few centuries or less.

Although in principle there is a certain (low) risk of Earth-NEO collisions in the course of centuries, do not panic; unlike our ancestors, we can do something about this threat, taking responsibility for our own future.

Although nuclear explosives are certainly an option to divert a NEO targeting Earth, sails present a much more elegant option. A large, thin solar sail deployed at an NEO would increase both the reflectivity and the effective area of the NEO, allowing for a decades-duration alteration in the NEO's orbit, converting a direct hit on Earth into a near miss.

### **Space Mining**

If we are going to explore the NEOs, why not make use of them? Many materials are present in or on these small celestial bodies, including (at least in some NEOs) water.

One way to support an expanding space infrastructure and render it less dependent on Earth is to mine NEOs as we rearrange their orbits and ship the materials back to space



processing facilities near Earth. Solar sails may provide an economical, though slow, method of altering the orbit of an NEO to allow its riches to be mined and exported back to Earth and elsewhere.

The NEO-obtained material may be used to create a geosynchronous ring of solar power satellites to beam energy back to Earth, rendering the West's current oil addiction obsolete.

Solar sail freighters, perhaps under robotic control, would make very effective transporters of material from the NEOs. Such an application may prove to be the most economically significant of all sail uses in this time frame.

### **Oort Cloud Explorers**

As a prelude to interstellar travel, space agencies after 2040 may develop an interest in probing the inner fringes of the Sun's Oort comet cloud.

Although some comets occasionally approach the Sun, where they display beautiful comae and tails, most reside in the frigid wasteland beyond the most distant planet of our solar system. Perhaps a hundred billion or a trillion of these ice balls are out there, some as close as a few thousand astronomical units, others as far out as 70,000 or 80,000 AU. Occasionally, a passing star or other celestial influence disrupts some of these objects from their stately orbits and shunts them sunward as a comet swarm.

We have probed some of the comets that regularly visit the inner solar system, but it would be nice (and informative) to visit these relics of solar system formation in their natural realm.

This is a task for the Oort cloud explorer, perhaps the ultimate sailcraft before a true starship. Imagine a sail 100 nm thick, perhaps a kilometer in radius, which is constructed of material capable of withstanding a perihelion pass of about 0.05 AU (about 10 solar radii). Such a craft could perform a Sun dive and project its payload toward the stars at velocities in excess of 500 km/s.

Although the Oort cloud explorer would take perhaps 2,000 years to traverse the 40 trillion km (4.3 light year) gulf between our Sun and its nearest stellar neighbor, it could certainly survey the Oort cloud out to a few thousand AU during its operational lifetime.

### **The Ultimate Future: Sailships to the Stars!**

Interstellar travel—flight to the stars—seems so easy in the typical Hollywood space epic. A ship silently drifts in interplanetary space, and a button is pushed. Marvelously, the local fabric of space-time is warped and distorted. The spacecraft takes an interdimensional shortcut across the universe, emerging instantly into normal space near a star many trillions of kilometers distant from our solar system!

If only it were so easy in the real world! Such interdimensional shortcuts are possible in theory, but not easily achieved in practice. To warp space effectively, we might need the mass of a star squeezed into the volume of a small terrestrial city—a so-called black hole. Yes, black holes may be shortcuts to distant realms of space and time, but tidal effects would doom a spacecraft foolish enough to approach one closely.

We might consider using angular momentum (spin) or magnetic fields to replace such a gravitational singularity, but how do you keep a structure from blowing apart if it must be spun at half the speed of light to produce an angular momentum-induced space warp? And to do it magnetically might require production of impossibly strong magnetic fields.

If only it were as easy to take an interdimensional shortcut as portrayed by Hollywood! Many physicists have calculated that contemporary physics actually forbids such techniques, which are based on the assumed existence of exotic matter having *negative* energy density (not to be confused with antimatter). In addition, even if we could produce a tunnel through space—a **wormhole**—there are stability issues. The energy of the known universe might be required to stabilize the thing long enough for a ship to pass through! Recently, some physicists computed a much lower amount of stabilization energy, but still incredibly high for what we can manage (once we arrive at knowing what exotic matter actually is via advanced measurements). An authoritative review of this topic can be found in Everett and Roman's *Time Travel and Warp Drives* [1].

But interstellar travel is still possible, even if space warps are quite unlikely. Real starships will be slower than celluloid craft, and travel times will be longer. Before considering applications of the solar sail to interstellar travel, let's briefly examine some of the other approaches that have been suggested.

### Relativistic Starflight

All right, so instantaneous interstellar travel seems to be beyond us. But what about flight at relativistic or near-optic velocities, close to 300,000 km/s? Even though travel at near light speed would take years or decades from the point of view of Earth-bound observers (even to near stars), special relativity predicts that such flights will be much shorter from the point of view of onboard crew members.

When I.S. Shlovskii and Carl Sagan published their classic, *Intelligent Life in the Universe*, in the 1960s, they noted that only two modes of relativistic travel seemed physically possible. These are the antimatter rocket and the hydrogen-fusing ramjet. Although their operation would not violate the laws of physics, there are serious technological and economic limitations to the near-term development of these travel modes.

Every elementary subatomic particle has a corresponding antiparticle (see Chap. 3). Put some matter and a corresponding mass of antimatter together and—boom! All the matter and antimatter is instantly (and explosively) converted into energy. The matter-to-energy conversion efficiency of the matter–antimatter reaction is more than 100 times greater than the best we can do with nuclear fusion and fission.

So all we have to do, conceptually, is load our interstellar rocket with lots of hydrogen and an equal mass of antihydrogen. If the matter and antimatter are allowed to slowly interact, the reaction can accelerate the craft to relativistic velocities.

But there are two big problems. First is the economics of antimatter production. Yes, we can produce tiny quantities (nanograms per year) of the stuff in our most energetic nuclear accelerators. But the cost is staggering. If the entire US economy were devoted to the production of the stuff, even allowing for economies of scale, it is doubtful that the country could produce even 1 g in a decade.

Even if a breakthrough alleviates the economic issue, there is another problem. How do we safely store the stuff for years or decades during the starship's acceleration process? Remember that if even 1 mg of antimatter comes in contact with the storage chamber (which is constructed of normal matter), the ship will instantly self-destruct!

In principle at least, the hydrogen-fusing ramjet is a more elegant solution. There are plenty of ionized hydrogen particles—protons—adrift in the interstellar medium. A properly configured electromagnetic field (a so-called “ramscop”) could conceivably be utilized to collect these over a thousand kilometer radius from the interstellar medium in front of a starship. These collected particles could then be directed into an advanced nuclear-fusion reactor and joined together (fused) to create helium and energy. The reaction energy could be applied to the helium exhaust to accelerate the starship up to relativistic velocities.

But as with the antimatter rocket, there are two major issues to constructing a ramjet. In this case, both are technological. First and foremost is the low reactivity of the proton–proton reaction. While it is true that almost all stars, including our Sun, radiate energy produced by proton fusion, this reaction is many orders of magnitude more difficult to achieve in the laboratory than thermonuclear fusion reactions used in the hydrogen bomb and our experimental fusion reactors. Barring a major breakthrough, we may never be able to tame proton fusion without carrying around a stellar mass—a somewhat inelegant approach to interstellar travel.

Even though other reactions could be used to propel slower ramjet derivatives, there is a secondary technological issue. Most electromagnetic ramscoop designs are much better at reflecting interstellar protons than collecting them. It is far easier to design an electromagnetic drag sail to slow a speeding starship than a ramscoop to collect fuel from the interstellar medium.

So we will abandon relativistic starflight concepts from our consideration. What a pity—but we still could have “slow boats” that would take centuries to cross the gulf between our solar system and its nearest stellar neighbors.

### The Nuclear Option

The first feasible method of interstellar travel to emerge is a daughter of the Cold War. First as a space interceptor and then as a backup to the Saturn V Moon rocket, the US Department of Defense and NASA considered Project Orion, a spacecraft propelled through space by the thrust of exploding nuclear devices. Tested with conventional explosives (since atmospheric nuclear detonations are prohibited by international treaty), a sub-scale Orion prototype was successfully flown during the 1960s and is on permanent display in the Smithsonian Air and Space Museum in Washington, DC.

With the technique of nuclear-pulse propulsion demonstrated, physicist Freeman Dyson moved the concept to its theoretical and economic limits in an epochal paper published in 1968 in *Physics Today* [2]. If the Cold War thermonuclear arsenals of the US and the Soviet Union had been devoted to the propulsion of huge Orions constructed in space, small human populations could be transferred to neighboring stellar systems. Travel times to the Sun's nearest stellar neighbors—the Alpha/Proxima Centauri system—would be in the range 130–1,300 years.

Of course, no nuclear power can realistically be expected to unilaterally donate its arsenal to the cause of human advancement. So the British Interplanetary Society commenced Project Daedalus in the early 1970s to evaluate the possibility of a sanitized version of nuclear-pulse interstellar propulsion.

The Daedalus motor would employ the concept of inertial fusion, a technique that is currently approaching laboratory realization.<sup>3</sup> Small pellets of fusible isotopes, preferably deuterium and helium-3, would be ejected into the craft's combustion chamber at the focus of laser or electron beams. These beams would compress the pellets and raise their temperature to the point at which thermonuclear fusion can occur. One-way interstellar travel time for small human communities would be measured in centuries, and robot probes would be faster.

But there was one catch. Helium-3, although abundant in the Sun, is extremely rare on Earth. To implement Daedalus, we would have to develop a space infrastructure capable of locating and mining this isotope from resources such as giant planet atmospheres, the solar wind, or possibly the lunar regolith.

If we wish to conduct early interstellar ventures, Daedalus is not practical. But, surprisingly, the solar sail provides an alternative propulsion possibility.

### Solar Sail Starships

You might think at first that the solar sail is useless in the dark void of interstellar space. After all, today's sails are flimsy affairs capable of small accelerations—typically one ten thousandth of Earth's surface gravity (0.0001 g).

But recall this—solar flux is an inverse-square phenomenon, meaning that as we halve the distance between the sail and the Sun, the sail's acceleration increases by a factor of four. If we can unfurl our sail very close to the Sun, then accelerations of 1 g or higher are possible (but only there).

Before 1980, two American research teams were independently evaluating the feasibility of solar sail starships. Some of the research was performed as part of a NASA Jet Propulsion Laboratory (JPL) study: the TAU (thousand astronomical units) probe. This was an interstellar precursor probe, departing the solar system at 50–100 km/s. Too slow to reach the nearest stars in less than about 13,000 years, TAU would sample particles and fields in the nearby interstellar medium and perform astronomical observations.

Although the favored propulsion system for TAU was the nuclear-electric drive in which a fission reactor's energy is used to ionize and accelerate argon atoms, a solar sail unfurled near the Sun was considered as a backup mode of propulsion. Unfortunately, the senior analyst on this aspect of the study, Chauncey Uphoff, was permitted to publish his star sail extrasolar probe results only as an internal NASA memo.

At about the same time, author Gregory Matloff, in collaboration with Michael Mautner and Eugene Mallove, was independently evaluating solar sail starship propulsion as an alternative to nuclear pulse. Most of this work was published during the 1980s as a series of papers in the *Journal of the British Interplanetary Society (JBIS)* [3–5].

---

<sup>3</sup> Although at considerable expenditure and with the requirement of substantial technological advance.

An optimized interstellar solar sail probably would be constructed in space using a nanometers-thin monolayer of a highly reflective, temperature-tolerant material—possibly a metal such as beryllium, aluminum or niobium. The sail would be affixed to the payload, utilizing cables with the tensile strength of diamond or silicon carbide.

In operation, a partially unfurled sail might be mounted behind a chunk of asteroid that has been machined to serve as a sunshade. The sail and occulting sunshade would then be injected into a parabolic solar orbit with a perihelion solar distance measured in millions of kilometers.

Approaching perihelion, the partially unfurled sail would emerge from behind its sunshade and be rapidly blown from the solar system. As the solar distance increases, the sail could be gradually unfurled and ballast released to control acceleration.

Analysis revealed that acceleration times measured in hours or days were possible. By the time the ship reaches the orbit of Jupiter, the sail could be furled, since acceleration has fallen to a negligible value. The sail could be used as cosmic ray shielding and later unfurled for deceleration. Flight times to Alpha Centauri, even for massive payloads that could carry human crews, could approximate a millennium. Of course the hyper thin sail sheets required to “tow” such large, multimillion kilogram payloads, would be enormous—in the vicinity of 100 km.

One way to increase performance of a sail-equipped starship is to “park” a solar-pumped laser or microwave power station within the inner solar system and use this device to beam collimated energy to a sail-equipped starship very far from the Sun. This approach is considered in more detail in the next chapter.

### FURTHER READING

1. E. Mallove and G. Matloff, *The Starflight Handbook*, Wiley, New York, 1989
2. P. Gilster, *Centauri Dreams*, Springer - Copernicus Books, 2004
3. G. L. Matloff, *Deep-Space Probes*, 2nd ed., Springer-Praxis, Chichester, UK, 2005
4. G. L. Matloff, L. Johnson, C. Bangs, *Living Off the Land in Space: Green Roads to the Cosmos*, Springer, 2007
5. A. Everett and T. Roman, *Time Travel and Warp Drives*, The University of Chicago Press, 2012
6. K. F. Long, *Deep Space Propulsion – a Roadmap to Interstellar Flight*, Springer, 2012
7. G. Vulpetti, Lectures on *Physics of in-Space Propulsion* at the Dept. of Astronautical Engineering of Rome University ‘La Sapienza’ (Italy), November-December 2013, downloadable from <http://www.giovannivulpetti.it/> (Solar-Photon Physics page in Solar Sailing menu)

### REFERENCES

1. Everett, Allen and Thomas Roman: *Time Travel and Warp Drives*, The University of Chicago Press, ISBN 978-0-226-22498-5, 2012.
2. F.J. Dyson, “Interstellar Transport,” *Physics Today*, Vol. 20, No. 10, p. 41-45 (October 1968).

3. M. Mautner and G.L Matloff, "Directed panspermia: A technical and ethical evaluation of seeding the universe," *JBIS*, Vol. 32, pp. 419-423 (1979).
4. G.L. Matloff and E.F. Mallove, "Solar Sail Starships: The Clipper Ships of the Galaxy," *JBIS*, Vol. 34, pp. 371-380 (1981).
5. G.L. Matloff and E.F. Mallove, "The Interstellar Solar Sail: Optimization and Further Analysis," *JBIS*, Vol. 36, pp. 201-209 (1983).

# 10

## Riding a Beam of Light

The single most important characteristic of a solar sail is its power source—the Sun. The Sun supplies a continuous source of sunlight, providing the gentle push that makes a solar sail such a useful propulsion system. Unfortunately, the Sun is also the limiting factor in the overall usefulness of a solar sail. When a spacecraft gets far from the Sun, there is simply not enough light available to provide additional propulsion. Recall the “inverse square law” discussed previously. In deep space, the Sun is essentially a point source, with sunlight radiating away from it in all directions forming an ever-expanding sphere of light. Since the total amount of light from the Sun is the same when the expanding light sphere reaches the orbit of Mercury, Venus or Earth, we are not “losing” sunlight. What we are doing, however, is reducing its intensity. The amount of sunlight may be the same, but the surface area of the sphere is much larger the farther you get from the Sun. The only way that the amount of sunlight can remain constant (which we intuitively know it must), yet cover a much larger area, is for the amount of sunlight per unit area to decrease. And decrease it does; as the distance from the Sun doubles, the amount of sunlight falling on a  $1 \text{ m}^2$  area on that sphere drops to one fourth of its previous value. The distance is doubled, and the amount of light is reduced by a factor of four. Since  $4=2^2$ , this predictable decline in sunlight is governed by the inverse square law and holds true no matter how far away from the Sun the sphere of light travels. If you measure the total amount of light falling on a  $1 \text{ m}^2$  area of sail and then quadruple the distance, the amount of sunlight falling on that same sail drops to  $1/16$  of its previous value:  $4^2=16$ . As we move away from the Sun, the push our sailcraft receives drops rapidly.

Thanks to Newton, we understand that a sailcraft won’t slow down when the sunlight dims. It will continue moving with whatever velocity it achieved during its acceleration phase until some outside force acts upon it. For a sailcraft targeted to deep space, this might mean that the sail continues on its journey for thousands or millions of years. Without light, it will not continue to accelerate and move with an ever-increasing velocity. If we want to use a sail to reach the stars in a reasonable amount of time (from a human perspective), this simply will not do. Using sunlight alone, with the largest, thinnest sail we can imagine, and with a very close solar approach, a sailcraft will take at least one thousand years to reach the nearest star.

Clearly, we must find a way to change the rules of the game and make sure our sailcraft has an ever-constant beam of sunlight available so that it can continue to accelerate to higher and higher velocities—making journeys into interstellar space possible with a trip time of less than a thousand years! Fortunately, nature provided us with ways in which this might actually be achieved.

## **LASER SAILING**

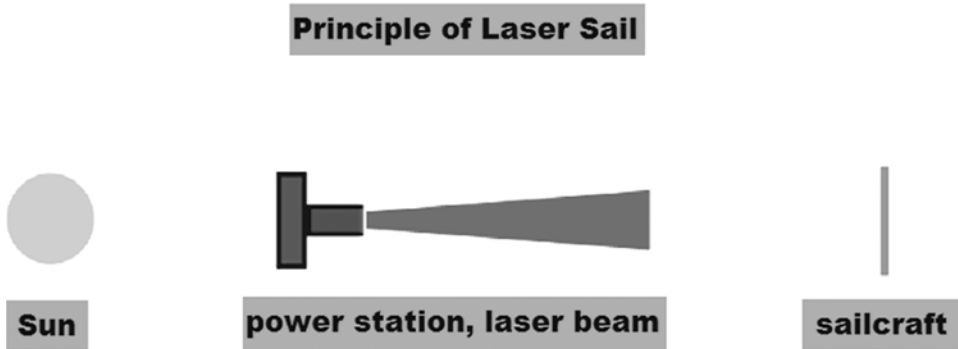
Enter the laser, a word that originated as an acronym for light amplification by stimulated emission of radiation. It is a science fiction-like invention of the 1950s that may provide an alternative to sunlight for providing the thrust a solar sail needs when it is far from the Sun. An ideal laser emits light at one wavelength, or color, in a narrow beam. Unlike light emitted from the Sun or a light bulb, ideal laser light is highly directional and does not spread out in all directions—meaning that the inverse square law does not apply. Such a laser can theoretically push our solar sail even when it is very far from the Sun. Unfortunately, we cannot build an “ideal” laser, and even the best laser beam will spread out somewhat as it moves away from its source. This is due to a process called diffraction, which the interested technical reader can learn more about by referencing a good physics textbook. That said, a laser-driven sail is still an exciting possibility, as the diffraction-limit doesn’t appreciably impact the performance of a sailcraft until distances much, much greater than those limiting solar sails are surpassed.

We discussed how sunlight could push a solar sail when the sailcraft is near the Sun and propel it outward into the solar system until it reaches approximately the orbit of Jupiter. We’ve also determined that we can use a laser to continue pushing the sail when sunlight is no longer available. So where do we put this laser (knowing that it will require a lot of energy to produce a beam powerful enough to cross the gulf of space and still provide the sailcraft with enough light for propulsion)?

If the laser were built on Earth, the power problem would certainly be easily solved. Many industrial nations have a power infrastructure that could easily sustain the operation of the laser required for deep-space or interstellar flight. But Earth is not a good location, for many reasons. First, the laser would be travelling through our dense atmosphere, which would immediately produce not only significant degradation of the beam’s intensity (lots of light would be lost during the beam’s passage through the atmosphere), but it would also cause the beam to diverge, or spread out, much sooner than would otherwise be the case for a comparable beam generated in vacuum. Second, Earth rotates about its axis once every 24 h. That means it would be impossible to point a laser toward a specific point in space for more than a few hours at a time and even this would require a complex pointing system as it would have to be moving constantly to maintain its aim point as the Earth rotates. And don’t forget that Earth is in orbit around the Sun, adding additional motion for which a pointing system must compensate. Lastly are the politics of basing the laser on Earth. If a country builds a laser powerful enough to propel a spacecraft through deep space, then it would have a laser powerful enough to knock down another country’s aircraft, missiles and even their orbiting satellites. Such a laser could be used as a weapon.

What about putting the laser in Earth orbit? The political problem would still remain. A large, powerful, space-based laser could threaten not only aircraft, missiles and





10.1 A laser-driven sailcraft could be accelerated significantly

spacecraft, but anything on the ground (provided that Earth's atmosphere was transparent to the laser's wavelength). Pointing would also still be an issue. Recall that a spacecraft in orbit is not stationary—it is moving at very high speeds so that it can remain in orbit and not fall back to Earth. A craft in low Earth orbit (up to about 1,000 km), circles the globe approximately once every 90 min. Instead of sweeping across the sky once every 24 h, the laser is now forced to do so every 1.5 h! And the motion of Earth around the Sun is still a factor to be considered. Tracking and pointing may be much more difficult for an orbiting space-based laser than one located on the ground.

What about power? Without a power grid to tap into, an Earth-orbiting laser would be required to generate its own power. Extremely large solar arrays or onboard nuclear reactors would be required to produce the energy needed to drive the laser. Though the atmosphere is no longer a problem, moving the laser from the surface of Earth to Earth orbit does not appear viable.

Where, then, can we find abundant power, no atmosphere to attenuate the beam, relatively stable pointing (so the laser can push on the sail for a long period of time with minimal active pointing required) and no fear of the laser being considered a military threat?

One option would be to place the laser in orbit around the Sun, as shown in Fig. 10.1. If the laser station is relatively close to the Sun, then the inverse-square law works in our favor by making solar array panels capable of producing much more power. If we locate at one-half the Earth-to-Sun distance, the arrays will theoretically generate four times more power from the greater intensity sunlight falling upon them. There is no atmosphere, so there will be no immediate laser beam loss or added divergence. Pointing is still an issue, but it should be easier to steer and point the beam at our sailcraft from a laser in solar orbit because there is no longer planetary or planet-centric orbital motion that must be considered. Only the motion of the laser around the Sun must be accounted for. To compensate for the times when the laser is on the opposite side of the Sun from our sailcraft, two or three laser stations could be placed in solar orbit, with at least one of them always being in line-of-sight with the sailcraft, thereby providing propulsion.

A laser station closely orbiting the Sun is potentially not the best solution to the problem, however. Recall that we are concerned about not having enough light falling on the sail to allow it to continue thrusting once it passes Jupiter. If lasers didn't suffer from

diffraction causing divergence, our problem would be solved. We could place our laser virtually anywhere and point it where we want it, without regard to distance. But lasers are diffraction-limited and they do diverge. Placing a laser close to the Sun only serves to reduce the maximum distance from Earth at which the laser light is still sufficiently intense to produce thrust on the sail. Ideally, we would place our laser at or near Jupiter so it can begin pushing the sail when the Sun completes its part of the job. Fortunately, Jupiter might be a great place for our laser.

At first glance, Jovian orbit seems to have nearly all the benefits of a solar-orbiting locale for basing the laser—except for power. The laser would not be located on a planetary surface, so there is not an atmosphere to contend with, nor is anyone nearby who might construe the laser to be a military threat. The motion of Jupiter around the Sun, and the commensurate viewing and pointing considerations, can be compensated for, as Jupiter orbits the Sun only once in 12 years. If the laser station is in a polar orbit around Jupiter, it could have a clear line-of-sight to our sailcraft for a decade at a time—taking into account only the orbit of the planet around the Sun.

But what about power? Jupiter is far from the Sun, so solar power is not a good candidate. As discussed earlier, the laser station might be nuclear powered. Alternatively, the energy contained in the Jovian magnetic field might be harnessed with a long, conducting wire, or tether, deployed from the laser platform deep into the Jovian magnetosphere. The tether, due to its motion through the planet's magnetic field, would generate a potential difference across its length. This potential difference, or voltage drop, would result in the collection of electrons from the Jovian magnetosphere, thus producing a flow of electricity through the wire. The principle is the same as that which is seen when an electric generator produces electricity in a terrestrial power plant. On Earth, we produce electricity by moving wires through intense magnetic fields. Jupiter has the second most power magnetic field in the solar system, only behind the Sun. Our tether, moving through this field, can produce megawatts of power to drive the laser.

This is by no means the only scenario in which lasers might be used to push our sails. But it is certainly a likely one. A mission might proceed something like this: A sailcraft departs from Earth on a sunward bound trajectory. The craft falls toward the Sun and orients its sail to maximize solar thrust at perihelion, giving it an incredible boost toward the outer solar system. Sunlight continues to push on the sail until it reaches the orbit of Jupiter, at which point our tether-driven laser sends a beam of light to reflect from the sail, picking up from where the now feeble sunlight leaves off. The laser maintains its aim point on the sail, providing continuous additional thrust, until the diffraction limit of the laser results in no net thrust being applied to the sail—somewhere in deep space. In this way, we can effectively extend the useful range of solar sails two- to fivefold.

## **MICROWAVE SAILING**

The laser is a powerful technology and it certainly represents one option to increase the effective range of a solar sail. But it is not ideal.

One problem of the laser is cost. Low-power lasers are fairly economical. One has to look no further than the ubiquitous compact disc or DVD player to realize that mass

produced lasers can be manufactured cheaply. Unfortunately, high-power lasers, with far fewer commercial applications, are much more expensive to produce.

Happily, there is a far less expensive beamed-power alternative to the laser, although it too has its disadvantages. That alternative is the so-called “maser,” or microwave laser. And high-power masers may be much less expensive to produce than their laser cousins.

There is no intrinsic reason why microwave-energy generators should be less expensive than lasers. The reasons for this cost disparity are tied in with military history and, as you might have guessed, mass production.

Large-scale generation of microwave power was pioneered during World War II by many of the belligerent powers. Radar, which uses microwaves, was developed in that era both to detect enemy aircraft at great distances by radar-beam reflection and to serve as a navigational aid. The enormous cost of developing high-power microwave generators was therefore born by the military establishments.

Besides cost, as with many technologies that appear magical at first glance, there is a catch. The wavelength of a microwave is generally in the millimeter-to-centimeter range. The wavelength of a near-infrared laser is about one ten-thousandth of a centimeter. By a mathematical principle called Rayleigh’s criterion, the beam-spread or divergence of even a perfect laser depends upon the laser’s wavelength.

You can get some idea of what this wavelength-dependent beam divergence means in practice by considering the following example. Let’s say that you design an interstellar expedition to be accelerated by a near-infrared laser. To intercept all beamed energy at the extreme range of the laser, you estimate that the sail diameter is a large, but at least imaginable, 500 km. But if you desire to save money on the propulsion mechanism and replace your laser with a 1 cm wavelength microwave transmitter of equal power and still have your sail intercept all transmitted radiation, your sail size must increase to a gargantuan 5 million km, about three times the diameter of the Sun!

Clearly, something must be done or microwave-beamed propulsion becomes absurd. One possibility, as presented by Robert Forward, is to insert a thin-film focusing lens into the microwave beam between the transmitter and the sailcraft. Although such an approach, in principle, can deliver a lot more beamed energy to the sail, you must now contend with the problem of another large optical component that must be very accurately positioned in the depths of interstellar space.

During the early years of the twenty-first century, a NASA-funded team led by physicist Jim Benford and his author and brother Greg Benford further investigated the problems and possibilities posed by microwave sailing. They concluded that microwave sailing might be best employed over short distances—such as accelerating a sailcraft from low Earth orbit to Earth escape velocity using ground-transmitted microwave beams (a real possibility since the atmosphere is transparent to most microwaves, and existing radio telescopes can be used as transmitters).

The Benfords also employed a phenomenon called desorption that increases the efficiency of a microwave sailcraft. As well as pushing the sail by radiation pressure, microwave heating can evaporate gas molecules trapped in the sail during its manufacture, which can increase sail velocity. A small boost perhaps, but a boost nonetheless!

**PARTICLE-BEAM SAIL PROPULSION**

One disadvantage of radiation-pressure propulsion—of the solar, laser or microwave variety—is the very small momentum of a photon. But what if we could construct a huge version of a nuclear accelerator to accelerate particles of matter to high velocity and impinge them against some form of sail? Just as in a solar sail, the reflected particles would impart some of their momentum and energy to the sail providing thrust.

Ground-based particle accelerators have been in use for decades in physics research. Currently, there are three very big accelerators in the world: Fermilab (Chicago, US), CERN (Geneva, Switzerland) and KEK<sup>1</sup> (Tsukuba, Japan). The next generation of gargantuan accelerators should include the International Linear Collider (ILC). Charged particles are accelerated in many mile-long paths, literally, and slammed into targets, or other accelerated beams of particles in order to study the very deep essence of the universal physical interactions at particle energies that occur in nature very close to black holes, or existed in the Universe state a long, long time ago, before the birth of galaxies.

Charged particles like protons are used because we know how to make them move (accelerate). A charged particle in an electric or magnetic field will experience a force due to that field, making it move. By properly aligning the fields, these charged particles can be accelerated to very high speeds—close to the speed of light. If such a particle beam were to strike a sail in the vacuum of space, the sail would move and continue to gain speed as long as the beam impacts it.

Charged particle beams have one very serious flaw in their potential application to space travel—divergence. Unlike divergence in laser or maser sails, the divergence of a particle beam is caused by the accelerated particles themselves. The simple axiom, “like charges repel; opposite charges attract,” dooms a charged particle beam sail from being useful at any significant distance from its source. As the beam of charged particles emerges from whatever accelerator created it, the very atoms within the beam, typically protons (with a positive charge), begin to push away from each other, until the beam spreads and becomes too diffuse to be useful.

In the heyday of the US’s Strategic Defense Initiative (SDI), space-based particle beam weapons were being seriously considered as a method for shooting down or disabling missiles. To circumvent the beam-divergence problem inherent with their operation, engineers and scientists began developing neutral particle beam systems—neutral particles don’t repel one another, thereby reducing or eliminating the problem of beam divergence.

The first step in producing a neutral particle beam is making a charged particle beam. Neutral atoms cannot be accelerated in an electric or magnetic field because they carry no net charge. Therefore, a beam of charged particles, typically protons, is first produced and accelerated to high velocities. Passing it through a very thin film or plasma cloud then neutralizes the beam. (To “neutralize” a proton means to simply provide it with an electron so that it becomes charge neutral, therefore not susceptible to charged-particle self-repulsion.) The charge-neutral beam can then propagate through space unimpeded to

---

<sup>1</sup>KEK is the Japanese acronym standing for High Energy Accelerator Research Organization (Japan), also employed for referring to the accelerator complex.

the target, or in our case, to the sail. As with most engineering solutions, the charge neutralization process is not without problems. It, too, induces beam divergence that causes the beam to spread out over long distances. This divergence is caused by the atoms of the beam colliding with atoms in the film or plasma cloud and reflecting from them as they “pick up” an electron.

Putting large, high-power neutral particle beam accelerators in space to propel starships may indeed be possible. We don't yet know how to engineer a system large enough, powerful enough or with sufficiently low divergence, but there appears to be no physical reason we cannot. As with high-power lasers, the politics may prevent us from developing them: a high-power neutral particle beam system in Earth orbit could easily be used as a weapon.

### FURTHER READING

Principles of beamed propulsion are reviewed in E. Mallove and G. Matloff, *The Starflight Handbook*, Wiley, NY, 1989. For a more up-to-date technical treatment and review, see G. L. Matloff, *Deep-Space Probes*, 2nd ed., Springer-Praxis, Chichester, UK, 2005.

AIP Conference Proceedings 664: First International symposium on Beamed-energy Propulsion, May 2003, American Institute of Physics.

**Part III**  
**Construction of Sailcraft**

# 11

## Designing a Solar Sail

As with most engineering challenges, even for solar sails there is no single “best” design solution which will meet all potential needs and mission scenarios. This chapter is divided into two major sections. First, we will discuss the most viable solar sail design options and the pros and cons of each, including the problem of controlling the orientation of a sail in space. Then we will deal with technological aspects in building a sailcraft.

### TYPES OF SOLAR SAILS

#### Sail Physics Requires Some Design Commonality

Before we discuss the myriad options available to solar sail designers, it might be useful to review some basics. First of all, a solar sail must contain a lightweight surface that efficiently reflects light (at least until we discover a way to “virtually” reflect light, which is currently beyond the realm of realistic engineering possibility). There is usually some sort of material under the reflector to provide structural strength and stability as well as to help balance any thermal issues. Current technology requires these lightweight materials to be deployed or suspended from some sort of boom, similar to the mast of a seventeenth century sailing ship, or to spin and have the deployment and deployed configuration maintained by the resultant centripetal acceleration. Building on these basic requirements, creative engineers and scientists have developed several options to consider as we begin solar sailing.

#### Three-Axis Stabilized Solar Sails

A three-axis stabilized solar sail most resembles a kite. Like a kite, booms support the solar sail material in three dimensions—the two dimensions that form the plane of the sail (left/right and top/bottom) as well as the dimension perpendicular to the plane of the sail (up/down). Like an airplane or a rocket, the sail must be stable in all three dimensions to allow the precise pointing required to control the Sun-provided thrust (pitch, roll and yaw), thus allowing the sail to carry a payload where we want it to go. The sail must also be supported in these dimensions to prevent it from going slack or collapsing on itself in any direction. Just imagine trying to fly a kite that has no supporting structure, and you will understand why a solar sail requires booms.

What characteristics must these booms have? First of all, given the overall size of a solar sail (typically greater than 20–40 m on a side) and the relatively small size of today's rocket fairings (typically less than 5 m in diameter), the booms must be deployable from some sort of spacecraft. There is no rocket known that can loft a pre-deployed, 20 m diameter solar sail. These deployable booms must also be very lightweight. Recall that a key technology driver for a solar-sail propulsion system is (low) mass. The push from sunlight is slight, and if the sail or its support structures are heavy, the sail will not perform well.

Centripetal acceleration is the acceleration that causes any rectilinear path to become curved. It is a pure kinematical concept, which is not limited to circular motion. For instance, an object at the end of a rope, rotating about a vertical axis, undergoes a centripetal acceleration *caused* by the cord's tension acting toward the rotation axis. When one writes  $\text{Mass} \times \text{Centripetal Acceleration} = \text{Tension}$ , this means that the active force (or the motion cause) is the cord's tension, whereas the centripetal acceleration is the kinematical manifestation of this force. This is only a particular case of the general equation  $\text{Force} = \text{Mass} \times \text{Acceleration}$ .

Do not confuse *centripetal* acceleration with *centrifugal* acceleration, even though they have the same magnitude. The latter is sensed by a body in a rotating frame; for example, think of what you sense when you are steering your car along a highway curve. The centrifugal acceleration is directed outward with respect to the curve, as its name indicates. An observer on the highway (or on the other side of the police television circuit) has a different view by watching you and your car curving because of centripetal acceleration. In this case, such acceleration is the consequence of the car engine, wheels, and road-wheel friction.

In contrast, in a general rotating frame, any body undergoes three different accelerations (all independent of its mass) for the mere reason that it is rotating; namely, they are not caused by force. (The true explanation of that can be provided in a postgraduate course for physicists.) Here, with regard to solar sails, it suffices to mention that a body in a rotating structure senses (besides the centrifugal acceleration, which is proportional to the distance from the rotation axis) a second acceleration that depends on the body's relative speed (the Coriolis acceleration, which is also very important in air and ocean circulations). The third acceleration occurs when the frame rotates at a nonconstant angular speed. (This last term may be included in a more general definition of centrifugal acceleration.) Generally, the directions and the magnitudes of such accelerations differ from each other.

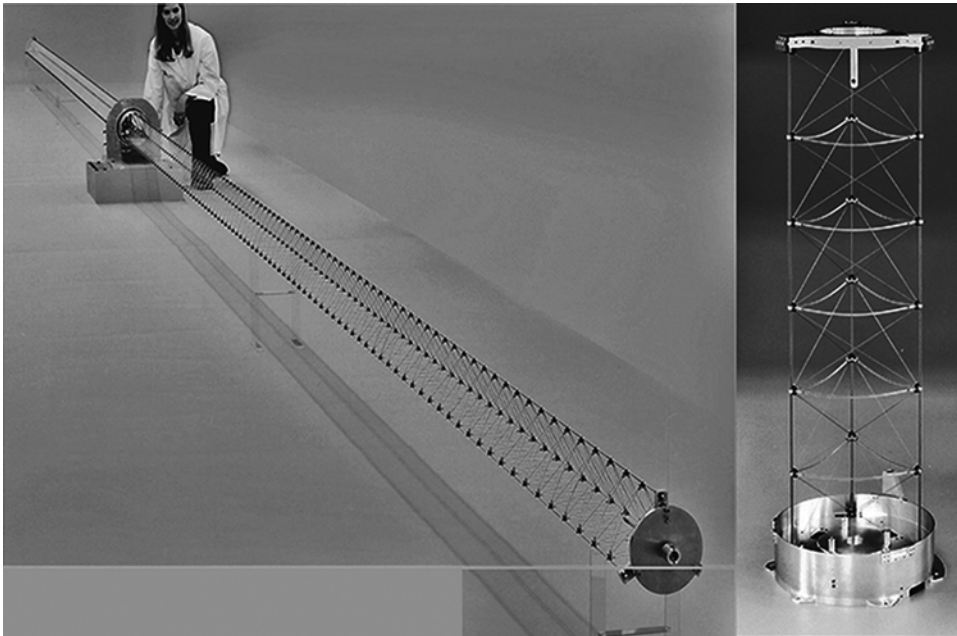
NASA tested two design options for a long, lightweight deployable solar sail boom in 2004 and 2005. The first option most resembled a sail ship's mast of days gone by in that it was a solid, mechanical boom. Made from state-of-the-art composite materials, a rigid



mechanical boom (developed by ATK Space Systems of Goleta, California) was used to deploy and test a 20 m solar sail developed for NASA. The boom and sail worked well in both ambient testing (room temperature and in air) as well as in thermal vacuum testing at NASA's Glenn Research Center Plum Brook Station (Sandusky, Ohio). The ATK booms, when stowed, resemble a spring under tension. They collapse to a mere 1 % of their fully deployed length and, when deployed, are capable of suspending a large sail even under the effects of Earth's gravity, which they will not have to sustain during operation in space. Figure 11.1 is a picture of the mast during development testing by NASA and ATK.

NASA's efforts in this area were preceded by Germany's Deutschen Zentrum fur Luft-und Raumfahrt (DLR), which used booms made from carbon fiber reinforced plastic to deploy a 20 m three-axis stabilized solar sail in 1999 (Fig. 11.2).

NASA also worked with L'Garde, Inc. (Tustin, California) to develop lightweight inflatable boom technology (Fig. 11.3). As the term implies, an inflatable boom is stowed onboard the central spacecraft structure until its deployment is initiated by blowing it up like a balloon. Nitrogen gas is expelled into the balloon-like boom until it is fully deployed. The boom is made from a material that quickly becomes rigid after exposure to the cold temperatures of deep space, thus obviating the need for the gas to remain within it. The benefits of this approach are twofold. First, the inflated boom is mechanically simple with few moving parts. Second, it is very lightweight and can be scaled to larger sizes without a significant increase in overall mass density. Since having low mass is critical for a solar sail propulsion system, this approach holds much promise.



11.1 Capable of supporting a solar sail in space, this boom, developed by ATK Space Systems, was tested by NASA both in air and in space-like vacuum conditions (Courtesy of ATK Space Systems)



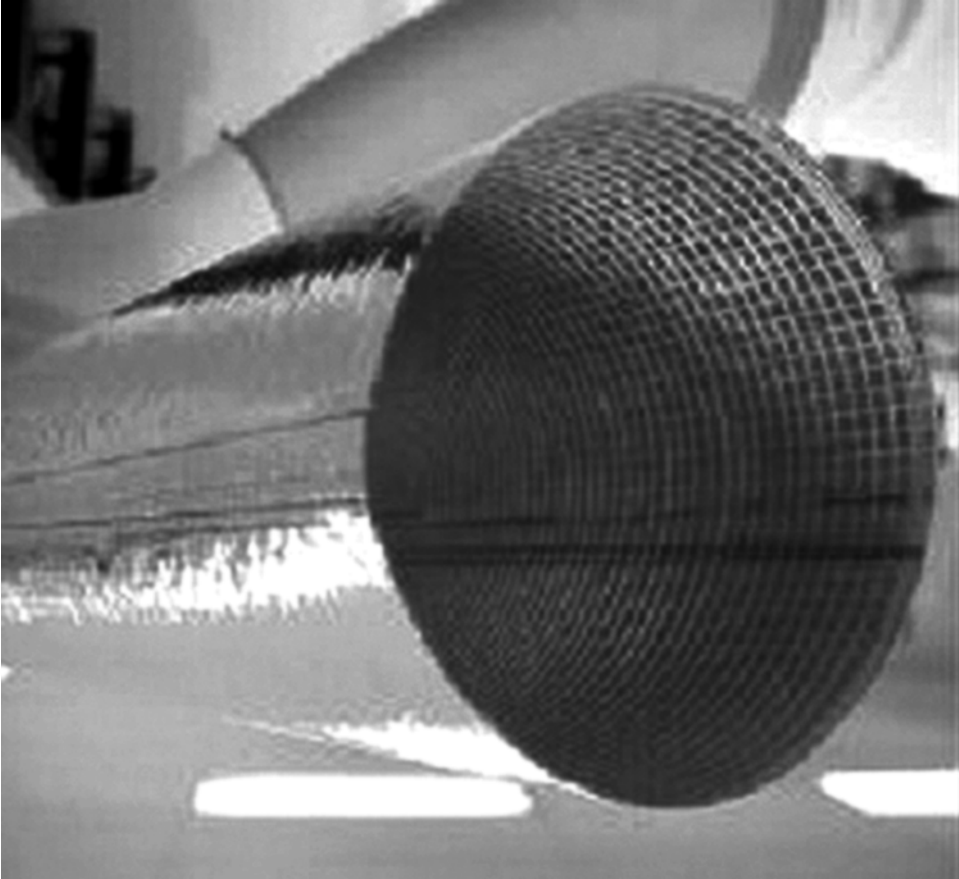
11.2 This rigid boom was used by DLR to deploy its solar sail during ground testing in 1999 (Courtesy of DLR)

### **Spin-Stabilized “Solid” Solar Sails**

An obvious question to ask when designing a lightweight solar sail is how does one reduce the amount of mass required? One answer is to eliminate the mass of the booms (described previously) used to deploy and stabilize the sail. Fortunately, nature provides us with a proven and easily implemented solution—we can spin the sail to get rid of the booms. The centrifugal acceleration experienced by the sail due to its rotation (as mentioned in the box above, the system of the sail’s molecules, as with any rotating object, senses its own rotation point by point) puts the sail material under tension, keeping it flat as sunlight reflects from it, thus eliminating the need for any booms. This may require that the sail be strengthened with tension-bearing lines, but the mass required for these lines is much less than that of a boom system. Since the sail system is spinning, it behaves like a large gyroscope, providing stability in pointing that would otherwise have to be achieved in some other way.

In addition to providing pointing stability, keeping the sail flat, and under tension, a spinning sail can be easily deployed. The rotation acceleration that keeps the sail taut can be used to gently pull the sail outward from the spacecraft during deployment. One should note that during the deployment process, the sail moves (slowly) with respect to the rotating structure. Such a deployment would work like this:

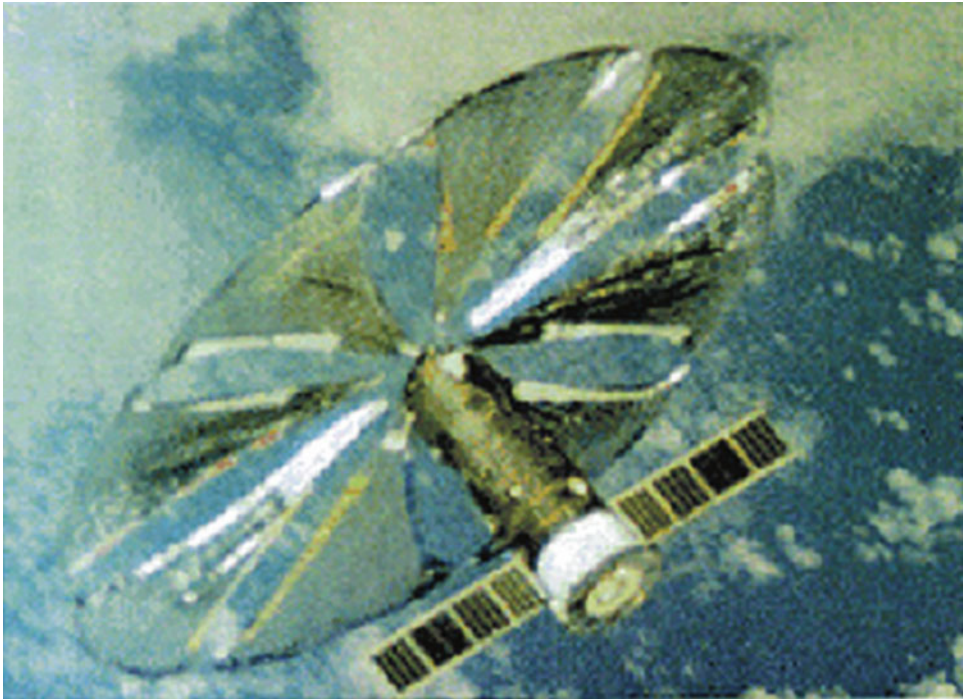
1. The sail is stowed aboard a small spacecraft and is launched into space.
2. The spacecraft begins to spin.



11.3 Shown here is deployment testing of L'Garde's inflatable boom for a solar-sail propulsion system (Courtesy of NASA)

3. The folded or packaged sail is released from the spacecraft, slowly unfurling due to the centripetal acceleration produced by the spinning spacecraft.
4. The fully deployed sail is kept taut by maintaining a slow rotation about an axis perpendicular to the plane of the sail.

The Russians successfully demonstrated this technique in space with their Znamya mirror experiment flown in 1993 (Fig. 11.4). Deployed from an unmanned Progress spacecraft following its resupply of the Mir Space Station, a 20 m circular sail-like reflector was unfurled. Its stated purpose was to demonstrate the technologies required to use large mirrors to illuminate cities at night, though most of the technologies on Znamya were directly applicable to solar sailing. A follow-up experiment in 1999 was to have deployed a 25 m diameter sail from another Progress vehicle during space operations. Unfortunately, this test failed due to the accidental extension of an antenna into the area occupied by the unfurling sail—the antenna caused the sail to crumple, ending the experiment.

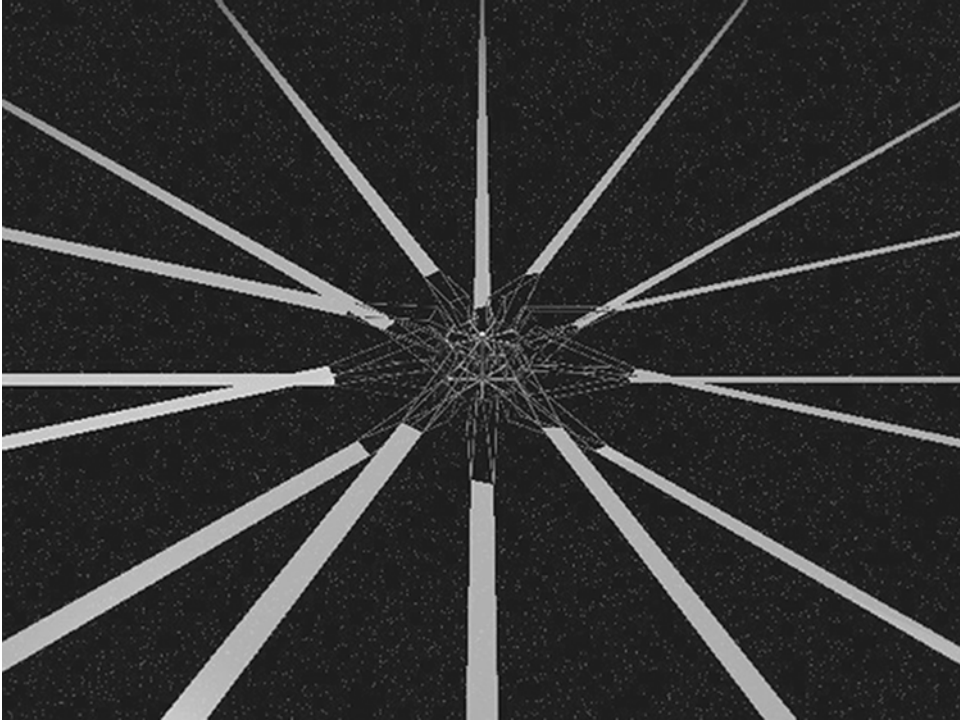


11.4 The Russians were the first to deploy a spinning, solar sail–like structure in space. This is an artist's concept of Znamya-2 (Courtesy of Russian Space Agency)

### **Spin-Stabilized “Heliogyro” Solar Sails**

The heliogyro is another class of spin-stabilized solar sail. Heliogyro sails are also stabilized by centripetal acceleration, but they take on a totally different character in that they are composed of several separate vanes that deploy because of the spinning motion of the centrally located spacecraft. Instead of appearing as a solid, or near-solid, circular reflector, they look more like a windmill. An artist's rendering of a heliogyro solar sail is shown in Fig. 11.5.

This list is by no means exhaustive. In addition to the varieties of sails mentioned in this chapter, there have been various studies and technology efforts by the world's space agencies, universities and private organizations that result in a myriad of design options. Some show the benefits of triangular three-axis stabilized sails versus square ones. Others show the superiority of inflated booms over rigid mechanical booms, and vice versa. One thing is certain when comparing the various sail design options: no one option is superior for all mission applications or time frames. A near-term mission to study the Sun in the inner solar system will likely utilize a very different sail technology than that which will be used for our first missions into interstellar space. Engineers, keep innovating!



11.5 Shown here is an artist's rendering of a heliogyro solar sail composed of multiple vanes deployed and stabilized by the spinning motion of the central spacecraft (Courtesy of B. Diedrich)

## HOW TO MANEUVER A SAILCRAFT

### What Is Spacecraft Attitude?

Let us begin by explaining spacecraft attitude. This concept is not limited to space vehicles or other bodies outside our planet. The classical astronomical observations of the celestial bodies have been done from ground by (automatically) projecting them onto a sphere of very large, but indeterminate, radius. Such a sphere is called the **celestial sphere**; it is a mental construct, but quite useful. This concept does not depend on the specific planet or other body one is considering. Thus, the direction of a star is simply the observer-to-star line. The intersection of such a line with the celestial sphere is a point that is completely determined by two angles, like the longitude and the latitude pair, at a given instant. In other words, a point on the celestial sphere represents a direction.

Now, let us suppose that you want to tell somebody how, for instance, a large hardcover book is oriented in your study room. The first thing to do is to define some frame of reference in your room walls. Recalling analytic geometry and the three Cartesian axes:  $x$ ,  $y$  and  $z$ , the frame of reference can be  $X$ - $Y$ - $Z$  along three edges convergent in one of the vertices (you may call the *origin* [O]) of the room. Because your book can take a lot of

(infinite, in principle) orientations with respect to the frame O-XYZ, you can repeat the same logical process for the book. Thus, you have constructed another frame, say, o-xyz, *attached* to three edges emanating from a vertex of your book. (It is not mandatory that the two frames are Cartesian, in reality, but it's very useful.) At this point, the orientation of your book is quite determined once you decide the directions of the axes x-y-z with respect to the room frame XYZ. (Note that, as far as orientation is concerned, you don't need to know the position of the o-point with respect to the O-point.) In practice, you have to know the angles that x-y-z form with X-Y-Z. Six of the nine possible angles are sufficient. Thus, you have determined the **attitude** of your book with respect to your room. If you rotate the book in some way, you can repeat the same steps for determining the new attitude.

In space, we don't have a pretty room for orienting a spacecraft. The role of your room can be replaced by the celestial sphere *centered* on the spacecraft. However, we need again three axes x-y-z bonded to the spacecraft's main structure; the origin of the axes may be coincident with the spacecraft's center of mass or some other suitable point. Quite similarly to the book example, the three directions of x, y and z represent the orientation or the attitude of the space vehicle.

To specify angles on the celestial sphere, we need to define a great circle acting as a reference, and a special point (E) on it. (A **great circle** on the sphere is a circle with its center coincident with the sphere center.) In turn, this reference plane defines its own **north and south poles**, namely, the intersections between the sphere and the orthogonal-to-circle line passing through the sphere center (C). Usually, the north pole (N) is adopted as the second reference point. Thus, the CE line is taken as the x-axis, whereas the line CN is taken as the z-axis. Hence, the y-axis is automatically fixed. The two special points, E and N, are utilized to measure the angles defining a direction. Historically, the great circle of reference was Earth's equator at some date and the E-point was the east intersection of the ecliptic with the equator (the March equinox). Nowadays, the equatorial system of coordinates has been replaced by the highly accurate frame known as the International Celestial Reference Frame (ICRF, or its idealization ICRS), which is strictly inertial. The ICRS orientation, though, is close to that of the old system taken at J2000 (this abbreviation stands for the date 2000-01-01, 12:00:00, terrestrial time). The interested reader can be introduced to or find technical readings on such basic topics at <http://www.iers.org/>.

Of course, the attitude of a spacecraft may change with time. The spacecraft can rotate about some axis of symmetry; thus, at a given time, one must also measure the rotation angle to get the complete attitude. The examples are manifold because any spacecraft may have rotating parts, flexible appendages, long booms, independent steerable pieces, damping internal systems, etc.

### **Classifying Attitude Analysis Items**

The general spacecraft attitude analysis may be categorized mainly as attitude determination, attitude prediction and attitude control.



Attitude **determination** is the process of computing the spacecraft orientation, with respect to an inertial frame of reference of Earth, the Sun or another celestial body, starting from the measurements of sensors onboard the spacecraft.

Attitude **prediction** consists of forecasting the future evolution of spacecraft orientation via algorithms, where both the spacecraft and the environment are modeled.

Attitude **control** is the process that enables us to get the desired attitude in a certain period of time for different purposes (e.g., thrust activation, spacecraft safety, scientific payload requirements, perturbation compensation, etc.). There are two main areas: attitude **stabilization** and attitude **maneuver**. The former concerns a process aiming at keeping the spacecraft attitude for a certain time interval. The latter concerns the problem of changing the spacecraft attitude, especially for allowing the spacecraft to follow the right trajectory to the mission target.

Classically, celestial mechanics is the area of dynamics and astronomy that addresses the motion of celestial bodies under their reciprocal gravitational influence. Astrodynamics is the study of the motion of artificial objects in space. The big difference between astrodynamics and celestial mechanics consists of propulsion and its control. In turn, astrodynamics has two major partitions: trajectory (or orbit) dynamics, and attitude dynamics. The former addresses the motion *of* the center of mass, or the barycenter, of spacecraft (i.e., the translational motion), whereas the latter is concerned with the motion of the spacecraft *about* its barycenter (i.e., the rotational motion).

When a force (either internal or external) applies along a direction that does not pass through the barycenter, the so-called moment of the force or the **torque** (about the barycenter) is generated. Internal and external torques can affect the rotational motion of parts of spacecraft with respect to others. However, only the external torques act upon the *overall* rotational motion (e.g., with respect to an inertial frame) of the spacecraft.

A fundamental property of spacecraft motion is that its trajectory and attitude histories are strongly connected. Conventionally, propulsive devices for trajectory control are called the main engines or thrusters, whereas the devices providing spacecraft with the control torques for orientation maneuvers are often referred as the control hardware or the **actuators** (which therefore represent a component of the whole attitude control system).

Finally, any spacecraft may be categorized in two large classes with respect to the attitude stabilization: (1) spin-stabilized spacecraft, and (2) three-axis stabilized spacecraft. The second class requires more complex active control of the vehicle attitude, which otherwise would drift uncontrolled under the action of external torques that may continuously perturb the spacecraft.

### Sail Attitude Control Methods

In general, there are two major external torques on any spacecraft: (1) the **disturbance torques**, caused by the space environment the spacecraft interacts with, and (2) the **control torques**, induced intentionally by means of attitude actuators. The latter are of utmost importance because it is through attitude evolution that the main propulsion system, whatever it may be, forces the spacecraft to follow the planned trajectory to the final target.

A general rigid body rotating freely (no torque) in space has a rather complicated motion, with angular velocity constant in magnitude, but variable in direction (i.e., something roughly like the uniform circular motion). If we want to change both the magnitude and the direction of the angular velocity, and then to affect the attitude angles, we have to apply torques.

In Chaps. 5 and 7 we stated that two points, normally inside the volume occupied by the whole sailcraft, are given special importance in sailcraft dynamics: the center of mass of the spacecraft and the sail system, and the center of pressure of the sail system. Since the sail system is much larger than the spacecraft, one can define the vector position of the spacecraft (as a point-like system) with respect to the sail. In addition, the solar pressure thrust vector has a major component along the sail axis and a (nonnegligible) component along the mean plane of the sail (see Chap. 16 for more precise explanations). Normally, the sail axis is not aligned with the (local) Sun-sail line and there is the need to change the attitude sail systematically for controlling the sailcraft trajectory. Let us describe some methods envisaged for attitude control.

#### Method 1: Relative Displacement between Barycenter and Center of Pressure

One can think of shifting the sail laterally by acting on the sail structure directly. This sail shifting should be easier to implement if the sail were like a one-block structure. If the full sail is sectioned into subsails or panels, then one or two symmetrical sections may be translated with respect to the others. In any case, a torque arises with respect to the barycenter. Such torque can affect only two of the three sail directions; it is not possible to control the motion of the sail about its orthogonal axis. That may cause problems to the attitude control of some scientific instruments of the spacecraft payload, if a three-axis control is required by the mission objectives.

Since it is the relative displacement that matters, one could shift a ballast mass (in the spacecraft) by some device consuming electric energy. The physics of control does not change, of course: the induced torque allows two-axis control, as above. However, the towing device may be much simpler and lighter, especially when the sail is very large.

The so-called control authority is strongly related to the sail attitude itself; in other words, if the sunlight impinges on the sail with a large incidence angle, not only does the thrust acceleration decrease, but also the torque that one wants to use for controlling the sail lessens. Furthermore, the spacecraft has to be located between the Sun and the sail, a constraint that would cause many problems in missions for which the sailcraft trajectory is close to the Sun.

There is another general risk. A number of non-ideal effects may induce the barycenter and the center of pressure to be offset by some unwanted (and unmeasured) position vector:



hence, emerges **bias** or **unbalanced force moments**, which act as disturbance torques. As they may be comparable to the attitude-maneuver-required torques, they need to be trimmed down to zero (nominally). This can be done by an active attitude stabilization device; namely, by increasing the mass and complexity of the sailcraft.

### Method 2: Using Pairs of a Segmented Sail

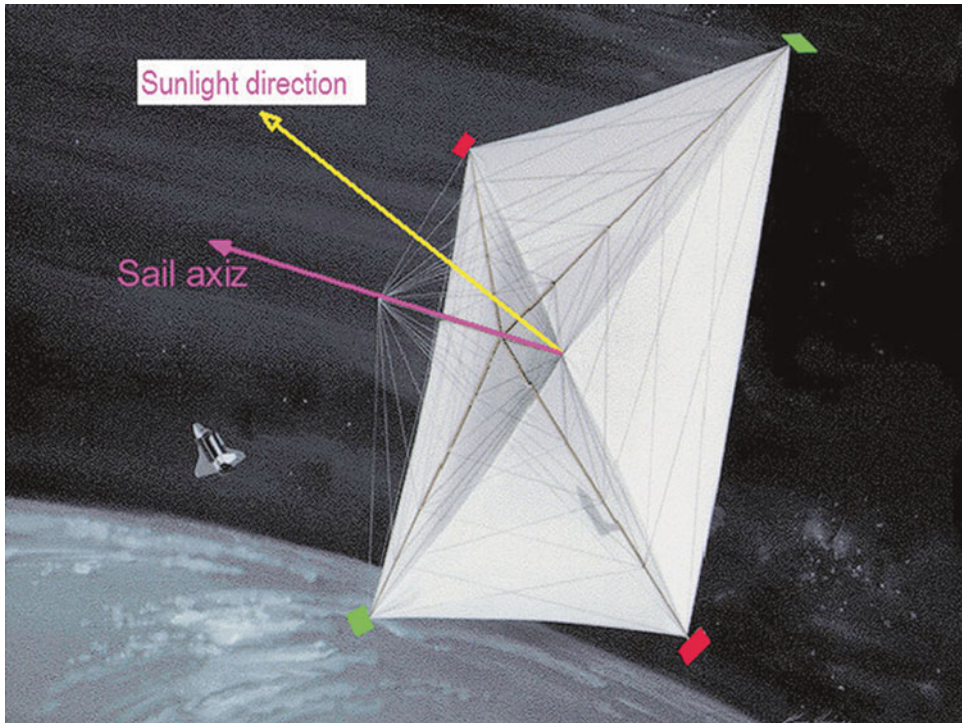
In contrast to the above-mentioned subsail pair (which was translated), this technique would use the rotation of two opposite panels. To do so, the sail has to have each attitude panel supported by two articulated booms, which gimbal at the sail mast structure. In addition, at the boom tips, the panels may be attached to small movable spars; thus, panel edges can be independently raised or lowered with respect to the boom's plane. By such a method, full sail controllability can be achieved. However, the hardware that enables panel movements should be rather massive. For redundancy, at least two panel pairs have to be equipped as described, thus increasing the sailcraft mass-to-sail area ratio. As a result, the solar pressure thrust decreases, and fast missions would not be allowed.

However, for other mission types, this control technique exhibits two additional advantages: (1) Attitude control is still possible when, in some mission phases, the sunlight is grazing the sail's mean plane; namely, when thrust is almost zero, (2) A priori, the spacecraft is not constrained to be put between the Sun and the sail, unless otherwise required.

### Method 3: Utilizing Small Sails Located at the Boom Ends

In recent years, this method has been investigated considerably with regard to four-panel squared sails, like those experimented on the ground by NASA and ESA. Figure 11.6 visualizes the concept for a squared sail typically assumed for the first missions. One attaches small sails, or vanes, at the end of the booms of the mainsail frame. Each vane is a complex structure quite similar to the sail system. A vane may have either a triangular or rectangular shape. Every vane frame is gimballed to the boom tips in such a way as to have one or two independent rotational movements. Thus, a full control authority of the mainsail could be achieved, even for real sails with construction asymmetries, beam bending and billowing. Each pair of opposite vanes can be given a different task; for example, following Fig. 11.6, the red pair of vanes (the **fore** and **aft** vanes) is more or less aligned with the sailcraft velocity. It can be used for getting and stabilizing a desired value of the angle between the sail's normal (the ideal sail axis) and the sunlight direction. The green pair of vanes (the **starboard** and **port** vanes) can be utilized for maneuvering and performing an active stabilization about the current sunlight direction. By sequencing the two maneuvers in either order, one can get the desired attitude of the sail and stabilize it for a certain time, until a new attitude is required.

This technique of sail attitude control seems difficult to apply to circular sails. The circular "rigidized" beam that keeps the sail open (see Chap. 7) would be too small for a strong joining to complex structures like vanes.



11.6 Solar sail controlled in attitude by small sails located on the boom-tips (Courtesy of NASA, adapted by author Vulpetti)

#### Method 4: Very Small Rockets

This is an obvious and well known technique. Depending on the mission duration and goals, one may employ microchemical engines or microelectric thrusters. On the balance scale pans, one has two main conflicting “weights:” the consumption of propellant and the independence of the sailcraft distance from the Sun. As a point of fact, the previously mentioned methods utilize the solar pressure, which acts on the attitude control surfaces as well. However, in missions to distant planets, a spinning sail is not appropriate for (long) rendezvous maneuvers. Thus, full sail control would be necessary, but this gets complicated because of the weakness of the solar pressure with the increasing Sun-sail distance. On the other side, using micro-rockets as primary devices for attitude control for the whole mission may result in an unfavorable mass, especially for large-sail missions.

#### Method 5: Changing Sail Reflectance

This method may appear doubly strange. Let us first describe qualitatively what the principle it is based on is. If the sail reflective layer is made of two different materials, one that reflects sunlight in a unchangeable way (e.g., once aluminum is chosen as the reflecting

material and vaporized on a plastic support, there is no way to vary its mode of reflecting the light), and another one that can be *controlled* in reflection. Then, if we find a way to drive the amount of the reflected light, then we are able to get thrust and torque without using any of the above methods. This could appear a very difficult task; however, the first oddity is that a small version of such attitude control has been already demonstrated in space by JAXA's IKAROS. Its reflection capability was due essentially to a layer of aluminum vaporized on a special type of polyimide resin patented by JAXA. IKAROS's sail designers placed long strips of reflection-variable material loaded near the rims of the sail membrane; they selected liquid crystal films (LCF), the reflection of which could be varied by applying on/off voltage to the strips. Thus, reflection was changed from the (quasi-) specular to the diffuse mode, or vice versa, resulting in a torque and changing the sail orientation. This experiment can be turned into a conceptual advancement awaiting a confirmation via future sailcraft. This idea was not new.

In his book, J.L. Wright considered (very qualitatively) that "Attitude control is provided by changing the center of mass or the center of pressure of a ship. This can be done through the use of vanes, mass movement, sail movement, sail deflection and possibly reflectivity modulation" [1]. In his 2004 paper, C. McInnes suggested using sails with variable morphology (e.g., in configurations like a solar concentrator or like a large antenna for data returns) [2]. On July 13, 2010, JAXA performed a change of reflection in the IKAROS sail LCF and got an attitude control torque—a very meaningful experiment indeed. Later, in August of 2012, author Vulpetti proved mathematically that there exist *five* types of sailcraft thrust maneuvering. The fifth type allows getting a change of magnitude and/or thrust direction *without* varying the sail orientation in the sailcraft frame [3]. In the 3rd International Symposium on Solar Sailing, A. Borggräfe proposed a sail with continuous reflection variation for getting thrust and torque [4].

The concept of thrust maneuvering for solar-photon sail is therefore more general than sail attitude control via mechanical actuators of conventional and/or advanced type. The above-mentioned experiment on IKAROS appears as a special device opening a new "seam" of very advanced sailcraft. At the time of this writing, in the Astronautical Department of Rome University 'La Sapienza,' some graduate students (who started from the preliminary theory developed by author Vulpetti in his book of 2012) have been researching how thrust vectoring of the fifth type could affect sailcraft trajectories in practice. One of the key points is a very realistic thrust model based on vector theories of diffraction. Results are very encouraging and will be published in 2015 on a technical journal.

## CONCLUSION

The first solar sail missions in the near term, in particular the flights of technology demonstration, may use one of the techniques described above. Subsequently, as experience accumulates and the mission complexity increases in terms of goals, transfer trajectory and operational orbit, a multiple attitude control system may turn out to be the most efficient choice. For instance, methods (1) and (3) would entail an excellent propellantless control, while method (4) (e.g., via pulsed plasma-jet micro-rockets at the sail mast tips) guarantees a backup attitude subsystem independent of the solar pressure. In this case, all

three methods would make up the full attitude control (and stabilization) system. However, method (5) deserves further and accurate investigations, which may open new ways of designing high-performance and impressive sailcraft.

## **REFERENCES**

1. Wright, Jerome L.: *Space Sailing*, Taylor & Francis, 1992, p. 147, 149
2. McInnes, C.: "Delivering fast and capable missions to the outer solar system," *Advances in Space Research*, 2004
3. Vulpetti, Giovanni: *Fast Solar Sailing*, Springer, 2012
4. Borggräfe, A. et al, 3<sup>rd</sup> International Symposium on Solar Sailing, Glasgow, June 2013

# 12

## Building a Sailcraft

### USING TODAY'S TECHNOLOGIES

Despite decades of old theoretical foundation and all the efforts of space researchers, until very recently there were surprisingly few attempts to build and fly large solar sails in space. Germany's Deutschen Zentrum für Luft-und Raumfahrt (DLR) took particular interest in solar sail technology in the 1990s and fabricated one of the first large-scale ground-based engineering model sails. The Russians demonstrated in space a spinning 20-m mirror, called Znamya, from their Progress resupply vehicle after it completed its mission to the Mir space station in 1993. Though technically a mirror, the technologies used were essentially the same that would be required to build a solar sail. The Planetary Society, working with the Russians, developed a sail and would have demonstrated the technology in space had the rocket not failed during a launch attempt in 2005. The Japanese are also developing solar sails. In August 2004, an S-310 suborbital rocket launched from the Uchinoura Space Center in Kagoshima, Japan, and deployed two types of solar sail materials to validate both the materials and their deployment in space. The Japanese sail experiment was a success, though it was not a demonstration of a free-flying solar sail that could be used for deep-space exploration. In 2005, NASA built and tested on the ground two 20 m solar sails, each using very different technical approaches.

Things changed in 2010 with Japan's successful flight of the IKAROS solar sail (see Chap. 15) and NASA's NanoSail-D (see Chap. 16). Suddenly solar sails went from an advanced and unproven technology to a demonstrated technology proven in space and mostly ready for mission infusion. Following these flights, the University of Surrey in the United Kingdom announced that they planned to fly multiple small sails: CubeSail, a cubesat-scale drag sail similar to NanoSail-D that will demonstrate the use of a sail as an orbital brake for orbital debris mitigation applications; and Inflatesail, another cubesat sail mission that will demonstrate the use of a small inflatable boom to separate the solar sail structure from the main body of the cubesat spacecraft. DLR re-entered the solar sail space race with a new and improved version of their mechanical-boom based sail system that they plan to demonstrate, with ever increasing capability, in a series of demonstrations called Gossamer 1, 2 and 3. China, South Korea and other private organizations are following the trend and developing their own sail technology for future (soon) spaceflight.

## **RUSSIA'S SPACE MIRRORS**

Though technically a demonstration of space-based mirror technologies capable of reflecting sunlight from space to illuminate cities after dark, the Russian Znamya experiments were actually the first space demonstrations of solar sails. In 1993, Russia launched a Progress vehicle to send supplies to their Mir space station. After completion of the mission, the Progress undocked from the Mir and took up position some distance away. Russian cosmonauts aboard Mir then commanded the vehicle to begin spinning a canister containing the sail structure. Using the resulting centripetal acceleration, the sail/mirror deployed outward, forming a 20 m diameter thin-film reflector. The mirror/sail was monitored and then jettisoned to burn up in the atmosphere. An unsuccessful follow-up Znamya experiment was launched in 1999. This test failed when an antenna became entangled with the mirror/sail during its unfurlment.

## **GERMANY ADVANCES SAIL TECHNOLOGY IN THE 1990S**

In December 1999, DLR and its partners, the European Space Agency (ESA) and INVENT GmbH, deployed a 20 m by 20 m, three-axis stabilized solar sail in a ground test facility (Fig. 12.1), thus proving their sail fabrication, storage and deployment capabilities. The effort was part of the DLR-led consortium's proposed Orbital Demonstration of an Innovative, Solar Sail-driven Expandable structure Experiment (ODISSEE) mission. Alas, the proposal effort was not successful and ODISSEE was not selected for flight.

The DLR sail booms were made of a carbon fiber reinforced plastic. Each boom consisted of two laminated sheets, which were formed into a tubular shape that could be readily flattened around the central, payload-carrying portion of the spacecraft. During deployment, the booms uncoiled into their tubular shape and served as the mast and point of attachment for the sail material. The sail was made from aluminized Mylar.<sup>1</sup> The sail was pulled from the central structure in much the same way that sailing ships unfurl their sails—with a network of wires and ropes, many of which were driven by an electrical motor.

Today, DLR is modernizing its sail technology and preparing it for flight demonstration. Gossamer-1, their first sail technology demonstration, will be cubesat based and demonstrate deployment of a 5×5 m sail in LEO. It will use a small version of the carbon fiber reinforced booms described above and serve as a proof of concept for the deployment technique. Gossamer-2 will fly next and demonstrate controlled deployment of a 20 m×20 m solar sail, also in LEO. They plan to expand their understanding of sails by adding active attitude control and precise measurement of their thrusting and dynamics during flight. Gossamer-3 will measure 50 m×50 m and be deployed in a high Earth orbit to allow the sail to escape into interplanetary space within 100 days of launch. Following Earth escape, DLR would then fly the sail to the Moon within the next 500 days.

---

<sup>1</sup> Mylar is a low-cost commercial polyester, and easy to handle. However, it could not be a very good choice for advanced sailcraft missions close to the Sun for long time.



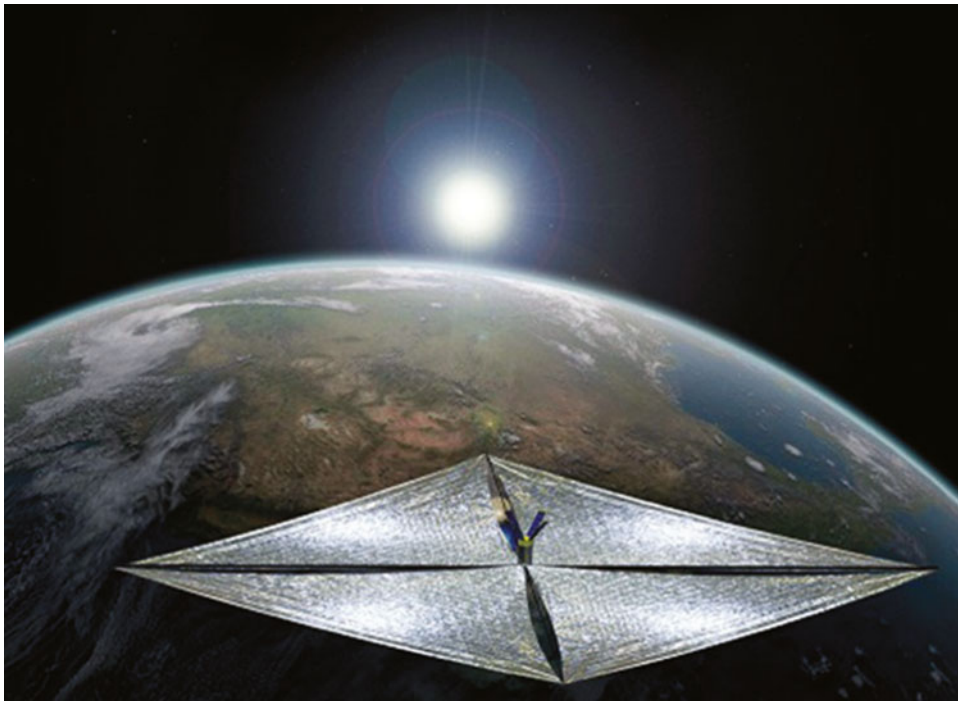


12.1 A photograph of the DLR solar sail ground demonstrator under full deployment (Courtesy of DLR)

## COSMOS AND LIGHTSAIL: THE PLANETARY SOCIETY PUT ITS MONEY ON THE TABLE

If all had gone as planned, the US-based Planetary Society, working with Russia, would have been the first to fly a fully functional, though performance limited, solar sail in space. The project, called Cosmos 1, was financed with the private contributions of space enthusiasts from all over the world. Once in orbit, the sail was to have deployed using inflatable booms and a set of eight triangular blades in the “heliogyro” configuration. Had it been successful, it would have been the first spin-stabilized, free-flying solar sail to fly in space. Unfortunately, the Russian rocket, a converted submarine-launched ballistic missile (SLBM), malfunctioned and did not place the sail spacecraft into orbit.

Undeterred, the Planetary Society raised money from their membership and private investors to develop LightSail, a cubesat-based solar sail demonstration system. LightSail-A is complete and will launch in April 2015 to demonstrate sail deployment and spacecraft functionality. It will be in LEO and is not intended to demonstrate full solar sail propulsion. LightSail-B will launch in April 2016 and demonstrate solar sail attitude control and propulsion. LightSail-A and -B are virtually identical 3U cubesats with sail areas of 32 m<sup>2</sup>. Figure 12.2 is a sketch of what LightSail should look like once deployed in a LEO and controlled in attitude.



12.2 Sketch of The Planetary Society's LightSail (Courtesy of The Planetary Society)

## NASA GETS SERIOUS ABOUT SOLAR SAILS

NASA worked in earnest to develop a credible solar sail technology between 2001 and 2005. During this time period, two different three-axis stabilized, 20 m solar sail systems were developed and successfully tested under thermal vacuum conditions. The two competing sails were designed and developed by ATK Space Systems and L'Garde, Inc., respectively. Both sails consisted of a central structure with four deployable booms that supported the sails. These sail designs are robust enough for deployment in a one-atmosphere, one-gravity environment, and are scalable to much larger solar sails, perhaps as much as 150 m on each side.

L'Garde Inc., of Tustin, California, developed a solar sail system that employs inflatable booms that are flexible at ambient temperatures but “rigidize” at low temperatures. Their concept uses articulated vanes located at the corners of the square to control the solar sail attitude and thrust direction. L'Garde's technology uses the same sail material as the DLR sail—aluminized Mylar (Fig. 12.3).

ATK Space Systems (formerly Able Engineering) of Goleta, California, developed a coilable longeron boom system that deploys in much the same way a screw is rotated to remove it from an object. Attitude control is achieved with sliding ballast masses to offset the center of mass from the center of pressure of the sail. Roll control is achieved using





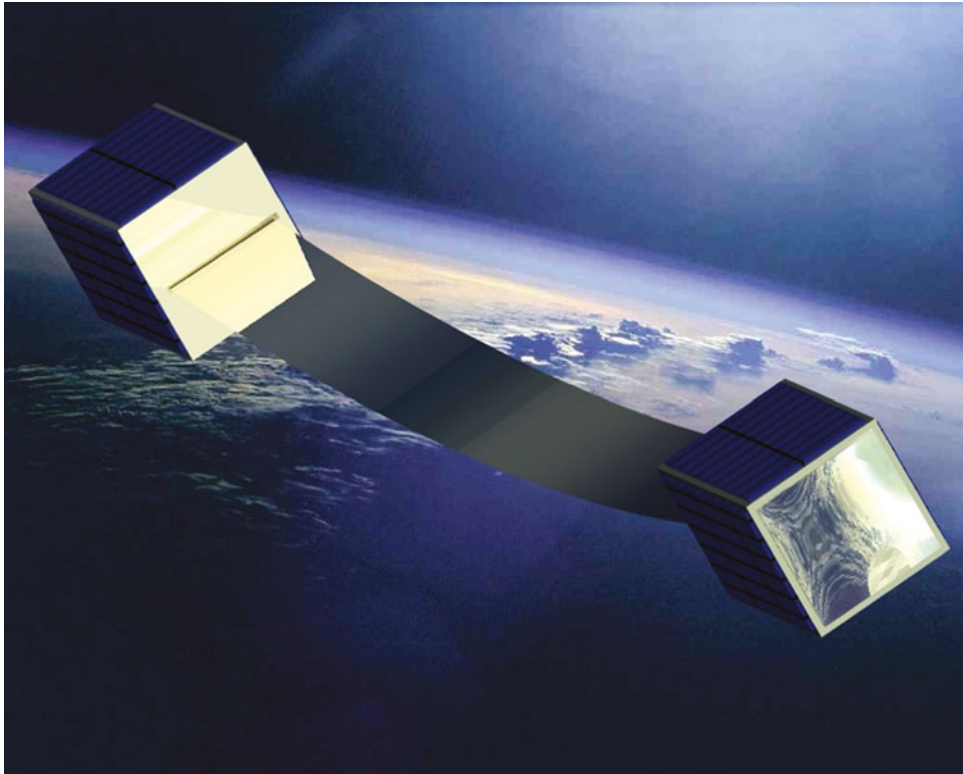
12.3 The L'Garde solar sail before vacuum testing at NASA's Plum Brook facility. The scale of the device can be appreciated by examining the relative size of the people in front of it (Courtesy of NASA)

spreader bars at the tips of the mast, which causes the sail to behave much like a pinwheel. Instead of Mylar, the Able Engineering team used CP-1, a proprietary material provided by SRS Technologies (now, ManTech NeXolve).

Both hardware vendors fabricated and tested 10 m subscale solar sails in the spring of 2004. In 2005 they conducted 20 m subscale solar sail deployments in vacuum at the NASA Glenn Research Center's Plum Brook Station in Sandusky, Ohio.

Building upon their successful deployment tests at Plum Brook, L'Garde, Inc. proposed to fly a larger solar sail (38 m × 38 m) to demonstrate autonomous propulsion and navigation in deep space as part of NASA's Technology Demonstration Program (TDM) in 2011. They were one of the missions selected for flight under this new program and were scheduled to do so in 2015. Unfortunately, citing almost-certain cost overruns and technical difficulties, NASA canceled the project in 2014.

On the small sail front, NASA successfully demonstrated autonomous sail deployment with the 3.5 m × 3.5 m NanoSail-D in 2011. NanoSail-D was not intended to solar sail; rather, it was designed to be a simple space deployment test and drag enhancement device. Deployed from the NASA MSFC FASTSAT satellite, NanoSail-D remained in orbit for 240 days. (Note: NanoSail-D was launched in 2010 but didn't actually deploy until 2011. See Chap. 16 for more information.)



12.4 The CubeSail is being developed by The University of Illinois and CU Aerospace for flight in LEO (Courtesy of NASA)

NASA also worked with The University of Illinois and CU Aerospace in the development of another CubeSail which will use two nearly identical cubesat satellites to deploy a 250 m long, 20 m<sup>2</sup> strip sail (Fig. 12.4). The design can be scaled to build much larger sails once the fundamental technology is demonstrated. CubeSail is not yet scheduled for space flight.

### **JAPAN SAILS IN SPACE**

It is clear that the Japanese are taking solar sail technology seriously and are moving forward with missions to demonstrate its feasibility. Their first space test occurred in 2004 with the launch of a suborbital S-310 rocket that deployed candidate sail materials in a short-duration experiment that by all appearances was quite successful. Another sail test occurred in early 2006 and culminated with the successful flight of the world's first deep space solar sail, Project IKAROS, in 2010. IKAROS, measuring 14 m × 14 m, demonstrated deep space deployment, navigation and photon propulsion as well as power generation using thin film solar cells embedded in the sail. (See Chap. 15 for additional information.)

## THE UK ENTERS THE RACE

The University of Surrey is a late but aggressive entrant into the small solar sail field and plans to fly no less than three solar sails within the next few years. The first, CubeSail, will have a total mass of around 3 kg and will deploy a 5 m × 5 m sail in LEO to demonstrate the functionality of the Surrey sail design and to show that an end-of-life deorbiting of spacecraft using a sail is possible. Their DeorbitSail is another cubesat mission that is focused on the use of deployed sails for satellite end-of-life deorbit. InflateSail will demonstrate deployment and rigidization of inflatable sail booms in orbit. Unlike most of its small satellite cousins, the InflateSail is a 10 m<sup>2</sup> sail supported by an inflatable structure that can potentially be used as a drag brake for deorbiting, as a solar sail propulsion system, as a large reflector/antenna or as a Sun shield.

## CURRENT SOLAR SAIL TECHNOLOGY: WHERE WE STAND TODAY

In the near term, it is evident that we will be limited in our selection of materials and structures for solar sail missions. With the use of composite booms and Mylar sails, the best possible sail areal density is certainly no less than approximately 10 grams per square meter (g/m<sup>2</sup>). This will limit first-generation sails to be less than 150–200 m in diameter and restrict the amount of payload that can be carried. Even with these restrictions, multiple science and exploration missions will be achievable with solar sails that are otherwise currently beyond our technological capabilities. Where do we go from here? Are there new materials that might get us down to an areal density of 1 g/m<sup>2</sup> or less? The answer is a cautious “maybe!”

First of all, based on the results of NASA’s ground tests of both the ATK and L’Garde solar sail designs, analysis indicates that both systems can achieve a loaded<sup>2</sup> areal density of 10 g/m<sup>2</sup> or less. The L’Garde inflatable boom system appears to be scalable to lower areal densities, perhaps as low as 5–7 g/m<sup>2</sup>. If so, then multiple inner solar system missions are now within our reach.

To fly more ambitious missions, such as the interstellar probe, will require solar sails with areal densities as low as 1 g/m<sup>2</sup>. Clearly, this cannot be achieved with any of the materials or sail systems demonstrated so far, and a new approach must be developed. Fortunately, innovative people and companies around the world are already working on the problem and have some interesting and technically sound approaches to its solution.

A solar sail breakthrough occurred in the early 1990s with the development of a carbon fiber sail substrate by Energy Science Laboratories, Inc. of San Diego, California. The substrate, woven into a mesh, consists of a network of carbon fibers cross-linked together. The fibers are very lightweight and ultra-strong, allowing a mesh (which is mostly empty space) to be constructed. The material is rigid, thus obviating the need for as much support structure as is required for current technology sails. It also retains its strength and other properties at high temperatures, a key requirement for solar sail missions that are required to operate very near the Sun.

---

<sup>2</sup> “Loaded” means that the spacecraft and scientific payload are included in the analysis.

CU Aerospace is laying the groundwork for an alternative, ultra-lightweight solar sail system called “UltraSail.” As described in a paper presented at the July 2005 American Institute of Aeronautics and Astronautics Joint Propulsion Conference, the UltraSail system includes

...a central hub where the payload would reside. Attached to this hub would be several “blades” of solar sail film material that would unroll from a storage mandrel with the help of a tip microsatellite that is attached to the end of each blade. The baseline UltraSail design has four blades composed of a micro-thick reflection-coated polyimide film. During the deployment of the blades, the formation flying tip satellites spin up the entire system to create a spin-stabilized, controllable solar sail system with a large sail area [1].

The primary payoff of the UltraSail would be the elimination of the truss structures inherent in most of the sail systems proposed and tested to date. This would significantly reduce the overall areal density, allowing gossamer sails of  $1 \text{ g/m}^2$  to be fielded. As humanity’s space-faring technology and in-space infrastructure mature, we can expect many improvements in sail design and construction. Some of these improvements will be due to enhanced capabilities to deposit thin films in the high-vacuum, microgravity environment. Not to be ignored is the eventual possibility of constructing solar photon sails and associated equipment from materials found on the Moon and near asteroids, reducing the mass required to be launched from Earth. Finally, terrestrial materials technology will certainly improve, resulting in reduced sail areal density, stronger sails and cables, and high temperature-resistant sail materials.

One improvement might occur within a decade or so of the first operational solar photon-sail missions. First generation sails are generally tri-layered. Facing the Sun is a reflective layer, which is affixed to a plastic substrate. Among other things, the plastic substrate provides the structural strength required for the sail to survive the accelerations experienced during launch. On the anti-sunward side is an emissive layer that radiates the small fraction of incident sunlight that is absorbed by rather than reflected from the reflective layer. Some researchers have already conducted experiments with plastics that will evaporate when exposed to solar ultraviolet radiation. If this evaporation can be controlled in a large, thin-film structure, the areal density of Earth-launched sails will be greatly reduced.

Farther in the future, we may not only mine celestial bodies for solar sail raw materials; we may also utilize the dynamic properties of these objects. Consider, for example, the possibility of unfurling a Sun-sensitive plastic film on the “night side” of an asteroid or comet. Then, using the process of vacuum-phase deposition, which allows the deposition atom by atom of nanometer-thin metallic films, a metallic reflective layer is built up on the plastic substrate. Finally, the completed structure is maneuvered into sunlight. The plastic layer evaporates, leaving only a hyperthin sail, which is now ready to roll. Furthermore, even the hyperthin metallic monolayer sail might be superseded. There are mass advantages to the perforated sail, in which perforations are smaller than a wavelength of light, or better, smaller than the shortest wavelength value of the (large) solar bandwidth that the sail’s material can efficiently utilize for propulsion.

Nevertheless, the concepts behind the above potentialities belong, in a certain sense, to past physics and to the ways of using it. One could wonder, what about tomorrow?

Might there be any scientifically imaginable turning point that renders space sailing much more attractive than is now conceivable? In the previous chapters, we have dealt with a few pieces of such topics; in the next two sections, we discuss realistic scientific answers.

## USING EMERGING TECHNOLOGIES

Getting straight to the point, *emerging technology* means *nanotechnology*. What is nanotechnology? In most textbooks and introductory papers, you'll read that it is difficult to define nanotechnology. That's true. However, to explain things in a simple way and with our eyes toward the application of concern in this book, let us start with what is indeed at the base of nanotechnology, namely, *nanoscience*. Strictly speaking, *nano* means one billionth of something; here, the same word means one nanometer, or 1 nm, which is about ten times the size of a hydrogen atom. However, the scientific investigations use a scale roughly from 1 to 100 nm. In the upper part of this range, say, 60–100 nm, classical physics still holds for objects of such sizes, even though single components are driven by quantum physics. As an example, the computer central processing units (CPUs), put on the market in 2006–2007, have been characterized by the 65 nm technology based on photolithography.<sup>3</sup>

In the lower part of the above range, say, 1–30 nm, quantum physics dominates and intriguing phenomena are expected. Perhaps more interesting is the zone below 20 nm. Current advanced multi-core CPUs exploit the 22 nm level transistor technology: what may result with one order of magnitude down?

Nanoscience may be defined as the investigation of the fundamental principles of molecules and atomic/molecular structures with *at least one* dimension in the 1–100 nm range. In general, these structures are called the **nanostuctures**, which are complex systems in which some of the physical laws might surprise further. They can be differentiated in terms of the number of their dimensions; for example, two-dimensional nano-surfaces can have thickness in the 1–100 nm range, whereas nanoparticles are three-dimensional with a radius of some tens of nanometers, at least. **Nanotechnology** is the application of these nanostructures into nano-scale devices, which would be designed for accomplishing *specific* tasks.

The attentive reader may be getting somewhat confused. In the twentieth century, we saw incredible advances in atomic physics, nuclear and particle physics, microbiology, chemistry, science of materials and so on, with plenty of applications, which have been pervading our everyday life. Various levels of nanotechnology have been achieved in very recent years. So what is the difference between the current nanotech and the many branches of the *future* nanotechnology? Well, embedded in the concept of nanotech there is a magic word: **control**. Controlling what? Nanotech aims at manipulating single atoms and molecules; for example, catching a certain molecule (by means of a tiny device), moving it and releasing it at a certain place; also reaching certain molecules in a single larger structure and inducing the desired chemical reactions. In every human activity, examples of nanotech application are so many that they are limited only by our imagination!

---

<sup>3</sup> Lithography is a technique for printing onto a flat surface that was invented by Austrian actor Johann Alois Senefelder in 1798.



When the number of atoms and molecules to be dealt with one at a time is very high, the time necessary to build the desired devices or to accomplish jobs can be so long as to be quite impractical. Then, programmable molecular machines, called **assemblers** by K.E. Drexler [2, 3], shall be used. Assemblers are the nano-scale counterparts of the current industrial robots, and would be the high-end products of nano-robotics. Nanorobots, or nanobots for short, are devices between 0.1 and 10  $\mu\text{m}$  in size, which can have nanoscale interactions with generic tiny objects. One of the main features of an assembler is self-replication. The principle is as follows: if an assembler is able to accomplish any specific (nanoscale) task (even several times), then it should be possible to build an assembler capable of copying it, with exactly the same structure and the same program. There is a dense literature speculating on the pros and cons of the self-replication power.

The technical reader may remain perplexed about the general objectives of nanotechnology, and could point out problems not with some practical feasibility like the industrial investments and costs, but with the conceptual fundamentals. The reader could argue that, since every structure is endowed with a temperature above absolute zero, atoms and molecules would not be controlled as we want because they undergo thermal noise (molecules move, vibrate and rotate). Now it is possible to prove mathematically that the squared error in positioning atoms or molecules is proportional to their temperature (as expected), but inversely proportional to their **stiffness**. In general, the stiffness of an object is the ratio between a force and the deflection caused to it. Thus, because it is not always possible to decrease the temperature of the system hosting the molecules to be moved and positioned, either nanorobots or assemblers have to apply sufficiently intense forces to the target molecules to reduce the positional error to the desired values, even 1 nm or less. The technical reader may object about something deeper: what about quantum effects on the nanoscale processes we want to control? This time the answer is still more important and favorable! Equations governing the positional error are a bit more complicated than the previous case, but there is a key result: the more massive the molecule, the lower the positional uncertainty. For instance, molecules of normal sugar, a relatively simple type of carbohydrate, could be positioned with a precision of 0.01 nm!

Now this is surprising because, for hundreds of millions of years (at least), *biological* molecular machines exist and continue to work very well. This experimental evidence on a planet where life springs up is fundamental in concluding that artificially controlling atoms and molecules—even singly—is possible. In a certain sense, nanoscience and technology are favored with respect to other scientific areas for the mere reason that natural tiny machines can be mimicked efficiently. Of course, we have to learn many things and, above all, use them on behalf of the humankind, not against it.

Nanoscale objects have to be seen in a scientific sense, namely: detected, analyzed and measured. There are many different methods and tools for experimental investigation, which received a big stimulus in recent decades. The main methods can be summarized as microscopy, spectrometry and diffraction. In addition to electron microscopes, particularly efficacious are the atomic force microscope (AFM) and the scanning tunneling microscope (STM). Both instruments can produce high resolution three-dimensional images of single atoms on a surface. Future versions of such microscopes could utilize nano-objects to increase their performance.

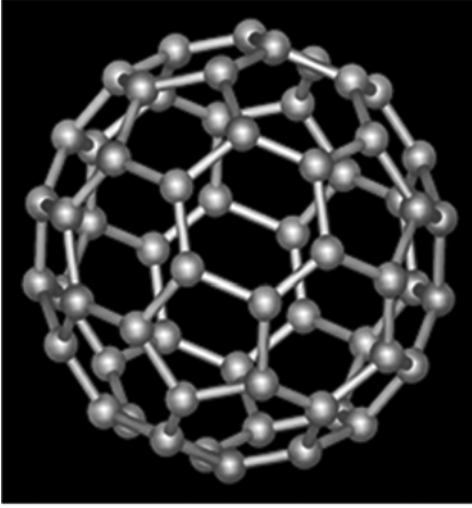
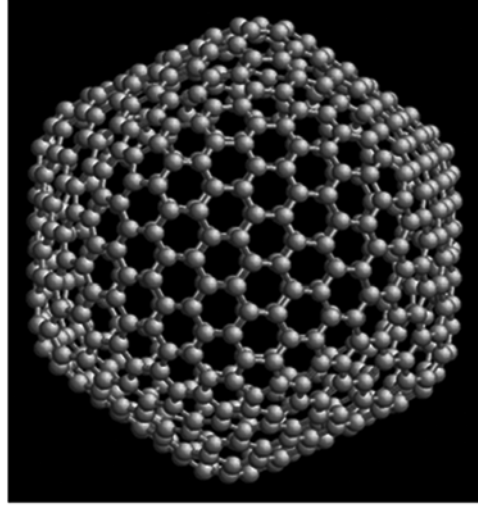
To describe the current areas of scientific and technological investigation, even very generally, is beyond the scope of this book. However, we will mention those that could have a strong impact on solar sailing. Such influence concerns the large sailcraft (obviously) and the so-called nanosailcraft (less obviously). Before inducing any misunderstanding, a nanosailcraft is not a spacecraft with a sail system 1–100 nm in diameter. The reference quantity is the sail area of 1 square kilometer ( $\text{km}^2$ ). Why? A hypothetical (advanced) sailcraft with a sail loading of  $1 \text{ g/m}^2$  and a sail of  $1 \text{ km}^2$  may transport a (high indeed) scientific payload of 300 kg well beyond the solar system with a cruise speed very close to  $0.001 c$  (or 63 AU/year)! We define the nanosailcraft as a sailcraft of total sail loading lower than  $1 \text{ g/m}^2$  and with the sail area in the  $0.001\text{--}0.01 \text{ m}^2$  ( $10\text{--}100 \text{ cm}^2$ ) range. Such a nanocraft may be one of several components of a sailcraft fleet (or a swarm), a concept briefly mentioned in Chap. 7.

For the sail system, what one expects from nanotechnology is essentially a quality leap from using special materials. One would need ultrathin and high-strength (at the same time) sails, possibly mono-layered in order to avoid chemical/physical problems between different layers in the highly variable space environment. Sail and supporting structure materials should be of very low density and resistant to temperatures much higher than that (600 K) of the today-envisaged all-metal (Al-Cr) sail. Because we are not yet happy about all such properties, we also require that such particular materials undergo low degradation in their thermo-optical properties (caused by ultraviolet and extreme ultraviolet photons, and by the particles of the solar wind). As a result, an interplanetary sailcraft may last a long time in space: for instance, think of a large sailcraft working as a highly reliable shuttle between Earth and Mars for many years, or even between the Moon and Mars after an advanced lunar base is built.

What about the capability of getting self-repairing sails? In addition, considering what we said about the sail attitude control methods in Chap. 11, one may wish to control a sail by acting directly on its optical properties! Science fiction, perhaps? No. One of the best potentials for all of that comes from carbon's third allotrope, discovered in 1985, named the **fullerene** or, better yet, the fullerenes, since they represent a set of carbon allotropes. Thus, besides diamond and graphite, carbon exhibits other chemical forms such as the fullerenes. The first discovery of the third Carbon allotrope can be traced back to a team at Rice University (Houston, Texas); namely, Harold W. Kroto, Robert F. Curl, Jr., and Richard E. Smalley. For this discovery in chemistry, all three shared the Nobel Prize in 1996. A number of graduate students at Rice University contributed to the fullerene detection [4, 5]. On the left,

Figure 12.5 shows the computer image of the basic molecule (buckyball) of fullerene, chemically indicated by  $\text{C}_{60}$ , which consists of 60 carbon atoms arranged like a soccer ball. Technically, the solid shape is named the **truncated icosahedron**. It has 32 faces: 20 are regular hexagons and 12 are regular pentagons. At each of the 60 vertices, there is a carbon atom. The diameter of such a quasi-sphere is of the order of few nanometers.

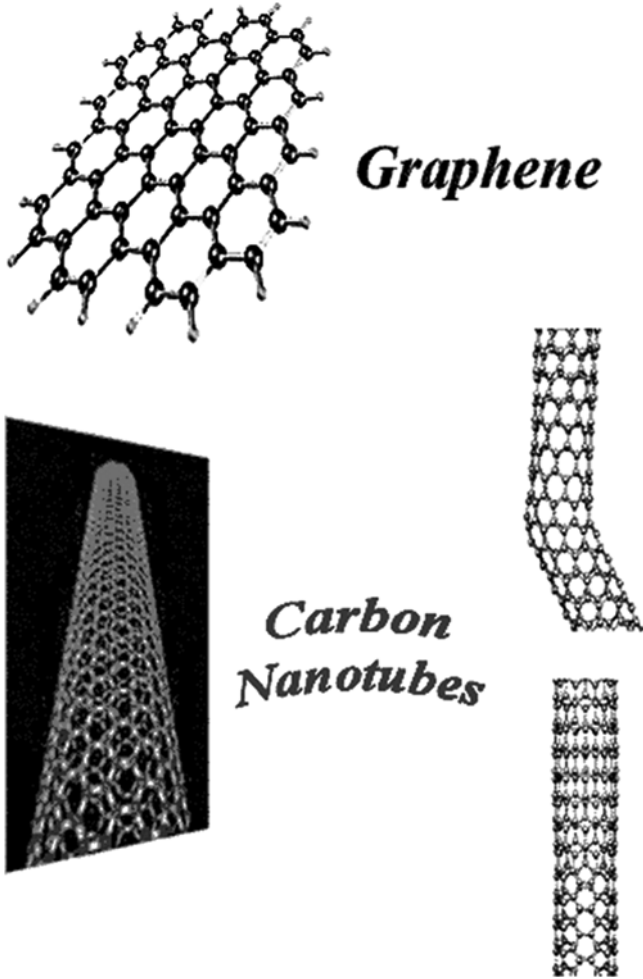
Buckyball could be considered a quantum dot of zero dimensions, in practice. As said above, there are several fullerene types; for instance, the right of Fig. 12.5 shows the structure of a 540-atom molecule. Although such molecules have striking properties, things do not end here. The top of Fig. 12.6 shows a carbon layer 1 atom thick.

Buckminsterfullerene ( $C_{60}$ )Fullerene  $C_{540}$ 

## 12.5 Molecules of fullerene

These are the sheets which graphite is composed of; such a flat structure is called the **graphene**. There are several variants of graphene, but graphene is *not* an allotrope of carbon. Instead, conceptually speaking, a graphene sheet may be rolled, one or more times, resulting in carbon **nanotubes** (or CNTs, sketched at the bottom of Fig. 12.6). The actual methods of nanotube production are quite different from graphene rolling. Depending on their lattice structure, three main types of nanotubes arise: **armchair** (metallic nanotubes), **zigzag**, and **chiral** (semiconducting nanotubes). Nanotubes may be arbitrarily long (though currently limited by laboratory and industrial devices), but their diameter can be slightly more than 1 nm. As Fig. 12.5 shows, they are quite empty internally; as a result, one hypothetical nanotube from Earth to the Moon would weight about 0.3 mg! Why have nanotubes been increasing in importance since 1991, when NEC's researcher Sumio Iijima manipulated some of them by demonstrating their nature? [6, 7] (Previously, other researchers showed images of tiny tubes, but nothing more, in practice.) In addition to incredible values of the many classical mechanical (outperforming the best steel), electric and thermal parameters, they exhibit quite unusual properties. For instance, electrons can travel along a carbon nanotube with energy-independent speed; namely, they behave like pure propagating waves, which are *massless* objects! From the electric transport viewpoint, the maximum current density flowing in a carbon nanotube takes on 10 million ampere/mm<sup>2</sup>, namely, about 600 times niobium tin's, one of the best low-temperature superconducting alloys. It should be possible to build nanotubes based on boron and nitrogen, namely, BNTs. Like CNTs, BNTs can be produced in the single or multi-wall mode. In contrast to carbon nanotubes, a BN nanotube could be extremely insulating, and would pave the way for vast applications in terrestrial and space applications.





12.6 Carbon's flat sheet (graphene) and nanotubes

In recent years (practically since 2004), researchers have been intensely scrutinizing graphene from both physics and engineering application viewpoints [8–12]. For instance, the so-called graphene papers can be made by assembling—layer-by-layer—nanosheets of graphene or graphene oxide. Some graphene papers exhibit mechanical properties well higher than carbon steel! In Further Reading, we cite two very recent books for the technical reader.

Going back to our solar sails, it is clear that nanotechnology-derived materials could supersede any concept of very thin all-metal or perforated sails (which nowadays would be highly desirable). It's a simple task to compute a (somewhat conservative) value of the areal density for a nanotube-based sail:  $0.02 \text{ g/m}^2$ , or  $\sim 5,000$  times better than the first solar sail mission (see Part IV). Achieving such a target would allow the sail designer to

relax the optical properties of the sail. In other words, the sail could be low in reflectance and full of wrinkles, but the sailcraft would exhibit thrust accelerations much higher than that of the solar gravitational acceleration. So far, there is no sailcraft fast trajectory analyzed seriously for such levels of acceleration. Of course, nanotechnology materials and phenomena have to allow the designers to decrease in the same way the masses of the other main systems that the sailcraft is made up. Even attitude control-, power and communication-, and environment–sailcraft interaction could reveal new results, completely beyond our current vision in designing both sailcraft and mission. Stay tuned!

The field of nanomaterials extends across the full range of traditional material classes, including ceramics, metals and polymers. No previous materials technology has shown concurrent developments in both research and industry as do the areas of nanomaterials related to mechanical, electric, magnetic and optical components, quantum computing, biotechnology and so on. There are very strong concerns about the capability of some molecules or particles to self-assemble at the nanoscale because they give rise to new substances with unusual properties. For such reasons has **nanometrology** been recently introduced, namely, the ability to perform precise measurements at the nanoscale, an essential requirement for the correct and reliable development of nanotechnology in all its fields.

## USING ULTIMATE TECHNOLOGIES

In science, the word “ultimate” is always risky to use, especially if one is trying long-term forecasting. It’s very easy to wind up in science fiction. Therefore, here **ultimate** refers to post-nanotechnological science and technology, if any.

We noted above how atoms could be positioned with significant subnanometer precision. Were such capability achieved, one may talk of picotechnology, where, formally speaking, **pico** stands for 0.001 nm, or 1 picometer (pm). By analogy, one may define picotechnology in the same way as nanotechnology, but in the range of 1–100 pm {the classical size of Hatoms is just about 100 pm = 0.1 nm = 1 Ångstrom (Å, after the Swedish physicist Anders Jonas Ångström), the unit preferred by atomic physicists}. Thus, today, the term **picotechnology** refers to handling structures at the picoscale level, substantially with regard to high precision positioning.

The next step would be femto-technology. Femtometer (fm) refers to one millionth of a billionth of a meter, also called the **fermi** in honor of the Italian physicist Enrico Fermi. The radii of atomic nuclei are expressed in femtometers. For instance, the radius of the carbon nucleus is approximately 2.75 fm, or about 0.00004 the related atomic “mean radius.” Thus, femtoscience is the current nuclear physics. In contrast, the claimed femto-technology might manipulate nuclei in a different way from what is already done in the laboratory by means of nuclear reactions. However, at the femtoscale, the so-called *strong* interaction (really hugely strong) dominates even in temporal terms. The characteristic times are many orders of magnitude lower than those achievable by the best atomic clock. The reader may think about femto-technology as an ingredient for a purely science-fiction book, including conjectured femto-weapons.

Nevertheless, there is an excellent exception that tomorrow’s femto-technology may focus on: the *large-scale* production and storage of antimatter as the most energetic synthetic fuel. However, as explained in previous chapters, this is quite out of the capabilities of this century, unless real breakthroughs in physics occur.

As a consequence of the above considerations, currently there are no serious expectations coming from such technologies for advanced solar sailing.

## FURTHER READING

Much of the historical material in this chapter has been reviewed or referenced in G.L. Matloff, *Deep-Space Probes*, 2nd ed., Springer-Praxis, Chichester, UK, (2005). A preliminary theory for the metallic perforated solar sail is also presented in that reference.

<http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Nanotechnology>.

<http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/Nanotechnology>.

<http://www.nanotechnologyfordummies.com/>.

<http://www.nano.gov/>.

<http://www.nano.org.uk/whatis.htm>.

<http://eoeml-web.gtri.gatech.edu/jready/main.shtml>.

Nanotechnology, A Gentle Introduction to the Next Big Idea, 2002.pdf.

<http://www.nsti.org/courses/> (for college students).

## REFERENCES

1. R. L. Burton, et al., *UltraSail - Ultra-Lightweight Solar Sail Concept*, AIAA 4117, 41<sup>st</sup> AIAA/ASME/SAE/ASEE Joint Propulsion Conference & Exhibit, 10-13 July 2005, Tucson, Arizona.
2. K. Eric Drexler, *Engines of Creation: The Coming Era of Nanotechnology*, Anchor Library of Science, 1990, ISBN 0-385-19973-2
3. K. Eric Drexler, *Nanosystems: Molecular Machinery, Manufacturing and Computation*, Wiley Publishing Inc., 1992
4. H. W. Kroto, J. R. Heath, S. C. O'Brien, R. F. Curl & R. E. Smalley, C<sub>60</sub>: *Buckminsterfullerene*, *Nature* **318**, 162-163 (14 November 1985), doi: [10.1038/318162a0](https://doi.org/10.1038/318162a0)
5. H. Kroto, Symmetry, Space, Stars and C<sub>60</sub>, *Rev. Mod. Phys.* **69** (1997), 703-722
6. S. Iijima, Helical microtubules of graphitic carbon, *Nature*, **354** (1991), 56-58
7. S. Iijima and T. Ichihashi, Single-shell carbon nanotubes of 1nm diameter, *Nature*, **363** (1993), 603-605
8. *Springer Handbook of Nanotechnology*, Springer-Verlag, Berlin, Heidelberg, New York, 2004.
9. *The Handbook of Nanotechnology (Business, Policy and Intellectual Property Law)*, John Wiley & Sons, New York, 2005.
10. S. Saito and A. Zetti (Eds.), *Carbon Nanotubes: Quantum Cylinders of Graphene*, Elsevier, first ed. 2008
11. H.-S. Philip Wong and Deji Akinwande, *Carbon Nanotubes and Graphene Device Physics*, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge (UK), 2011
12. J. H. Warner, F. Schaffel, A. Bachmatiuk, M. H. Rummeli, *Graphene – Fundamentals and emergent applications* – Elsevier, first ed. 2013

# 13

## Progress to Date

At this point in its development, the solar sail can be characterized as fairly late in its theoretical phase and fairly early in its developmental phase. It is probably equivalent to the chemical rocket in 1930, the automobile in 1900, and the heavier-than-air aircraft in 1910.

Already, though, enough work has been performed for us to have some understanding of the basic possible configurations that might be considered for various sail applications. Also, the work of the last decade or so has indicated the potential roles of space agencies, private foundations and space societies, and private individuals in the historical and further implementation of space photon sailing.

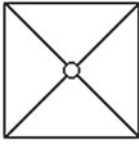
### PIONEERING DESIGNS

Figure 13.1 presents some suggested riggings, or configurations, for space sailcraft. These might be considered as celestial equivalents of terrestrial wind-sail riggings such as sloops and yawls.

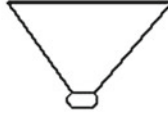
Starting from the top left of Fig. 13.1 and moving clockwise, we first encounter the square-rigged sail configuration. Here, solar-photon radiation pressure pushes against four sail segments supported by diagonal spars. The payload is mounted at the center, on either the sunward or anti-sunward sail face. It is not necessary to construct the spars and supporting structure from solid material—inflatable spars may be considered for many applications. Although square-rigged sails may be more difficult to deploy because they don't utilize centrifugal acceleration to push an unfurling sail from the center of the structure outward, the lack of spin may result in less dynamic problems such as vibrations and oscillations.

Next we come to the parachute sail, which carries its cable-supported payload on the sunward side of the sail structure. This is a more complex rigging to deploy and may therefore be utilized in space-manufactured rather than Earth-launched solar photon sails. Equipped with high-tensile strength, low-density cables, parachute-type sails may be capable of higher accelerations than other arrangements.

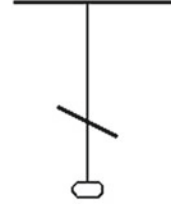
The parabolic sail, or solar-photon thruster (SPT), is a two-sail variation on the parachute rigging. Here, a large sail or collector is always positioned normal to the Sun (or other photon source). The collector has a parabolic curvature (not shown in the figure) so



Square sail  
Diagonal booms  
Payload in center



Parachute sail  
Payload supported  
by cables



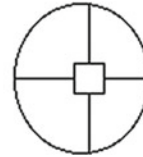
Parabolic sail  
Solar Concentrator  
above thruster,  
payload below



Heliogyro  
Payload in center



Hoop-supported sail  
Distributed payload  
hangs from hoop



Spinning disc sail  
Payload in center

13.1 Various photon solar-sail configurations

that it can focus light on the smaller, movable thruster sail. A larger component of radiation-pressure–derived force can be tangent to the spacecraft’s motion, allowing for this configuration’s possible application in Earth-orbit raising. The SPT also has the potential to operate at a larger angle from the sunlight than other configurations. These advantages must be balanced against the added rigging mass and complexity.

Next is the spinning-disk sail. This rigging utilizes centrifugal acceleration as an aid in unfurling sail. The payload is mounted near the sail center.

A variation on the spinning-disk sail is the hoop sail. Here, the radial (possibly inflatable) struts are replaced by a hoop structure concentric to and containing the sail film. In this soap-bubble–like arrangement, the payload must be evenly distributed around the hoop structure, perhaps suspended from it.

The heliogyro sail rigging is inspired by the blades of a helicopter. After launch from Earth, the central core is slowly spun up and the blades are allowed to unfurl by centrifugal acceleration. Although sail deployment is relatively easy in this case, the blades must be long because of the comparatively small sail-film area-fill ratio. (There is simply not much of a sail for light to reflect from.) Payloads would likely be mounted near or at the sail’s geometric center.

A final configuration is not shown in Fig. 13.1. This is the hollow-body or inflatable sail. Here, a reflective film is mounted on the Sun-facing side of a balloon-like inflatable structure that is inflated in space using a low-density fill gas. The payload is near the center on the anti-Sunward-side of this “pillow.” Although easy to deploy and mathematically model, hollow-body sails are more massive and more prone to micro-meteorite damage than other riggings.

Further investigative studies and operational applications will surely produce variations on the seven solar-photon-sail rigging arrangements considered here. But these seven will likely remain the basic approaches for the foreseeable future.

Although ultimate space-manufactured sail films may be very low mass monolayers, perhaps containing perforations smaller than a wavelength of light to further reduce mass, current candidate Earth-launched sail films are tri-layered. An aluminum layer about 100 nm in thickness faces the Sun and reflects 79–93 % of the incident sunlight (mainly depending on the surface roughness). Next comes a low-mass plastic substrate perhaps a few microns thick. On the anti-sunward side of this substrate is affixed an emissive layer (often chromium) that radiates the small fraction of sunlight absorbed by the aluminized face to the space environment.

In early sails, the plastic substrate is generally selected to be heat and vacuum tolerant and immune to the effects of solar ultraviolet (UV) irradiation. But there is a very innovative, mass-reducing suggestion to use instead a plastic substrate that sublimates rapidly when exposed to solar ultraviolet. Shortly after sail unfurlment, the plastic substrate would disappear leaving only a reflective-emissive bi-layer of very low mass.

This sublimation process, if controlled and unidirectional, could even add to sail thrust during the early phase of its journey. Called “desorption,” this high-velocity sublimation of sail material is a subject of current research.

Because solar-photon sails (SPSs) are large-area devices that must accelerate for long periods of time in the space environment, a method of micrometeoroid protection has been developed. Similar to “ripstops” in terrestrial wind sails, a network of thin cables could be placed in the sail film. If a micrometeoroid impact were to destroy one small segment of sail defined by intersecting cables, other sail segments would still function.

Most early sail applications will involve low accelerations—probably in the vicinity of 0.0001–0.001 Earth surface gravities. But a 1996 computer finite-element-model study by Brice Cassenti and associates demonstrated that properly configured parachute, parabolic, and hollow-body sails are stable under accelerations as high as 2.5 Earth surface gravities.

Much work has been accomplished in sail design and much still remains to be done. But as the next sections indicate, government space agencies and private organizations have done much to remove this concept from the realm of science fiction and achieve progress toward the day when this innovative mode of in-space transportation will become operational and, hopefully, of choice clearer than the performance-limited rocket-based missions.

## THE ROLE OF SPACE AGENCIES

Much photon-sail research and development has been accomplished by national and transnational space agencies such as NASA and ESA. To better understand these contributions, it's a good idea to review the environment in which the space agencies operate.

The advantage of the space agencies over small-scale entrepreneurs is essentially one of scale. Since space agencies are governmental entities, they have the ability to plan long-term research and development efforts supported by tax revenues.

For example, much has been written in recent months about the success of privately funded suborbital space flights at a fraction of the cost of similar government-funded efforts. While these comparisons make a certain amount of sense, they entirely ignore the cost of the decades-long government-sponsored space infrastructure. Space Ship 1 would not have so readily won the X-Prize for repeated flights to heights in excess of 100 km if Burt Rutan and associates had had to construct the Edwards Air Force Base and repeat the materials research leading to the technology used in their vehicle.

At least in democratic nations, however, this very advantage of space agencies to work with high annual operating budgets may work against rational space development. The space agencies must answer to the politicians, and the politicians must in turn justify expenditures to the electorate.

To get reelected, politicians must curry favor with the electorate. Sometimes high-profile stunts in space and huge projects economically supporting lots of workers with little practical output are favored over sounder approaches. The high-profile stunt results in favorable publicity and headlines; the “pork-barrel” project garners votes. To succeed, a rational space-development program must work with the politically inspired funding cycles.

With the exception of a few experimental efforts, all publicly funded space efforts utilize technologies mostly developed decades in the past. To allow new in-space propulsion technologies such as the SPS to mature to their flight application, NASA developed a step-by-step procedure called technological readiness, which works as follows: when a new space propulsion idea emerges from a theory and its basic physical principles are validated, it is assigned a technological readiness level (TRL) of 1. An example of an in-space propulsion concept now at TRL 1 is the proton-fusing interstellar ramjet. It may always remain at this level since its physics is well validated but its technology may never be defined. In some cases, such as the matter–antimatter rocket, the technological requirements can be defined, even if not achieved. Such propulsion concepts are at TRL 2.

As an in-space-propulsion concept matures, its TRL increases. Analytical or experimental proof-of-concept investigations are performed, followed by laboratory (breadboard) validation studies. Component and breadboard tests are then performed in a simulated space environment—a vacuum chamber—to achieve a TRL of 5. The next step is to successfully test a prototype of the in-space propulsion system under study in the simulated space environment. To achieve a TRL of 7, a prototype of the propulsion system must be successfully tested in space. The completed system is then qualified through demonstrations on Earth or in space. The highest level of TRL is 9, in which the propulsion system is operationally used in space missions. Examples of such “off-the-shelf” TRL-9 propulsion systems include chemical rockets, solar-electric rockets, and gravity assists.

It might be argued that the TRL system is boring and bureaucratic—just the thing that a space agency might dream up to justify its own existence. But the beauty of the approach lies in its small, clearly documented incremental steps. A space-program manager can use TRL to compensate for the politically determined, highly variable nature of space-propulsion funding. Well-documented research can advance an in-space propulsion concept one or two TRLs during any funding cycle and then be used to efficiently pick up the research effort when large-scale funding resumes. In this way, it is not necessary to endlessly reinvent the wheel.

The ESA is used to applying the technology readiness procedure to new astronomical concepts through 9 levels as well.

World space agencies have done a great deal to advance the cause of the SPS. In the late 1970s and early 1980s, NASA's Jet Propulsion Laboratory in Pasadena, California, analyzed the utility of the sail to perform a (canceled) 1986 rendezvous with Halley's Comet and propel a (canceled) extra-solar probe called TAU (thousand astronomical units). These paper studies led to the first tests of sail-like structures in space. In February 1993, a 20-m diameter thin-film reflector called Znamya was unfurled from a Progress supply craft docked to Russia's Mir space station. Znamya, designed to test the feasibility of reflecting sunlight to regions of the Russian arctic, was a modified heliogyro using centrifugal acceleration to unfurl.

In this general scenario, the NASA Interstellar Probe (ISP) mission concept deserves special attention for its high-degree of efforts in setting up many profiles of flight. Starting in the 1990s, NASA/MSFC and JPL (which is a division of Caltech, Pasadena—California) studied a large sailcraft capable of delivering 30–40 kg of scientific payload to 200 AU, passing through the three large “boundaries” of the solar system, namely, the termination shock, the heliopause, and the bow shock. A possible extension of the mission to 400 AU was also investigated. JPL's preliminary studies showed that—by means of sailcraft with sail loading of  $2 \text{ g/m}^2$ —it should be possible to flyby the Sun counterclockwise at 0.25 AU, and achieving 200 AU in about 15 years. In the JPL flight profile, sail was jettisoned at 5 AU from the Sun. In 2001, NASA/MSFC investigated further, and carried out mission profiles with sailcraft down to  $1 \text{ g/m}^2$ . They resulted in the possibility of flying by the Sun clockwise at 0.2 AU with subsequent cruise speed of about 23.5 AU/year. This would allow the sailcraft to reach 200 AU in 9 years. The mission extension to 400 AU would last about 18 instead of 30 years. An important option of this investigation was to not-jettison the sail, which might act as a very big sensor and partially as a large antenna too. MSFC and JPL mission profiles would offer *two* launch opportunities per year, *every* year! The three authors of this book participated, serving different roles, in the NASA/MSFC ISP trajectory studies.

Mission support for ISP declined for a time due to no progress being made in the preferred propulsion methods: either solar sails or nuclear electric propulsion. Both technology development projects were canceled in the mid-2000s for various reasons (NEP due to cost; solar sails due to the money being needed for the return to the Moon program). Support for ISP is now again high due to IKAROS (see below and Chap. 14). The new NASA Heliophysics Decadal Survey, mentioned in Chap. 14, could also support the Interstellar Probe.

In May 1997, an American space shuttle deployed a 14-m-diameter inflatable antenna that tested the design of low-mass radiofrequency antennas and reflectors. Some of the concepts explored in this partially successful experiment are of relevance to inflatable, hollow-body solar sails.

The first test deployment of a true sail design in space came in the summer of 2004 when two small test sails were successfully unfurled from a suborbital Japanese sounding rocket. True to their country of origin, the sails were opened using the principles of origami, the Japanese art of paper folding! Capitalizing on this success, the Japanese space agency conducted an orbital solar-sail test in February 2006, when a test sail flew as a

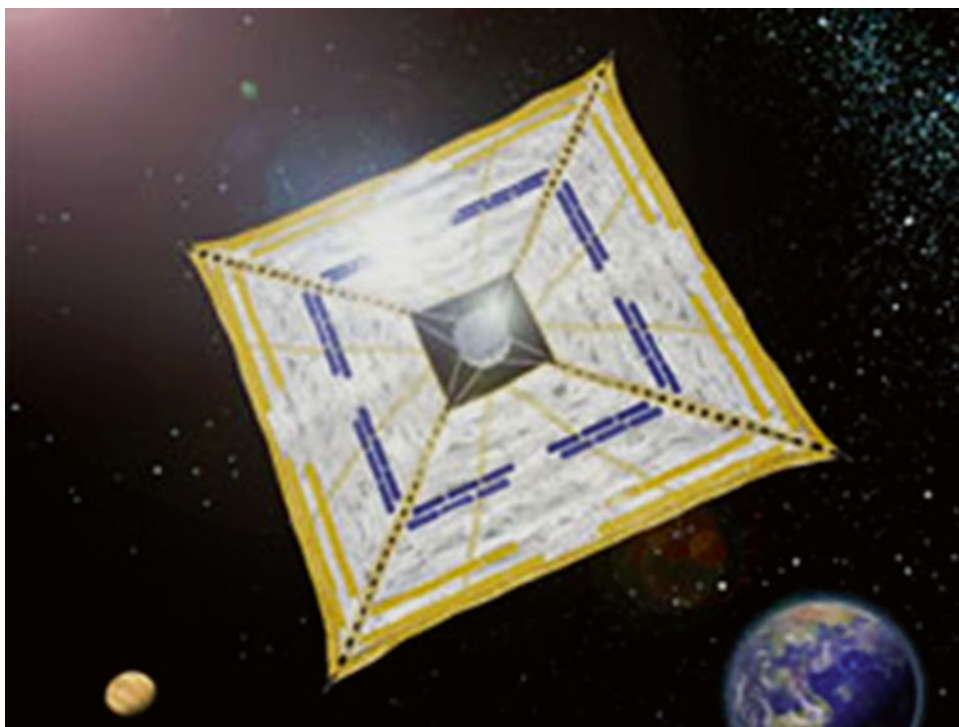


secondary payload aboard a rocket carrying the ASTRO-F (Akari) astronomical satellite. The sail unfurlment was a partial success.

Full success for the Japanese Space Agency (JAXA) occurred during 2010. On May 21 of that year, an H2A rocket was successfully launched from the Tanegashima Space Center. The primary payload was the Venus Climate Orbiter (also dubbed Akatsuki or Planet-C).

Akatsuki cannot be considered a complete success because its retrorocket failed to fire during its approach to Venus and it remains in orbit around the Sun instead of circling Venus. The secondary payload of the mission, dubbed IKAROS (Interplanetary Kite-craft Accelerated by Radiation Of the Sun) has done much better, from both a technological and an engineering point of view. IKAROS, the first solar sail to be deployed in interplanetary space, was successfully unfurled on June 9, 2010. IKAROS is a square sail, measuring about 14 m on the side and 20 m on the diagonal. The base sail material is polyimide and the sail consists of four trapezoidal petals.

The initial mass of IKAROS was 307 kg; the sail mass is 16 kg and the minimum sail thickness is 7.5  $\mu\text{m}$ . During the sail deployment process, the maximum spin rate was about 25 revolutions per minute (rpm). This has since been reduced to about 1 rpm. The sail deployment process was monitored by several tiny camera that were released from the main craft (Fig. 13.2).



13.2 Artist concept showing the IKAROS unfurled (Courtesy of JAXA)

As well as demonstrating that a solar sail can be deployed in deep space, this successful mission also demonstrated that small, thin-film (25- $\mu\text{m}$ ) solar cells attached to the sail can produce electricity in space. As well as confirming the theory of thrust by solar radiation pressure, IKAROS demonstrated guidance and navigation of solar sail spacecraft.

One especially innovative on-board system demonstrated reflectance control of spinning solar sails. A series of on-off variable reflectance strips are attached to the sail. These multi-layered thin sheets are equipped with electrically controlled timers. If it is desired to *alter* the sail spin axis direction, then the reflectance of one side of the IKAROS sail is set to maximum (specular reflection), whereas the other side is set to the minimum (diffuse reflection). If no change is requested, then the opposite strips are kept at the same reflectance by the on-off timers.

During its first 6 months of operation, the accumulated solar-radiation pressure speed change on IKAROS was reported to be in excess of 100 m/s. On December 8, 2010, IKAROS passed Venus at a distance of 80,800 km.

Instruments aboard this sailcraft have also provided useful scientific data. As reported in 2012, a gamma-ray-burst polarimeter has observed two gamma-ray bursts at cosmological distances. The data supports a synchrotron emission model for this phenomenon.

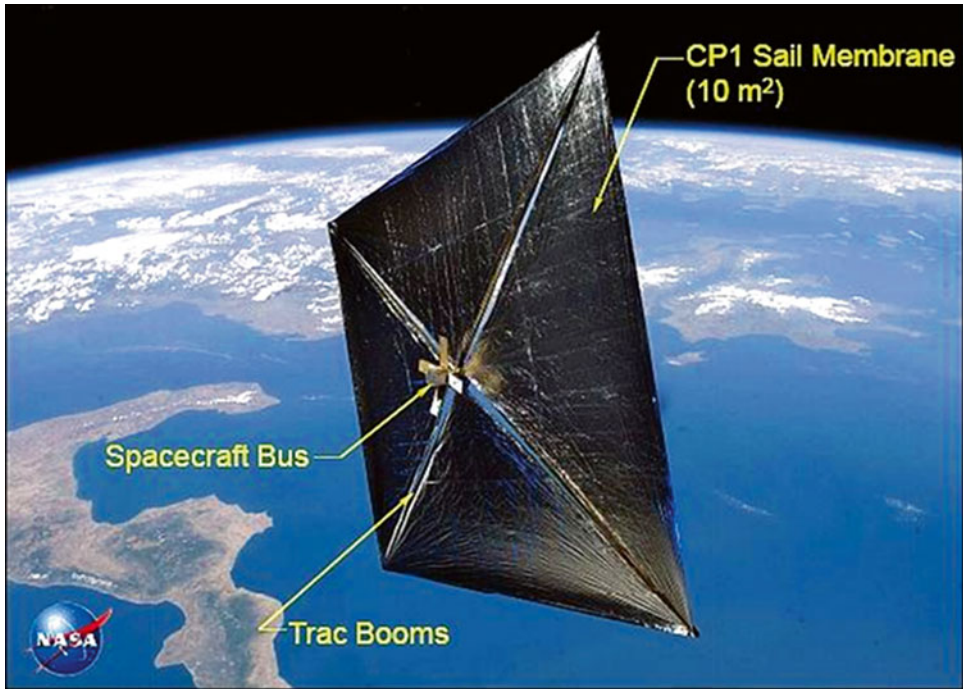
Engineers at the NASA Marshall Space Flight Center in Huntsville, Alabama, raised the solar sail's TRL using a series of unfurlment tests of subscale sails in terrestrial vacuum chambers. During 2005, a 20-m test sail was tested by NASA engineers in a terrestrial vacuum chamber (see 12.3 in Chap. 12). The pace of solar-sail development is quickening with the successful flight in Earth orbit of the NanoSail-D and with NASA's selection of L'Garde, Inc. to further mature the 20-m solar sail they developed in the mid-2000s and get it ready to fly in space later in the decade. (As of this writing, the fate of the L'Garde solar sail effort is uncertain.) Moreover, new players among government-sponsored space agencies can be expected to join the game. At present, we can safely conclude that the SPS has reached a TRL of 7 (JAXA) or 6 (NASA) and that operational applications are not many years in the future.

During 2010, NASA's successful launch and deployment of Nanosail-D2 did a lot to advance the TRL of sailcraft. Although NASA did not earn bragging rights by beating JAXA's IKAROS into space, NanoSail demonstrated sail unfoldment and operation in low Earth orbit (Fig. 13.3).

Nanosail-D2, which was launched on November 19, 2010, was the back-up craft to NanoSail-D, which failed to reach orbit due to a booster malfunction on August 8, 2008. It was initially believed that NanoSail-D2 was also a failure, since its deployment timer initially malfunctioned for some unknown reason.

Finally, on January 20, 2011, the 10-m<sup>2</sup> sail deployed perfectly. This sailcraft of mass of 4 kg was initially placed in a 623–654 km orbit and circled the Earth until its atmospheric reentry on September 17, 2011.

NanoSail was a “cubesat,” unfurling in about 5 s from its 30×10×10 cm container. The purpose of this craft was to demonstrate the utility of solar sails to function as parachute-like drag sails to hasten the reentry of expended rocket stages and obsolete payloads in low Earth orbit. In collaboration with Spaceweather.com, NASA conducted a contest for amateur astronomers attempting to photograph Nanosail in space.



13.3 Artist's rendition of Nanosail-D2 in orbit (Courtesy NASA)

Unlike the nuclear rocket, the SPS can be configured to any size. We might launch a micro-sail more properly called a solar kite that is not much larger than a living room rug with a payload of 1 or 2 kg. Our wealthier neighbor might at the same time be scaling the technology to propel an interplanetary ship with a sail diameter of 1–10 km or even a larger interstellar craft.

With such a flexible in-space propulsion system, there is plenty of room for the small-scale inventor to make contributions, whether privately or governmentally funded. The next section considers the role of private initiatives in bringing the SPS to its current stage of flight readiness.

## PRIVATE INITIATIVES

The early development of chemical rocketry was dominated by private inventors, such as Robert H. Goddard in the US, and national rocket societies in many countries. Private organizations and individuals continue to contribute to solar-sail progress.

A private individual or non-governmental organization has certain advantages and disadvantages when compared to government-sponsored space agencies. Since such groups or individuals are not beholden to taxpayers and politicians, they can tackle more visionary projects with a longer time to implementation or payoff. To implement these projects, however, private organizations must often engage in fund raising.

One contribution of private organizations has been raising public awareness of photon-sailing technology. Since 1982, three private groups—the Union pour la Promotion de la Propulsion Photonique (U3P) in France, the Solar Sail Union of Japan, and the World Space Foundation (WSF) in the US—have collaborated to publicize the concept of a solar-sail race to the Moon.

Private organizations have also planned very nontraditional solar-sail propelled space missions. One American company (Team Encounter) has raised funds to launch human-hair samples on extrasolar trajectories, advertising that perhaps ethically advanced extraterrestrials intercepting the craft might feel compelled to clone the long-deceased human “crew” from the DNA in their hair samples. Very wealthy individuals might contribute to such a mission as a very-long-duration insurance policy!

But one of the greatest advances to photon-sail technology has resulted from the very serious work of the largest nongovernmental space organization of them all, the Planetary Society in Pasadena, California. Funded by member contributions and large donors including Ann Druyan (who is Carl Sagan’s widow), the Planetary Society developed Cosmos 1, the first flight-ready spacecraft in which the photon sail would be the prime method of propulsion. To conserve funds, both the suborbital and orbital Cosmos 1 launches were conducted using a Russian booster of marginal reliability. Unfortunately, the reliability of this booster must now be classified as less than marginal since both launches failed and the sails plunged to Earth before they could be unfurled. The Planetary Society’s directors hope to make additional attempts with more reliable boosters. They are now developing LightSail, a cubesat derived solar sail, which, if it does make it to space, will use the pressure of sunlight to alter the craft’s orbit. There are two LightSail spacecraft. LightSail-A, scheduled for launch in 2015, will be a systems test of the technology but it will not be flying in a high enough orbit to overcome atmospheric drag. LightSail-B, when and if it flies, will be a demonstration of controlled solar sail flight. Also proposed is an experiment to beam microwaves to the orbiting craft using a radio telescope in order to demonstrate collimated-energy-beam sailing. It would be nice if both solar and energy-beam sailing concepts can be validated on the same mission!

Temporary, small-scale organizations composed of visionary scientists and engineers have also contributed to the advancement of SPS technology and public awareness of this concept. During the 1990s, a group of researchers (including authors Vulpetti and Matloff) from several countries, met regularly in Italy to discuss the possibility of exploring nearby extrasolar space using sail-launched probes. It may be historically interesting to report how this team originated and worked. During the International Astronautical Congress, held in Graz, Austria, in October 1993, a group of seven solar-sail enthusiasts met to organize an in-depth study of solar sailing. After a lot of discussions, continued via mail for a couple of months, it was decided to set up a self-supporting study group. That meant that the group members would work during their free and creative time; nevertheless, some members would ask their companies to utilize some of the companies’ facilities. Some companies said yes, and the group began working. The team chose the name Aurora Collaboration. (According to the ancient Greek mythology, Aurora was the younger, fair sister of Helios, the Sun god. Helios’s elder sister Selene, the goddess of the Moon, was discarded for her paleness!) The active members of Aurora were author Gregory Matloff (NY University), Giancarlo Genta and his coworker Eugenio Brusa (Polytechnic

University of Turin, Italy), Salvatore Scaglione (ENEA, Rome-Italy), Gabriele Mocci (Telespazio SpA, Rome, Italy), Marco Bernasconi (Oerlikon-Contraves, Zurich-Switzerland), Salvatore Santoli (International Nanobiological Testbed, Italian Branch, Rome, Italy), Claudio Maccone (Alenia-Spazio, Turin, Italy), and author Giovanni Vulpetti (Telespazio SpA, Rome, Italy). Vulpetti was appointed as the team coordinator. Aurora committed to the following objectives: (1) considering SPS propulsion for realistic extra-solar exploration; (2) investigating mission classes and related technological implications for significantly reducing the flight time, from departure to the target(s); (3) analyzing flight profiles; and (4) sizing sailcraft's main systems for a technology demonstration mission to be proposed to the space agencies. Aurora worked from January 1994 to December 2000. Some innovations have been developed and submitted to the attention of the space communities, including NASA and ESA. For instance, the NASA Interstellar Probe (ISP) concept (for which author Johnson served as the propulsion system manager) is an evolutionary development of Aurora. In turn, the subsequent mission concept of the interstellar heliopause probe by ESA/ESTEC, is similar to a smaller-scale version of NASA ISP.

The main results of Aurora, in chronological order, are as follows:

1. The fast solar sailing theory (in either classical or full relativistic dynamics) and the related large computer code for optimizing unconventional trajectory classes
2. The bi-layer (Al-Cr) sail concept and the related preliminary experiments at ENEA for detaching plastic support in space, to have a clean all-metal sail
3. The concept of unfurling and keeping a circular sail via a small-diameter inflatable tube attached around the sail circumference; after sail deployment, the tube becomes rigid in the space environment and retains its shape without gas pressure
4. Sizing the onboard telecom system for communications from some hundreds of AU
5. The determination of the full behavior of aluminum's optical properties starting from experimental data
6. Optimization of trajectories to heliopause, near interstellar medium, and the solar gravitational lens

Aurora published 15 scientific papers, gave three presentations to European and Italian space authorities, and held a one-day workshop at Rome University. Sometimes it is not necessary to resort to newspaper, radio or television advertising to foster genuine scientific advances. Serious, unheralded, and systematic work with pure vision and scientific objectives are still the basic ingredients for stimulating the appropriate institutions to transform good ideas into reality.

## **FURTHER READING**

Two excellent sources considering in greater depth the material covered in this chapter are Jerome L. Wright *Space Sailing*, Gordon and Breach, 1992, and Colin McInnes *Solar Sailing*, Springer-Praxis, Chichester, UK, 1999. More information on various sail configurations can be found in the appendix of Gregory L. Matloff *Deep-Space Probes*, 2nd ed., Springer-Praxis, Chichester, UK, 2005.

- An excellent review of the JAXA IKAROS sail mission is T. Tsuda, O. Mori, R. Funase, H. Sawada, T. Yamamoto, T. Saiki, T. Endo, K. Yonekura, H. Hoshino, and J. Kamaguchi, "Achievement of IKAROS-Japanese Deep Space Solar Sail Demonstration Mission," *Acta Astronautica*, **82**, 183-188 (2013). An earlier version of this manuscript is in *Proceedings of the Seventh IAA Symposium on Realistic Near-Term Advanced Scientific Space Missions—Missions to the Outer Solar System and Beyond*, ed. G. Genta, Aosta, Italy, 11-13 July, 2011.
- For a description of IKAROS gamma-ray burst observations, see D. Yonetoku, T. Murakami, S. Gunji, T. Mihara, K. Toma, T. Morihara, T. Takahashi, Y. Wakashima, H. Yonemochi, T. Sakashita, N. Toukairin, H. Fujimoto, and Y. Kodama, "Gamma-Ray Burst Jets Probed by Gamma-Ray Polarization," *Astrophysical Journal Letters*, **758**, No. 1, L1 (2012).
- Nanosail has been described in several sources. One useful paper is L. Johnson, M. Whorton, A. Heaton, R. Pinson, G. Laue, and C. Adams. "Nanosail-D: A Solar Sail Demonstration Mission," *Acta Astronautica*, **68**, 571-575 (2011). An earlier version of this manuscript is in *Proceedings of the Sixth IAA Symposium on Realistic Near-Term Advanced Scientific Space Missions—Missions to the Outer Solar System and Beyond*, ed. G. Genta and G. Vulpetti, Aosta, Italy, 6-9 July, 2009
- For additional information regarding Nanosail, consult the project's website [http://www.nasa.gov/mission\\_pages/smallsats/nanosaild.html](http://www.nasa.gov/mission_pages/smallsats/nanosaild.html)

# 14

## Future Plans

We have lingered for too long on the shores of the cosmic ocean; it's time to set sail for the stars.

—Carl Sagan, Cosmos television series, 1980

In this book, scenarios of forthcoming plans are spread in the various chapters, where the context is enriched by informing the reader of what is planned. Nevertheless, a chapter devoted to the potential evolution regarding solar-photon sailing - through remarkable missions - appears appropriate at this point of the book.

### THE NEXT 25 YEARS

While our technology will not yet let us “set sail for the stars,” it will let us take the first steps—and these steps are being taken all over the world. The flight of Japan's IKAROS and NASA's *NanoSail-D* showed the world what could be done within limited budgets and using dedicated and visionary teams. As of this writing, it appears that the tide has turned and the use of solar sails for science and exploration may finally be taking off.

#### United States

NASA's *Sunjammer* is a 1,200 m<sup>2</sup> solar sail that was to demonstrate solar sail propulsion and navigation in deep space [1]. Named after a short story by the science fiction writer Arthur C. Clarke, the *Sunjammer* was to be launched in 2015–2016 timeframe and boosted to a Geostationary Transfer Orbit (GTO) as a secondary payload on its launch vehicle. Once released by the rocket, the spacecraft was to use an onboard chemical propulsion system to escape Earth's orbit. The sail would have then deployed and the demonstration begun. Unfortunately, the flight hardware approach being developed by L'Garde was more complicated than expected, taking longer than anticipated to mature to flight readiness, giving the project an uncertain future. The company is actively seeking other funding sources to allow its completion and flight.

Fortunately, two other sail-based missions are moving forward toward flight in 2017: *Near Earth Asteroid (NEA) Scout* and *Lunar Flashlight*.



Being developed by NASA MSFC and JPL, *NEA Scout* will be launched as a secondary payload on the first test flight of the Space Launch System (SLS). Its goal is to develop and demonstrate a capability for performing reconnaissance of NEA's identified as potential human exploration targets by NASA. NEA observations will be achieved using a camera-equipped, 6U cubesat performing a close (~10 km) NEA flyby. The 85 m<sup>2</sup> NEA Scout solar sail was sized based upon not only the physical factors imposed by being stowed within approximately 2U of a 6U cubesat, but also the desired mission parameters. Size roughly equates with performance and therefore with trip time, an increase of the sail size would shorten travel time and a decrease would lengthen it—depending upon the orbital characteristics of the target NEA, which also vary with time. After assessing the likely NEA targets and estimating the spacecraft component lifetime limits, an approximate two and a half year maximum mission duration was selected, which in turn set the overall sail performance goals and size. The *NEA Scout* solar sail will be based on the technology developed and flown by the NASA *NanoSail-D*. The sail system will be comprised of four 7-m booms and 3 μm thick CPI [2].

NASA JPL and MSFC are also developing another cubesat-based mission called *Lunar Flashlight* [3]. *Lunar Flashlight* will also be launched as a secondary payload on the first test flight of the SLS. It will use its propulsive solar sail, identical to the one being developed for *NEA Scout*, to enter a low lunar orbit. Once there, it will then use the solar sail as a mirror to reflect sunlight into the nearly permanently shaded regions of the lunar south pole. An onboard camera will analyze the reflected light to look for the chemical signatures of water.

In the USA, for a technology to be widely used, it must first be successfully demonstrated in space and there must be a commercial, science or exploration customer calling for the capability it provides. *NEA Scout* and *Lunar Flashlight* will provide the requisite demonstrations; the release of NASA's Heliophysics Decadal Survey in 2012 provides the customer. It is important to understand that for NASA to fund a science mission, it almost always has to have been identified as a scientific priority in a Decadal Survey [4] such as this. Selected quotes from the Survey are provided below:

A growing literature has documented the need to provide a long-term strategy for monitoring in space and has elucidated the large number of space weather effects, the forecasting of which depends critically on the availability of suitable data streams. An example is the provision of measurements of particles and fields at the L1 Lagrange point (or, using technologies such as solar sails, closer to the Sun on the Sun-Earth line), which is critical for short-term forecasting of such harmful effects of space weather as damage to Earth-orbiting satellites, reduction of GPS accuracy, and potentially deleterious geomagnetically induced currents on the power grid.

10.2.1 Prioritized Imperatives for NASA—. To develop solar-sail propulsion for future Heliophysics Division missions...

The ESA-led Solar Orbiter will furnish brief, pioneering observations at moderate inclinations relative to the ecliptic plane during the 2020s. The science return from this mission will be greatly enhanced if NASA supports both additional telemetry coverage and US investigations with non-US instruments. White papers offered other paths to obtain in-ecliptic stereohelioseismic observations, for example, L5 and Safari. Sustained observation of the polar regions requires a high-inclination solar orbit. Such



orbits are not easily reached, but a successful investment in this decade in solar-sail technology will enable effective long-term use of high-inclination orbits in the 2020s to probe portions of the solar interior that are important for the solar cycle.

Solar-sail propulsion is proposed to place SPI into its orbit. Recent advances demonstrate that solar sails are technically feasible and effective for maneuvering in the heliosphere... . . . The SHP panel strongly encourages NASA to develop the propulsion technology needed to launch SPI during the 2023–2033 decade.

(In the above quotes, SPI stands for *Solar Polar Imager*, a solar-sail-based mission concept for observing the solar poles from an orbit of radius  $\sim 0.5$  AU and highly inclined with respect to the solar equator. SHP refers to the authors of the report, the Solar and Heliophysics Panel.)

Once *NEA Scout* and *Lunar Flashlight* have successfully flown, NASA will be much more likely to select one or more of the more ambitious missions identified by the Decadal Survey and described in Chap. 13.

### Japan

The Japanese were moving forward in solar-sail development, building upon their successful subsystem space tests in 2004 and again in 2006. In May 2010, JAXA made a breakthrough in solar sailing by launching IKAROS, a full heliocentric sailcraft with plenty of experiments related to solar-sail propulsion, electronics, and energetics. With this successful flight, JAXA is looking forward to the implementation of solar sail propulsion on a flight to survey Jupiter Trojan asteroids. Jupiter's Trojan asteroids reside in one of planet's two Lagrange points either  $60^\circ$  ahead of or behind the planet in its orbit. The mission, called the *Jovian Magnetospheric Orbiter* (JMO), will use a hybrid propulsion system consisting of a  $3,000 \text{ m}^2$  solar sail and solar electric thrusters. If approved, the JMO mission will fly in the year 2020.

### Russia

The Russian space mirror program is in hiatus and with it the efforts to fly solar sails—with one notable exception. Providing both funds and technical know-how, the Planetary Society went to Russia to build the *Cosmos 1* solar sail. Using this expertise, combined with the successful *Znamya* mission, the Russians have demonstrated that they know how to fabricate a solar sail for space. When, if ever, will they fly one themselves?

### Europe

The ESA, fostered mainly by industries and field professionals from Germany, France, United Kingdom, and Italy, have had a number of plans for solar sailing. In May 2006, ESA launched an invitation to tender proposals for phase A of the Geosail mission, which is described in Chap. 9. The ESA would allot 150 million euros (about \$190 million) for its development. Geosail should be not only a technology demonstration mission, but also a mission of very high scientific concern seeking knowledge of Earth's magnetosphere and new phenomena in magnetized plasmas. The Geosail operational orbit would be an elliptical

orbit  $11 \times 23$  Earth radii (namely, well beyond the geostationary circular orbit, the radius of which is 6.61 Earth radii), completely controlled by solar sail for 3–5 years. Geosail is a full mission with a number of technological and scientific unknowns, and this renders it still more intriguing. Almost all the technologies that are proven in space by this mission will likely be considered for any subsequent missions.

As a point of fact, there were two other main solar-sailing studies at ESA: (1) the *Solar Polar Orbiter* (SPO), and (2) the *Interstellar Heliopause Probe* (IHP). Conceptually speaking, such missions are very challenging. SPO would utilize a solar sail to lessen its initial orbit to less than 0.5 AU before raising its inclination. Then, changing the sail orientation, the latitudes of the solar poles can be achieved. The sail will be jettisoned after the operational circular orbit about the Sun is achieved. Such a mission is one of several examples of “missions impossible” for rockets (See Chap. 3). The IHP is similar to NASA’s *Interstellar Probe* (ISP) with 200 AU to be reached within 25 years of launch. However, at present, the IHP sail is not envisaged to be as lightweight as its American counterpart. As a consequence, ESA-IHP would be required to fly by the Sun two or more times to get the energy needed to achieve the desired flight time; in any case, the cruise speed is significantly lower than that of the NASA *Interstellar Probe*.

Government-sponsored solar-sail mission plans in Europe are progressing, but European universities have been thinking on their own. Like the USA, solar sail work in Europe is delineated between large ( $>100 \text{ m}^2$ ) and small ( $<100 \text{ m}^2$ , and  $\ll 100 \text{ m}^2$ ) systems, with the expertise for each resident in different institutions.

Germany plans to mature large sail systems incrementally, first by building a cubesat class sail and culminating with one several tens of meters on a side capable of implementing many of the missions described in Chap. 9. Their three-part sail development program is called the Gossamer Spacecraft Initiative (GSI). *Gossamer 1* is a  $5 \text{ m} \times 5 \text{ m}$  orbital sail deployment test flown from a cubesat. *Gossamer 2* is a  $20 \text{ m} \times 20 \text{ m}$  sail system and finally, *Gossamer 3* will fly in deep space with an area of  $\sim 2,500 \text{ m}^2$ . *Gossamer-1* uses composite booms wound onto a spool and deployed by a drive motor. The sail material is  $7.5 \text{ }\mu\text{m}$  Kapton. *Goassmer-3* is expected to deliver a characteristic acceleration of greater than  $0.1 \text{ mm s}^{-2}$ .

The University of Surrey in the UK is the hub of Europe’s small sail technology development. Surrey has three sail systems that will fly before the end of 2016. *CubeSail* is a  $30 \text{ cm} \times 10 \text{ cm} \times 10 \text{ cm}$  spacecraft fitted with a  $5 \text{ m} \times 5 \text{ m}$  sail designed for flight in LEO. *Cubesail* will demonstrate solar sailing and end-of-life deorbit using the sail membrane as a drag-sail. Flying in a  $\sim 700 \text{ km}$  sun-synchronous orbit, the *Cubesail* will alter its orbital plane with solar photon pressure and then maximize the sail’s interaction with the tenuous atmosphere at these altitudes by orienting itself in a maximum drag configuration (pointing). Surrey’s *Deorbisail* is similar in scope to their *Cubesail*, but is designed to optimize deorbit applications rather than actual solar sailing. Also designed to fly on a cubesat, the *Deorbisail* could be used to dramatically reduce the orbital lifetime of satellites in orbits up to 1,000 km altitude, helping to mitigate the growing orbital debris problem. The third cubesat sail from Surrey is *Inflatesail*. *Inflatesail* will use inflatable boom technology to separate the sail system from the rest of the spacecraft. The  $10 \text{ m}^2$  Inflatesail is supported by the same rigid booms used by *CubeSail* and *Deorbisail*.

In Italy, due to the lack of money sufficient for designing a whole sailcraft, the Dept. of Astronautical Engineering of University of Rome ‘La Sapienza’ has been focusing on three key items for future high-performance SPS designs. The *first* goal is to model accurately the thrust stemming from the interaction of solar photons with the real surface

of a sail, a complicated task indeed, which will become always more important as the sailcraft's lightness number increases in ambitious missions (for an introduction see Part-V). The *second* goal is to investigate on new methods of thrust maneuvering, which does *not* entail necessarily some change of the sail attitude. The *third* goal is to study new materials for sail by resorting to both nanoscience and nanotechnology.

In addition, like the Aurora collaboration described in Chap. 13, there is a recent private collaboration named MIRA, which means to issue *creative* ideas (and some related areas of research) for the far-in-the-future exploration of the high-rank triple star system closest to our Sun, namely, the system known as Alpha Centauri. Such exploration envisions using so-called “Shepherd Probes,” which should be released at destination by a thermonuclear-based starship (today under consideration in UK and USA).

### Why Does It Take So Long To Fly A New Propulsion System?

Why did it take 5–9 years for ion propulsion to move from space validation to mission use? There are many reasons; most of them make good logical sense and most will apply to solar sails. For advocates of new technologies, they feed a sense of growing frustration.

#### *Reason 1: Timescale*

A typical robotic space mission requires 3–4 years of development, from selection to flight, and more years after that for analysis of the data. Given that these missions are relatively expensive, costing many millions of dollars each, not many are selected and flown. And not many scientists want to risk 10 years of their career on an unproven space propulsion technology. Since ion propulsion technology was not “proven” until it flew successfully in space, no one proposed its use until after completion of the mission. Even if the next mission were announced on the day Deep Space 1 (DS-1) launched (which did not happen), it would have been a minimum of 3 years before that next mission would have been ready to fly. In fact, it was unlikely that the next mission would be proposed until after the DS-1 mission was complete and the data regarding the propulsion system was published, adding another 2 years to the wait. The same “fly it and see” attitude will likely be present for solar sail propulsion as well.

First proposed by Dr. Robert Goddard in the early 1900s, the idea of propelling a spacecraft with electrically charged atoms, called ions, instead of chemical rocket exhaust, became a reality as the primary propulsion system for a deep-space spacecraft with the flight of the Deep Space 1 mission in 1998. Using electrical energy generated onboard the spacecraft to power its ion drive, the DS-1 spacecraft demonstrated the use of a gridded-ion propulsion system for the first time. Noted for its very high efficiency, more efficient than a chemical rocket by at least 10:1, ion propulsion is ideally suited for the exploration of deep space. Incapable of lofting a spacecraft into space from the surface of Earth due to its very low thrust, ion propulsion is hard to beat for some (rocket-based) missions in the outer solar system due to its high exhaust speed and resultant ability to deliver twice as much payload at a destination when compared to its chemical propulsion counterpart.

With these significant mission benefits known, it nonetheless took about 50 years for this technology to go from the laboratory to flight. Members of the Werner von Braun rocket team at the Marshall Space Flight Center in Huntsville, Alabama, conducted early ion propulsion experiments in the 1960s. With that center's emphasis on sending humans to the moon as part of the Apollo Project, the work on electric propulsion was sent to NASA's Lewis Research Center (now the Glenn Research Center) in Cleveland, Ohio. Scientists and engineers at Glenn worked diligently on the technology until it was flown on the first mission of the New Millennium Program, DS-1, in 1998. Following its successful flight, expectant engineers anticipated mission after mission to baseline the technology and for a new age of efficient, deep space exploration to begin. Instead, no NASA mission selected the technology for flight until 2001. *Dawn*, a mission to visit the asteroids Vesta and Ceres would not be possible if it were not for this highly efficient ion propulsion system. Dawn was launched in 2007—nine years after the DS-1 mission first demonstrated ion propulsion as a viable in-space propulsion system. As of this writing (2014), NASA has not yet selected another mission using electric propulsion.

Not waiting for NASA, the Japanese launched the Hayabusa mission in 2003. The gridded-ion propulsion system onboard Hayabusa allowed it to land on the surface asteroid Itokawa (Fig. 14.1), and return a small sample from it back to the earth in 2010. The ion propulsion system on Hayabusa performed well. This mission flew 5 years after the completion of the DS-1 mission.

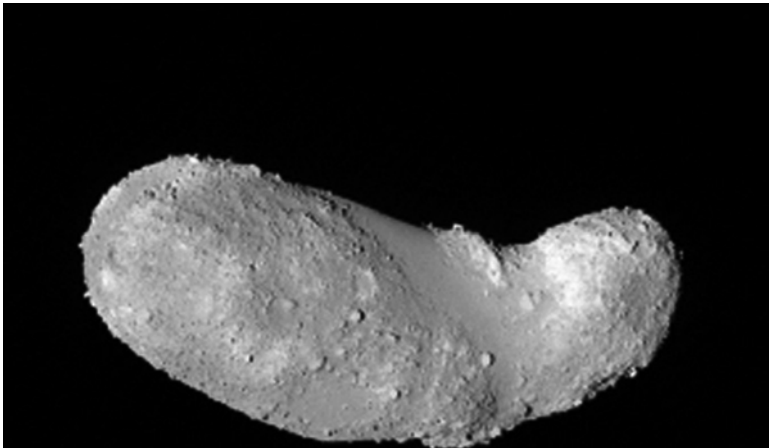


Fig. 14.1 Asteroid Itokawa, reached by the Japanese ion-powered probe Hayabusa in September 2005. The probe was launched in May 2003. The Hayabusa returned successfully to Earth in June 2010 (Courtesy of JAXA)

*Reason 2: Science*

Within NASA and other governmental space agencies, the mission selection process is not based on “cool technology.” Robotic missions are selected for the most part on the basis of the science they propose to return. A mission to use a new technology, be it ion propulsion or solar sails, will have to compete for funding with missions that use neither and whose science will be at least as compelling as that using the new technology. It might be years before another mission with the “right” science and using the new technology is selected for flight. Such was the case within NASA and the selection of the *Dawn* mission.

*Reason 3: Risk*

The number of deep space missions flown with ion propulsion at the time Dawn was competing for funding stood at exactly one. Chemical propulsion has been used on hundreds of missions, many of which went beyond Earth orbit. Chemical propulsion systems are simply better understood and their risks are better known than those related to solar electric propulsion systems. How can we know if the DS-1 succeeded because of a good design and engineering versus simple luck? With only one data point, we cannot know. For this reason, a new propulsion system with limited (even successful) flight history will be considered higher risk than others when vying for flight status. In an evaluation process, such a mission will have to overcome the problem of being considered “higher risk” even if it promotes more compelling science.

The above three reasons should not be taken systematically as the primary criteria of choice; otherwise, if one relies always on the past achievements, no progress would be possible in any area of the human activity.

**THE NEXT 50 YEARS**

Making the most optimistic assumptions, now that solar sails have successfully flown in space and it looks like follow-on science and exploration missions will fly within 6 years of the first, we could see three to five more solar sails to fly before the first quarter of the century passes. These first sails will be built from today’s technologies and perform precursor missions, either geocentric or near-Sun.

In the years to follow, we will see the introduction of the next generation of solar sails, which will be bigger, lighter, and more capable than those of the first generation. It is in this time frame that we might see a mission to the edge of the solar system such as the proposed *Interstellar Probe*. (The NASA *Interstellar Probe* mission concept is described in Chap. 13.) It seems to be unlikely that more ambitious missions to the solar gravitational lens or to the Oort cloud will occur until beyond even this time frame.

At the end of the next half-century, we may see the advent of space settlements and the ability to fabricate large, gossamer structures using the resources provided in space—from materials mined on the moon or asteroids. If so, then sails that perform much better than those made in Earth’s gravity field might be fabricated, allowing more payload or faster trip times to multiple destinations in the solar system and beyond.

As emphasized in Chap. 12, the classical vision of solar sailing might be enlarged or superseded, in some cases, by different concepts like the nanosailcraft swarm. Fifty years are sufficient to surprise us!

## **THE NEXT 100 YEARS**

Foreseeing things over so long a time is always very difficult, not only because extraneous factors may come into play, but also since a new understanding of physics could revolutionize many human activities, including spaceflight.

Considering the current physics, as our ability to manufacture ever-larger and lighter sails develops, we will see their use crossover from purely robotic missions to those that support the expanding human presence in the solar system. Sunlight-propelled cargo ships, a stream of them carrying cargo between Earth and Mars, might crowd the space between us and our settlements on the red planet.

Thrown into the mix will be an asteroid or comet, slowly diverted from its orbital path by a solar sail to either avert global catastrophe or provide raw materials to our burgeoning interplanetary civilization.

We might even see the construction of a massive laser or microwave power beaming station with the goal of using the beamed energy to send a small probe deep into interstellar space or, perhaps, to a nearby star.

## **REFERENCES**

1. L. Johnson, et al, *Solar Sails: Technology and Demonstration Status*, International Journal of Aeronautical and Space Science, 13(4), 421-427 (2012).
2. L. McNutt, et al, Near-Earth Asteroid Scout, AIAA Space 2014 Conference, San Diego, CA, 2014.
3. B. A. Cohen, et al, *Lunar Flashlight: Mapping Lunar Surface Volatiles Using a Cubesat*, Annual Meeting of the Lunar Exploration Analysis Group (2013).
4. *National Research Council. Solar and Space Physics: A Science for a Technological Society. Washington, DC: The National Academies Press, 2013.*

**Part IV**  
**Breakthroughs in Space**

# 15

## The JAXA IKAROS Mission as a Technological Breakthrough

What exactly constitutes a technological breakthrough? A breakthrough is an event that opens unexpected doors and expands horizons. Since JAXA's IKAROS is the first solar-photon sail deployed in interplanetary space and has demonstrated the sail's utility in both primary spacecraft propulsion and attitude control, it certainly constitutes a technological breakthrough. Moreover, it is certainly deserving of a chapter in this book! To capture some of the drama of this milestone mission, we consider various mission phases in chronological order. We remind the reader that IKAROS stands for *Interplanetary Kite-craft Accelerated by Radiation Of the Sun*.

### LAUNCH FROM EARTH

It was the 17th outing for the Japanese HII-A (or H2A) booster. Author Matloff saw with great pleasure that it was possible to follow all steps of the launch and orbital insertion process on-line. On May 21, 2010, at 6:58 (Japan Standard Time), H2A/F17 (i.e. flight number 17)—carrying AKATSUKI (PLANET-C, i.e. the Venus Climate Orbiter of Japan) as the primary payload, and IKAROS as the secondary payload—lifted off from the Tanegashima Space Center (see Fig. 15.1).

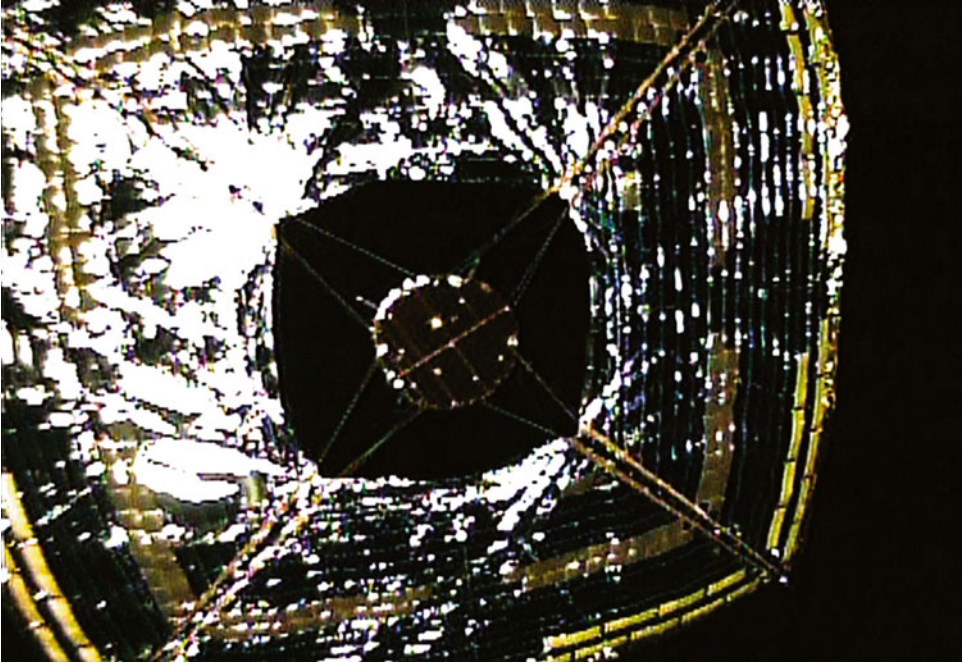
On the launch pad, this highly reliable two-stage rocket is 53 m tall with a diameter of 4 m. The core first stage uses liquid propellant—hydrogen and oxygen—like Ariane and the now-retired US space shuttle. As is true for the shuttle, the H2A launcher is equipped with solid-rocket strap-on boosters. The second stage can be shut down and restarted, allowing a payload of about 4,000 kg to be inserted on a transfer trajectory to geosynchronous orbit and a slightly smaller payload to be launched on an Earth-escape trajectory. The total mass of IKAROS is 307 kg.

Shortly after achieving Earth-escape on May 21, 2010, IKAROS and the other payloads of HII-A number 17 separated from the spent rocket. After a few days of checkout on its trans-Venus trajectory, it was time to unfurl the sail. On June 2, the spin-up process began. From its initial rotation rate of about 5 revolutions per minute, IKAROS angular motion was accelerated to about 25 revolutions per minute. According to plan, centrifugal





15.1 Launch of IKAROS on May 21, 2010 (Courtesy of JAXA)



15.2 IKAROS full deployment image, from a released camera (Courtesy JAXA)

acceleration simplified the sail-deployment process (because IKAROS is a spin-stabilized vehicle). By around June 10, when the sail was fully deployed, IKAROS was slowed to about 2.5 revolutions per minute.

A very simple and appropriate-technology approach was used to monitor the health of IKAROS during the sail-unfurling process. A series of tiny cameras were released from the payload near the center of the square sail. As these drifted off, they returned images of various deployment stages to the main spacecraft using a simple modification of cell-phone technology (see Fig. 15.2). After beaming these images to Earth, IKAROS controllers were able to release a stop-motion animation movie of the sail's deployment. These photos were supplemented by images received from a suite of cameras permanently mounted on the spacecraft.

When power generation from the thin-film, flexible solar cells that covered about 5 % of the sail area was demonstrated, the minimum-success criteria for IKAROS was achieved.

## EN-ROUTE TO VENUS

During the next 6 months as IKAROS sped towards its encounter with Venus, experiments leading towards full mission success were conducted. These included demonstration of the sail's utility to accelerate the spacecraft and the completion of the guidance/navigation experiment for this spinning solar-photon sail.

As described in Part-V of this book, one way of characterizing the performance of a solar photon sail is the lightness number.<sup>1</sup>

The mass of the IKAROS sail (including four tip masses) is 15 kg and its fully unfurled area is approximately 200 m<sup>2</sup> (see Appendix). Because the total reflectivity of the IKAROS sail to sunlight is about 84 %, the lightness number of this spacecraft is calculated to be less than 0.0009 (because the IKAROS' total mass amounts to 307 kg). Since the Sun's gravitational force near the Earth's solar orbit is about 0.00593 m/s<sup>2</sup>, the maximum solar radiation-pressure acceleration on IKAROS when the spacecraft is near Earth's solar orbit is about 5.3 μm/s<sup>2</sup>. It is about twice as high when the spacecraft is near Venus (~0.7 AU). Thus, its velocity will increase at most by 1 m/s each day.

Of course, IKAROS was not always oriented with its broad side towards the Sun. However, when the correction for angular variation was factored in, it was learned that the solar radiation-pressure acceleration on IKAROS during the first 6 months of its journey was about 96 % of the theoretically predicted value. This is very significant. Before the mission, there had been a great deal of controversy in the solar-sail community about how sail-surface wrinkles would degrade performance of a slowly spinning solar-photon sail. It is obvious that wrinkling is not (for this case) as significant a factor as some had feared.

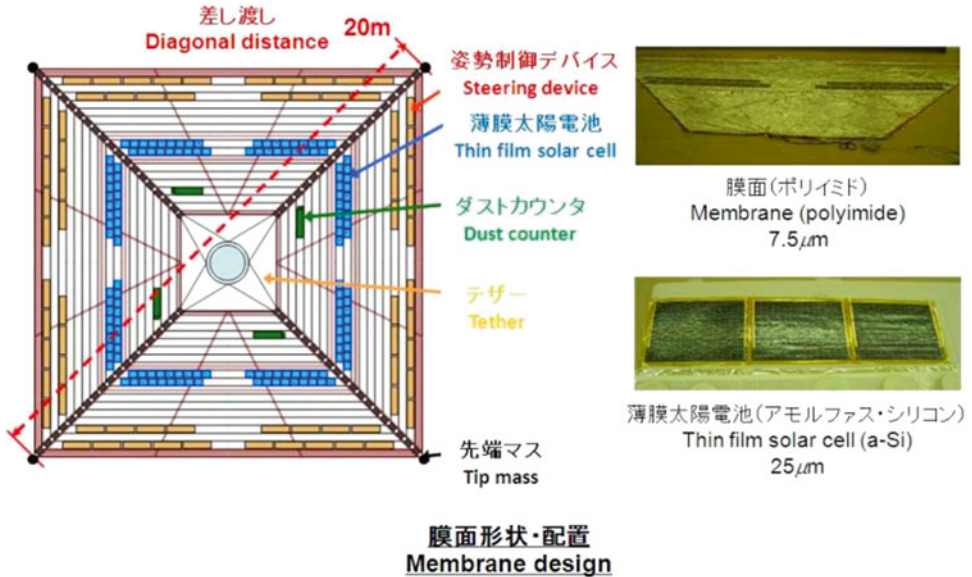
Another goal of the mission was to demonstrate a technique of varying the angle between the Sun and the normal to the sail in a controlled fashion, which is necessary to perform out-of-ecliptic missions. If IKAROS were not spinning, this could be done by manipulating steering vanes mounted on the sail edge. Alternatively, IKAROS thrusters could be used to eliminate spin during the attitude modification maneuver.

A most innovative technique was successfully applied to achieve this goal without using thruster fuel (see Fig. 15.3). A Reflectance Control Device (RCD) was utilized to vary reflectance of sail portions according to a timer so that from the Sun's point of view, the same sail locations were always high or low reflectance, regardless of the sail spin. The RCD is a layered, flexible sheet with an embedded liquid crystal. Reflectance is varied by turning the RCD's electrical tension on or off. In this fashion, sail reflectance "north" or "south" of the ecliptic is slightly different. Differential solar radiation pressure causes the sail's angle to the Sun to change slowly in a controlled fashion. At the conclusion of the angular shift, the RCD tension timed variation is stopped.

**Remark-1** The solar-radiation pressure acceleration of IKAROS is rather low, but sufficiently high for testing with certainty the reality of the solar-photon sailing. In addition, the number of innovative experiments, and the key fact that a very thin surface, rather large with respect to the standard in spaceflight, can be deployed and subsequently managed represent the overcoming of crucial aspects feared for long time. At the same time, certain effects—which are expected to be significant for future high-lightness-number sailcraft missions—could not be detected in IKAROS.

---

<sup>1</sup> *Reminder:* the lightness number of a sailcraft is the ratio between the thrust acceleration (due to the solar radiation pressure) and the solar gravitational acceleration at the same point where is the sailcraft at a certain time. This very important quantity actually depends on many physical quantities, and in particular on the ratio of the (effective) sail area on the total sailcraft mass. We will explain and generalize this concept in Chap. 19.



15.3 IKAROS components, including the reflectance control device, or RCD (Courtesy of JAXA)

## THE EXTENDED MISSION

About 6 months into its flight, after its fly-by of Venus, IKAROS was declared a success. With the principal technological goals established, mission controllers turned their attention to the extended IKAROS mission. During this phase, the world's first solar-photon sail spacecraft has served as a very successful science platform. As well as the gamma ray burst polarimeter, an X-band VLBI (very large baseline interferometer) transmitter is mounted on the craft. Terrestrial stations can use these transmissions to obtain precise measurements of the spacecraft's position and orientation in space.

By all standards, IKAROS is a magnificent achievement. It will be interesting to see how the technology tested by this craft evolves in the future. Information that is more detailed can be obtained by an overview paper by O. Mori (see Further Reading). Very technical results can be read in other papers published in the journal *Advances in Solar Sailing*, inaugural issue (Springer, 2014), and other papers listed at the end of this chapter.

## APPENDIX: SOME DATA ABOUT THE IKAROS SAIL

We finish this chapter devoted to IKAROS with many pieces of information kindly received from Dr. Yuichi Tsuda (JAXA) via a personal communication with author Vulpetti.

IKAROS sail hosts many small objects by which the mission designers performed new important experiments. However, the bare sail is mainly a two-layer membrane: (i) a plastic support, and (ii) the reflective film.

The sail area amounts (more precisely) to 193 m<sup>2</sup>. As a result, the sailcraft sail loading ( $\sigma$ ) is 307 kg/193 m<sup>2</sup> = 1.591 kg/m<sup>2</sup>. This high value causes the lightness number to be less than 0.001. Nevertheless, the *absolute* importance of IKAROS relies on its historical mission, the sail management, and the high number of innovative experiments onboard (also, see Remark-1).

The support consists of two polyimides 7.5  $\mu$ m thick: (a) 89 % of the sail surface is made of APICAL AH with a density of 1.4 g/cm<sup>3</sup> (commercially available), and (b) 11 % uses a new heat-sealable polyimide named ISAS-TPI with density of 1.3 g/cm<sup>3</sup>, endowed with high stability in the interplanetary environment. ISAS-TPI has been developed by the Japanese Institute of Space and Astronautical Science (ISAS) and JAXA specifically for solar-photon sailing. Thus, this two-polyimide layer contributes 10.4 g/m<sup>2</sup> to  $\sigma$ .

The reflective layer consists of Aluminum “smeared” on the support by the method of physical vapor deposition, i.e. no chemical reaction was used for getting the thin film. The thickness is 90 nm on average with a spread of about 10 nm. It contributes 0.24 g/m<sup>2</sup> to  $\sigma$ .

Now, it is important to note that ISAS-TPI comes in a form of rolls 60-cm wide. How to make the final sail that is somewhat greater than 0.6 m? The answer is by heat-sealing the various strips and with no adhesive too. This is a strong simplification in manufacturing sail.

One further property of this polyimide sail is to exhibit high resistance to the solar ultraviolet light and solar wind, which is mainly composed of electrons and protons with a bulk speed of 250–800 km/s. The sail integrity can last many years.

**Remark-2** When a sufficient number of experimental sailing missions are successful with a huge amount of technological and scientific data, the second-generation of sailcraft will be characterized by system low masses, i.e. all of the same order of magnitude. This way, the lightness number can become high, and other mission scenarios—described in other parts of this book—can be opened: those sailcraft can do what it is practically impossible to rockets!

## FURTHER READING

Accomplishments and progress of IKAROS can be surveyed in many on-line sources including the JAXA website. Very interesting and relevant articles in the peer-reviewed literature are the following:

- (A) Y. Tsuda *et al.*, *Flight Status of IKAROS Deep Space Solar Sail Demonstrator*, *Acta Astronautica*, **69**, 833-840, **2011**
- (B) Osamu Mori *et al.*, *Overview of IKAROS Mission*, *Advances in Solar Sailing*, inaugural issue, Springer, **2014**

In addition, for the more technical reader and the graduate student, we recommend the following set of papers on IKAROS written by its designers, who have analyzed data received from this sailcraft. In parentheses, the authors of this book added some their comments and/or pieces of information as received from Dr. Yuichi Tsuda (JAXA).



1. *Special Issue on IKAROS*, The Journal of Space Technology and Science by the Japanese Rocket Society, Vol. 27, No. 1, **2013** spring
2. Y. Tsuda, *An Attitude Control Strategy for Spinning Solar Sail*, 17th, IFAC Symposium on Automatic Control in Aerospace, WE-P02, **2007** June 25-29, Toulouse, France. (This is the first paper showing the specific concept of Reflectance Control Device—RCD—for controlling a sailcraft in attitude. This can be considered the first reliable design concept after James Wright, who suggested the utilization of variable reflectance for space sailing in his book of 1992. The RCD has been implemented onboard IKAROS.)
3. Y. Mimasu, T. Yamaguchi, M. Matsumoto, M. Nakamiya, R. Funase, and J. Kawaguchi, *Spinning solar sail orbit steering via spin rate control*, Advances in Space Research, Vol. 48, December, 2011, pp. 1810-1821 (This paper explains how controlling the orbit of a spinning sail via the attitude perturbations induced by the solar radiation pressure.)
4. Y. Tsuda, T. Saiki, R. Funase, Y. Mimasu, *Generalized Attitude Model for Spinning Solar Sail Spacecraft*, AIAA Journal of Guidance, Control and Dynamics, Vol. 36, No. 4, **2013**, pp. 967-974, doi: [10.2514/1.59516](https://doi.org/10.2514/1.59516) (Unique attitude behavior discovered during IKAROS operations.)
5. Y. Tsuda, O. Mori, R. Funase, H. Sawada, T. Yamamoto, T. Saiki, T. Endo, K. Yonekura, H. Hoshino, J. Kawaguchi, *Achievement of IKAROS Japanese Deep Space Solar Sail Demonstration Mission*, Acta Astronautica, Vol. 82, No. 2, **2013**, doi:[10.1016/j.actaastro.2012.03.032](https://doi.org/10.1016/j.actaastro.2012.03.032) (This is the report of achievements after the nominal operational phase of the IKAROS mission was completed.)
6. M. Miyauchi, R. Yokota, *Development of heat sealable polyimide thin films with high space environmental stabilities for solar sail IKAROS membrane*, Protection of Materials and Structures from the Space Environment, Springer Berlin Heidelberg, 32, 303-316, **2012** (asymmetric thermoplastic material suitable for solar-sail petals)
7. R. Yokota, M. Miyauchi, Y. Ishida, *Novel Asymmetric Aromatic Polyimide Having Excellent Space Environmental Stability and Application for Solar Sail IKAROS Membrane*, Int. J. Soc. Mater. Eng. Resour., Vol. 20, No. 1, April **2014** (development of new polyimide chemical structures that meet some basic requirements of sail membrane working in Space)

# 16

## The NanoSAIL-D2 NASA Mission

This chapter describes thoroughly the second sailcraft flown as sails transition from theory to reality. Once again, NASA made an historical step in the modern history of Astronautics, this time with the flight of NanoSail-D2.

### THE GROUNDWORK

In 2011, NASA's NanoSail-D2 was the first sail to orbit the Earth. Measuring 10 m<sup>2</sup> and deployed from a 3U cubesat, NanoSail-D2 was also NASA's first cubesat deployed from another orbital spacecraft. Never intended to be a complete sailcraft, NanoSail-D2 was instead a sail deployment demonstration that could one day lead to an atmospheric drag system for removing decommissioned satellites from orbit at the end of their operational life. Built without an active guidance, navigation and control system, this demo-sailcraft re-entered the Earth's atmosphere on September 17, 2011, after spending 240 days in space.

Its flight twin, the NanoSail-D1, never had a chance to fly in space when its launch vehicle failed. And NanoSail-D2 was thought to be a failure when its planned ejection from its host spacecraft didn't happen as planned; the sailcraft instead remained stuck in the host spacecraft for several months and then spontaneously ejected—only then beginning what has become a resoundingly successful demonstration of a very small sailcraft in LEO.

The project began after the cancellation of NASA's Solar Sail Technology Project in 2007. Under that project, NASA developed two very large solar sail propulsion systems—400 m<sup>2</sup> each—and tested them under thermal vacuum conditions at NASA's Plum Brook Station in Sandusky, Ohio (Chap. 12). When the project was canceled, the hardware was returned to NASA MSFC and a small amount of money remained in the Project's account. The NASA MSFC team decided to capitalize on the investments made in the sail project thus far and leverage the considerable advances in cubesat technology to develop and fly a much smaller (than 400 m<sup>2</sup>) solar sail for possible use on cubesats and other small spacecraft. Partnering with NASA's Ames Research Center, where NASA was at the time focusing its research and development of cubesats, the NanoSail-D missions were born.



16.1 The coiled TRAC booms used on the NanoSail-D2 were developed by the US Air Force Research Laboratory (Courtesy of the US Air Force)

For the collaboration, NASA Ames provided the cubesat spacecraft bus and NASA Marshall the sail. A launch opportunity aboard a test flight of the SpaceX Falcon-1 was identified and the team had less than a year to develop both the spacecraft bus and the sail. To meet this aggressive schedule, the sail material was cut from one quadrant of the large sail tested at Plumbrook. The spacecraft was manufactured from spare hardware from the GeneSat mission and the two were integrated into a single spacecraft for launch aboard the Falcon. In what was soon to be validated as a very smart project decision, a flight spare of the NanoSail-D was manufactured and the two spacecraft were named NanoSail-D1 and NanoSail-D2.

The engineers at NASA MSFC worked with Nexolve Corporation (Huntsville, AL) to develop the sail, with Nexolve providing the booms derived from the US Air Force Research Laboratory's Triangular Rollable And Collapsible (TRAC) boom. The TRAC booms were inherently stiff and self-deploying, requiring no active deployment mechanism or control (Fig. 16.1).

The sailcraft were completed and delivered in August 2008 to SpaceX. Figure 16.2 shows the scale of the deployed NanoSail in one of the ground tests performed prior to launch.

The NanoSail-D1 was launched aboard the third test flight of the SpaceX Falcon-1 rocket from the Kwajalein Atoll. The launch failed and NanoSail-D1 never had the chance to deploy in space; instead, it and the second stage of the Falcon-1 fell into the Pacific Ocean.





16.2 The NASA NanoSail D team celebrated the successful deployment of the sail prior to packaging for launch. The cubesat from which the sail deployed can be seen in the very center of the sail (Courtesy of NASA)

## THE FLIGHT

The NanoSail-D2 spacecraft was then placed in storage, awaiting a launch opportunity. That opportunity came about a year later when NASA MSFC began developing the Fast Affordable Science and Technology Satellite (FASTSAT). The FASTSAT, containing NanoSail-D2, was prepared for flight and shipped to Kodiak, Alaska for integration into the Minotaur rocket that would ultimately carry it into space on November 19, 2010. The flight plan called for the FASTSAT spacecraft to deploy into a 650 km altitude orbit and be checked out for 2 weeks prior to the command being given for the NanoSail-D to eject from the FASTSAT's onboard deployment system and begin its mission. There was no command uplink to initiate the deployment; the NanoSail-D2 was to deploy from FASTSAT based on a command from an onboard timer.

The time for the NanoSail-D2 to deploy from the FASTSAT came and went, with the flight team originally believing that the spacecraft had deployed as planned. Had the deployment occurred, an onboard timer would have turned on the spacecraft's radio transmitter, announcing its presence in Earth orbit. No signal from the spacecraft reached the ground. Radar data later confirmed that NanoSail-D2 had not deployed from the FASTSAT. The team believed the experiment was a failure.



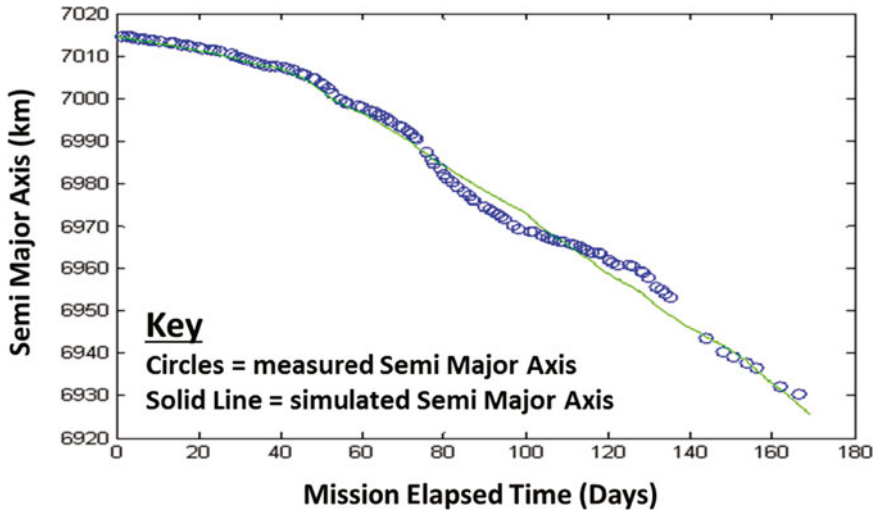
16.3 Ralph Vandebergh photographed the NanoSail-D2 from the ground on April 24, 2011 (Courtesy of Ralph Vandebergh)

Then, on January 17, 2011, the NanoSail-D2 spontaneously deployed from the FASTSAT and began its pre-programmed mission. The spacecraft's radio beacon began broadcasting as planned and the sail then unfurled on schedule. The radio data was short-lived, since the onboard batteries were only capable of keeping the transmissions alive for between 12 and 24 h after they began. Amateur astronomers took pictures of the Nanosail-D2, confirming that the sails had fully deployed (Fig. 16.3).

### SOME RESULTS FROM THE NANOSAIL-D2 MISSION

NanoSail-D2 (NSD) was inserted into a  $71.9^\circ$  inclination orbit at an altitude of 654 km. Despite its high initial altitude, NSD's orbit decayed rapidly due to the high area/mass ratio ( $A_m$ ) of the sailcraft. For NSD, approximately  $A_m = 10 \text{ m}^2/4 \text{ kg} = 2.5 \text{ m}^2/\text{kg}$ . This ratio would ultimately determine NSD's orbital lifetime.

Remark: The reader may wonder that any sailcraft—as discussed in the previous chapters—requires a sufficiently high area on mass ratio for raising orbit. Why, then, did NSD's orbit decay? This would have happened even if its attitude had been quite favorable to get energy from sunlight. The main reason is that its altitude has been constantly lower than 750–800 km. As a point of fact, below such range, the dragging effect due to the Earth's high-atmosphere is always greater than the propulsive effect caused by sunlight. The range reported above depends on the solar activity (explained in Chaps. 18 and 19), the fact that Earth orbit varies between 0.983 and 1.017 AU, and that the high-atmosphere density is not so low as one might think at first glance. Of course, one may induce a decay by sail even from altitudes (not too much) greater than 800 km if the sail is oriented such a



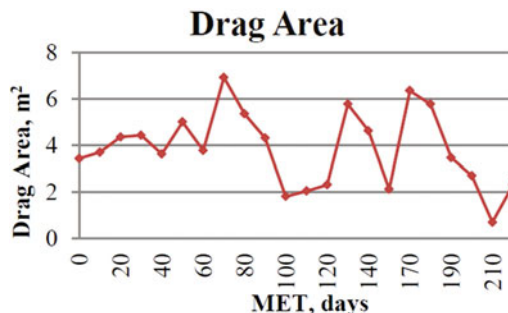
16.4 Theoretical models of NanoSail-D2's altitude compare favorably with measured results (Courtesy of Andy Heaton of NASA MSFC)

way to use sunlight for losing orbital energy. In such a view, the NSD mission by NASA MSFC has become still more important, as explained below.

NSD's orbital altitude decay rate was modeled by Andy Heaton of NASA MSFC and his analysis aligns well with the measured Two Line Element<sup>1</sup> (TLE) data, as shown in Fig. 16.4. Heaton used detailed atmospheric model and daily values for solar activity to ensure accurate atmospheric density. Based on the TLE data, the sailcraft's orbital velocity was well characterized. Assuming a drag coefficient of 2.20 (approximately that of a flat plate), and based on the optical ground observations that established that the sailcraft was spinning at a rate far greater than its orbit rate, Heaton's model of NanoSail-D2's orbital decay aligns well with measured data.

As NanoSail-D2 orbited the Earth, its orbit and orientation were affected by solar radiation pressure, aerodynamic drag, gravity, and center of pressure offsets in the sail system. These disturbances were not constant and varied dramatically throughout each orbit. Chelsea Katan of Embry-Riddle Aeronautical University used the NanoSail-D2 TLE's and calculated that the sailcraft's orientation was changing throughout its orbital life (Fig. 16.5). She found that the *effective* drag area of the sail varied from less than 1 m<sup>2</sup> to almost 7 m<sup>2</sup>, strongly implying that the sail was not uniformly tumbling (which would have likely resulted in an approximately uniform effective drag area); rather it was changing orientations and maintaining some of them preferentially [1].

<sup>1</sup> A NORAD two-line element set consists of two 69-character lines of data which can be used with orbital models to determine the position and velocity of a satellite.



16.5 The effective drag area of NanoSail-D2 was calculated using a software known as the Satellite Took Kit and TLE data. Again, *MET* Mission Elapsed Time (Courtesy of Chelsea Katan)

## APPLICATION OF NANOSAIL-D2 TECHNOLOGY

Using sails as aerodynamic drag devices for de-orbiting spacecraft in LEO is perhaps the nearest term application of the technology. Several companies and universities are investigating this approach and they are using the results of the NanoSail-D2 in their design and mission planning. For example, MMA Design launched into orbit their DragNET De-orbit System aboard a US Air Force Space Test Program satellite (STPSat-3) in November 2013 with the goal of demonstrating the system as a viable end-of-life satellite de-orbit system. The DragNET, like NanoSail-D2, consists of a thin membrane with booms and will have a deployed area of 14 m<sup>2</sup>. The company claims that the system will de-orbit a 180 kg spacecraft from altitudes up to 850 km in less than 10 years [2].

## REFERENCES

1. Katan, Chelsea, “NASA’s Next Solar Sail: Lessons from NanoSail – D2,” *26th Annual AIAA/USU Conference on Small Satellites: Enhancing Global Awareness through Small Satellites*, Logan, UT, USA, 13-16 Aug. 2012
2. Fernandez, Juan M., et al. “Design and development of a gossamer sail system for deorbiting in low earth orbit.” *Acta Astronautica* 103 (2014): 204–225

# 17

## New Projects in Progress

As these words are composed in 2014, we are in the initial phase of solar-photon-sail operational application. Probably, a good historical analog is the status of the chemical rocket in late 1957. As was then the case with Sputnik 1 and 2 in their relation to the chemical rocket, the utility of small solar sails has been demonstrated by the successful operation of NASA NanoSail-D2 in low Earth orbit, and JAXA IKAROS in interplanetary space.

We can unfurl small sails in the space environment, control their attitude relative to the Sun, and demonstrate their utility for purposes of in-space propulsion. With the gamma-ray-burst detector mounted on IKAROS, the application of the sail as a platform for science has been demonstrated; besides, other packages on IKAROS are related to applied research.

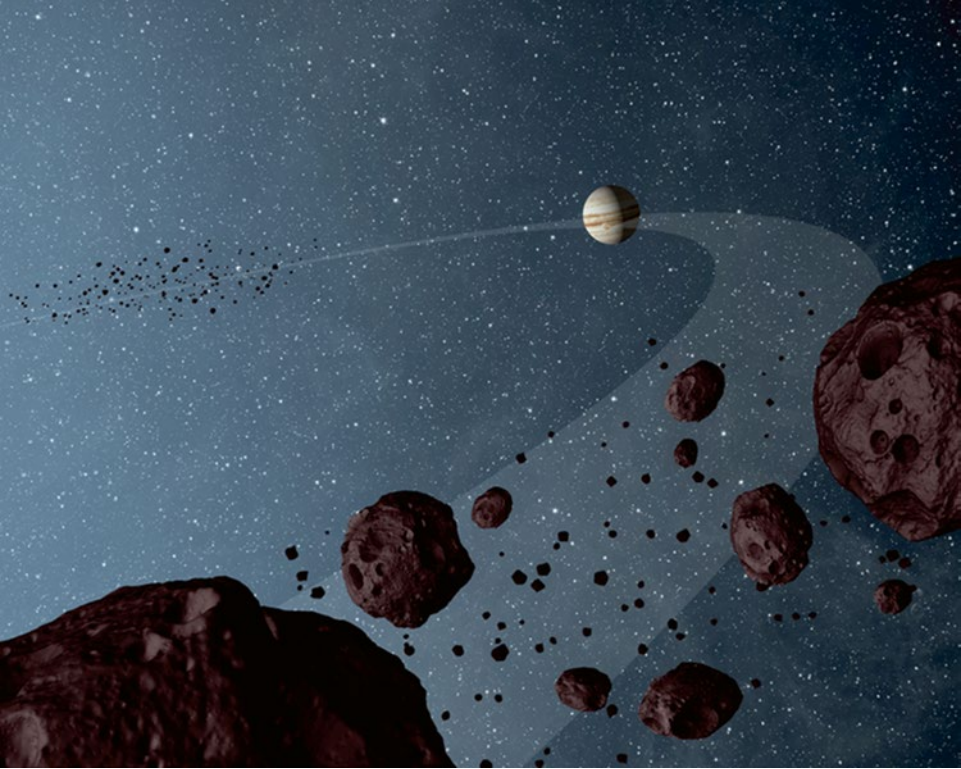
However, we still have a long way to go to establish the solar-photon sail as an off-the-shelf device useful to perform or enable missions in the solar system and beyond. One thing that must be accomplished is development and application of sails scaled up from the ~20-m size range to those useful for propelling larger payloads at velocities comparable to or higher than those routinely achieved with solar electric propulsion.

A number of possible missions are possible in the near future, say before around 2020, which could improve the sail's utility and provide additional confidence to advanced mission planners. This chapter discusses a few of these.

### MISSION TO JUPITER AND THE TROJAN ASTEROIDS

As follow-on to IKAROS, the Japanese space agency JAXA is considering a probe to Jupiter and the Trojan asteroids to be launched in ~2020. The Trojan asteroids are a class of small celestial bodies that follow or lead Jupiter by  $60^\circ$  in the planet's solar orbit. They are located near the gravitationally stable Lagrange points (L4 and L5) and are named after mythological heroes of the Trojan War (Fig. 17.1).

This Jupiter Magnetosphere Orbiter (JMO) would first be injected into an orbit with perihelion near Venus and aphelion near Earth. A sail would be used near perihelion to increase orbital energy so that the aphelion would be raised. After one or more solar passes, with possible application of planetary gravity assists, the aphelion of the space-vehicle would be about 5.2AU, the solar orbit of Jupiter. Using solar-electric propulsion



17.1 Artist rendering of the Trojan asteroids and Jupiter (Courtesy of NASA)

far from the Sun, this *hybrid-propulsion*<sup>1</sup> space-vehicle would be maneuvered to explore Jupiter's magnetosphere and encounter at least one Trojan asteroid. The total duration of the mission would approximate 11 years.

Following a paper on the concept by Sasaki et al., we can evaluate some stages of this mission. First, we assume a square sail somewhat larger than IKAROS: about 100-m on a side, with an area of 10,000 m<sup>2</sup>. We next assume that, like IKAROS, the sail film is 7.5- $\mu$ m polyimide. Structure including inflatable booms may raise the mass of the sail system by 30 %; as a result, the mass of the sail and structure is about 150 kg. We next assume that the payload amounts to an additional 100 kg, so the total vehicle mass is 250 kg. Dividing by the unfurled sail area, the vehicle sail loading is 0.025 kg/m<sup>2</sup>.<sup>2</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> In a long and detailed paper presented at the 1st World Space Congress, Washington D.C. (1992), author Vulpetti first introduced and analyzed a space-vehicle driven by nuclear ion propulsion and solar-photon sail (see *Further Reading*). He proposed the designation of *staged-propulsion spacecraft* in order to highlight the opportunity for utilizing different-kind propulsive systems in different ranges of Sun-vehicle distance in a same complex mission.

<sup>2</sup> or 25 g/m<sup>2</sup>; we shall use such units in the subsequent chapters for a more direct visualization.



The next step is to calculate the value of the Lightness Number  $L$ , which (in a way equivalent to what we did in Chap. 15) may be defined as the ratio of the solar-radiation-pressure force on the *sail* to the solar gravitational force on the *sailcraft*, when the sail is fully unfurled and directly facing the Sun.<sup>3</sup> Assuming a 90 % sail reflectance, Eq. (4.19) of author Matloff's *Deep Space Probes* can be applied to estimate the value of  $L$  for this sail as 0.06. At the Earth's solar orbit, the gravitational acceleration on the sail is about 0.00593 m/s<sup>2</sup>; near Venus the value of this parameter is about 0.0113 m/s<sup>2</sup>. Multiplying these numbers by the calculated value of  $L$ , we find that the sail's solar-radiation-pressure acceleration near Earth and Venus respectively is about 0.00035 and 0.00067 m/s<sup>2</sup>. Approximately, near Venus, solar radiation pressure on the sail can increase the sailcraft's velocity by about 58 m/s (at most) each day. Near Earth, the solar sail can increase the vehicle's solar orbital velocity by about 30 m/s (at most) per day.

We next assume that this sailcraft, like IKAROS, is initially injected into a Hohmann minimum energy trajectory, with the perihelion of its solar orbit near Venus and the aphelion near Earth. The time required to traverse one-half of the sailcraft's initial solar circuit is 146 days. The sailcraft's solar-orbital velocity will increase if the sail is tilted towards the Sun during the post-perihelion phase of the trajectory. By the time it crosses Earth's orbit, its solar-orbital velocity may increase by about 6 km/s, depending upon the sail axis angle relative to the Sun. The effect of this increased orbital velocity will be an increase in the sailcraft's aphelion.

The sailcraft can also make use of gravity assists as it passes Earth, Moon, and Venus to increase its aphelion further. However, it is easy to estimate how many Venus passes are required to inject it into a Jupiter-bound trajectory.

The specific energy (energy per unit mass) of a Hohmann trajectory can be written:

$$\varepsilon = \frac{-GM_{sun}}{(r_a + r_p)} = \frac{1}{2}V_{s/c}^2 - \frac{GM_{sun}}{r} \quad (m/s^2) \quad (17.1)$$

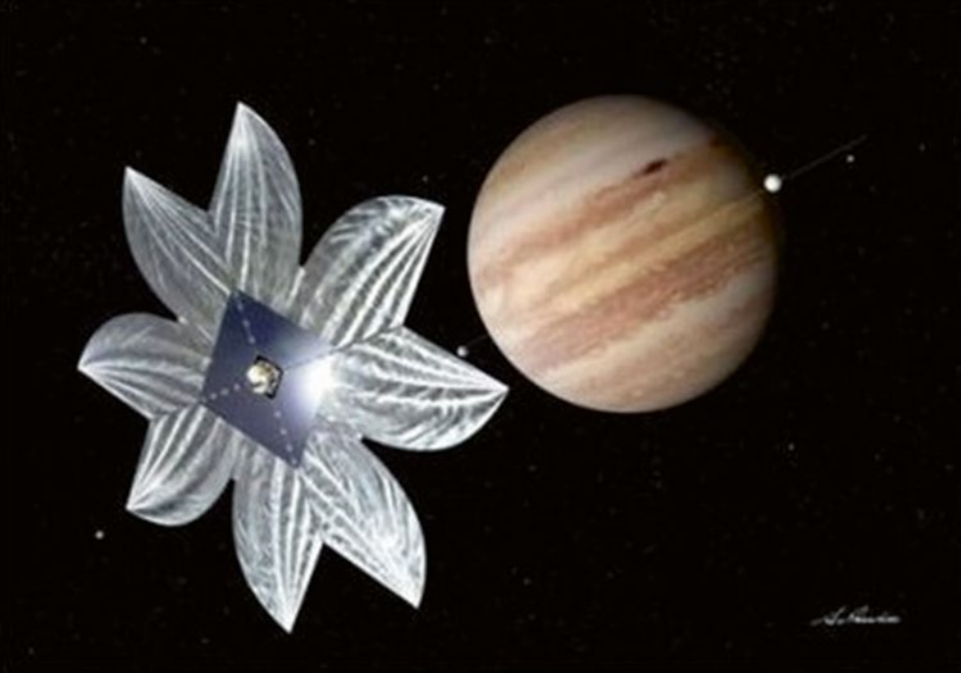
where  $G$  is the Universal Gravitational Constant,  $M_{sun}$  is the Sun's mass,  $r_a$  and  $r_p$  are respectively craft aphelion and perihelion distances, and  $V_{s/c}$  is the sailcraft's velocity at distance  $r$  from the Sun's center.

Next, we substitute numerical values for various parameters in Eq. (17.1). In the International System of units,  $G = 6.67 \times 10^{-11} \text{ Nm}^2/\text{kg}^2$  and  $M_{sun} = 1.99 \times 10^{30} \text{ kg}$ . The average solar distances for Venus, Earth and Jupiter are respectively 108.2, 149.6, and 777.9 million km.

The specific energy of the initial Earth-Venus Hohmann trajectory is calculated as  $-5.15 \times 10^8 (m/s)^2$ . When the sailcraft is in its final Venus-Jupiter trajectory, the orbital specific energy is  $-1.50 \times 10^8 (m/s)^2$ .

---

<sup>3</sup> This is the classical definition of the lightness number. In Part-V, we will introduce the reader to a new mathematical formalism for the Astrodynamics of solar-photon sailing, which is more versatile for a better comprehension of the potentialities of the solar-photon propulsion. In addition, this formalism opens fruitful ways to sophisticated sailcraft trajectories and missions. The following four chapters are devoted to the graduate student, chiefly.



17.2 Artist rendering about a sailcraft approaching Jupiter (Courtesy of NASA)

At perihelion (near Venus), the sailcraft's initial solar velocity is 37.7 km/s. In its final Jupiter-bound orbit, the sailcraft's solar velocity near Venus is 46.4 km/s. To alter the initial Earth-Venus orbit into a Venus-Jupiter orbit, about a velocity increment of 9.1 km/s must be provided. The solar sail alone can provide this if it is operated during two solar passes. Figure 17.2 is an artist rendering of the sail near Jupiter.

This is a very surprising result for a first-generation solar sail. It may be thought that using the solar photon sail in the very near term to launch outer-planet probes will give us experience with the "sun-diver" maneuver necessary to drive sails that are more advanced to destinations beyond the solar system.<sup>4</sup>

It is also of interest to estimate the fraction of the sail's area that must be covered by solar cells to supply electricity to the solar electric rocket for maneuvers near Jupiter and the Trojan asteroids. It is assumed here that the maximum power level to this thruster is 1.5 kW, similar to that of previous solar-electric propelled missions such as the NASA Deep Space 1.

---

<sup>4</sup> However, to restrain easy enthusiasm, we have to say that very distant space targets require so high energies that future very deep-space sailcraft have to be designed with much higher lightness number. This appears possible if sail system is designed via nanotechnology.



Since Jupiter is about 5.2 AU from the Sun, the solar flux of light (or the solar irradiance) near this planet is about 51 W/m<sup>2</sup>. Assuming a 10 % solar-cell efficiency, about 5 W of electricity can be provided to the thruster from each square meter of solar cell mounted on the sail. About 300 m<sup>2</sup> are required, which is 3 % of the solar-photon-sail area.

### ASTEROID DIVERSION

Planetary astronomers have learned a great deal recently about that class of asteroids and extinct comets called Near Earth Objects (NEOs). These rocky, metallic and icy objects range in size between a boulder and a large mountain. Sometimes they impact the Earth with devastating consequences. The impact that contributed heavily to the demise of the dinosaurs about 65 million years ago was very likely a NEO. Much more recently, in 1908, ~50–100 m celestial visitor entered the atmosphere exploded above Tunguska, Siberia releasing the energy equivalent to a thermonuclear weapon. More recently, a meteor entered the Earth’s atmosphere over Russia in February 2013 and exploded. Scientists estimate that it deposited as much energy into the atmosphere as 30 Hiroshima-scale atomic bombs.

There are thousands of these objects large enough to cause significant damage if they impact our planet. Several private organizations are planning to mine them for resources valuable both on Earth and in space. For these reasons, President Obama has directed NASA to plan for a human mission to a close NEO to be conducted around 2020.

Various techniques of altering NEO solar orbits have been suggested and some may be experimented with during early explorations. Although Hollywood special effects experts prefer the dramatic nuclear-explosion option, experiments with such devices are forbidden by international treaty. Since certain NEO varieties are flimsy and tenuous, explosives may result in fragmentation rather than diversion. If we accurately know the trajectory of an offending NEO decades before its predicted impact, there are several non-explosive diversion techniques employing the solar photon sail.

Two of these might be experimented with by early expeditions to nearby NEOs. These are the gravity tractor and kinetic deflection.

### THE GRAVITY TRACTOR

Initially conceived by Apollo 9 astronaut Rusty Schweickart, the Gravity Tractor is very simple in concept. A solar sail flies in formation with the Earth-threatening NEO, using solar-radiation pressure to maintain its separation from the object. Over a period of many years or decades, the mutual gravitational attraction of the sail and NEO slightly alters the solar trajectory of the NEO, converting an Earth impact into a near miss.

As an illustration, consider a 500-kg solar photon sail maintaining a 100-m separation from a 30-m radius NEO with a mass density of 2 g/cm<sup>3</sup>. The NEO’s approximate mass is calculated to be 2 × 10<sup>8</sup> kg. The mutual gravitational force between the two objects can be written as:

$$F_{grav} = \frac{GM_{sail}M_{neo}}{R^2} = M_{neo}a_{neo} \quad [\text{N}], \tag{17.2}$$

where  $G$  once again is the Universal Gravitational Constant,  $M_{sail}$  is the sail mass,  $M_{neo}$  is NEO mass,  $R$  is the constant separation between the sail and the NEO center of mass, and  $a_{neo}$  is the NEO's acceleration caused by the sail's gravitational attraction.

Note that NEO mass cancels when acceleration is calculated. But stand-off distance  $R$ , of course, increases as NEO radius increases. For the NEO, sail, and separation considered, the gravitational force is calculated as 0.000667 N. The gravitational acceleration of the NEO towards the sail is  $3.33 \times 10^{-12}$  m/s<sup>2</sup>.

After 60 years, the NEO's velocity towards the sail will have increased to 0.0062 m/s. Since the average NEO velocity towards the sail during a six-decades operation will be half this value, the NEO's solar orbit will be deflected by about 6,000 km or one Earth radius.

The advantages of the gravity tractor as a NEO deflection scheme are that it can be used for any variety of NEO and no direct contact with the NEO is required. But to be effective, the NEO's solar orbit must be known to extreme precision and the solar sail must remain on station for decades.

## KINETIC NEO DEFLECTION USING THE SOLAR SAIL

In early 2005, NASA launched the Deep Impact probe towards Comet 9P/Tempel. Approaching the comet's nucleus in July 2005, Deep Impact split into two components. The main probe observed the impact of the 370-kg sub-probe upon the comet's nucleus at a relative velocity of more than 10 km/s. Although an energized plume of debris and a crater equivalent in size to a football field were produced, the comet nucleus did not fragment (Fig. 17.3).

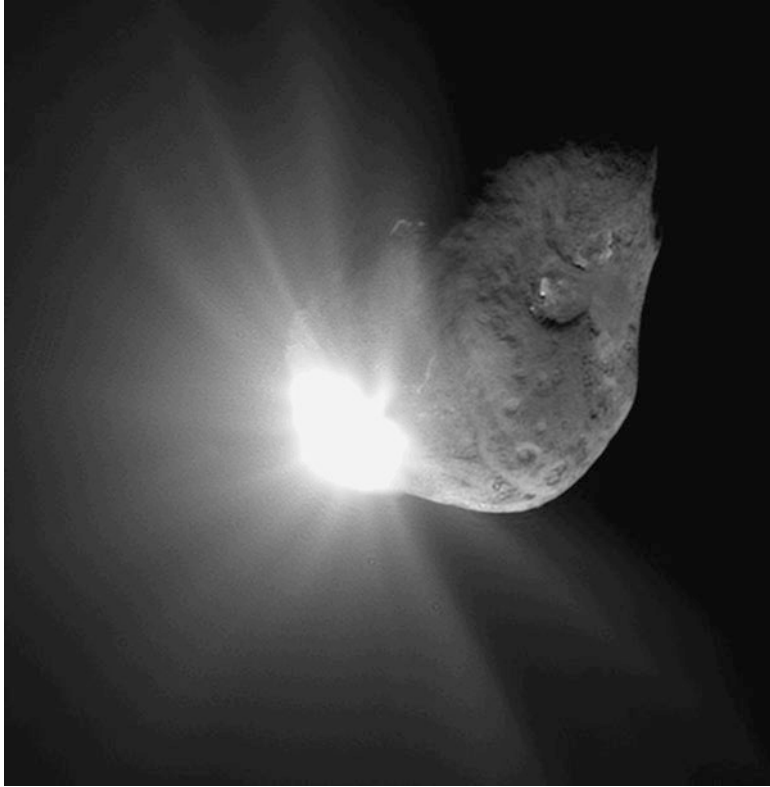
Because the solar-photon sail does not require fuel, it can perform a "cranking" maneuver to modify its solar inclination. From Colin McInnes monograph, the orbital inclination can change by 0.2° per week if the sailcraft's lightness number is 0.1 and its solar distance is 1 AU. This amounts to an inclination change of about 10° per year. Thus, less than two decades are required to maneuver such a sailcraft into a retrograde solar orbit at 1 AU. If the aim is very precise, the sailcraft could smash into an Earth-threatening asteroid at a relative velocity of at least 60 km/s. This amounts to a specific energy of  $1.8 \times 10^9$  J/kg.<sup>5</sup>

If this tremendous specific energy (about 36× that of the Deep Impact sub-probe) does not fragment the NEO, it is possible that the linear momentum change of the NEO due to the head-on collision could alter a predicted Earth-impact into a near miss. Linear momentum of an object is defined as the product of mass  $M$  and velocity  $V$ . In any collision, the total linear momentum of the system is conserved.

Consider, for example, a 1,600 kg sailcraft that slams head-on into a  $10^{10}$  kg NEO at a relative velocity of 60 km/s. Note that before the collision, the linear momentum of the sailcraft is about  $10^8$  kg m/s.

---

<sup>5</sup> When lightness number values in the range 0.5–0.7 are achieved (via nanotechnology), higher-speed impacts will be got in about 1 year too by using sailcraft trajectories very different from orbital cranking. However, the explanation of such performance is beyond of the aims of this chapter.



17.3 The Deep-Impact sub-probe striking the nucleus of Comet 9P/Tempel (Courtesy of NASA)

If we assume that there is no fragmentation during the collision, all of the sailcraft linear momentum is transferred to the NEO. The NEO's velocity in its solar orbit is reduced by about 0.01 m/s. This might not seem like a lot, but after thirty years, the NEO's position in its solar orbit will be about 10,000 km displaced from where it would be if no collision had occurred. Given decades warning time and extremely accurate trajectory control, kinetic impact could convert an Earth-impact into a near miss.

### **SOME OTHER SOLAR-SAIL RELATED APPROACHES TO NEO DIVERSION**

Several other approaches to NEO diversion do not directly utilize the solar photon sail, but do apply related technologies. These may be tried as well during early human visits to near NEOs.

The simplest of these is to bombard the offending NEO with reflective paint balls. Solar radiation pressure on the NEO would be increased by the increased reflectivity.

Over a period of many years or decades, the NEO's heliocentric orbit might be slightly altered. Another approach is the solar collector, in which a parabolic reflector stationed near the NEO concentrates sunlight on that asteroid. If the NEO is rich in volatiles such as water ice, a jet of energized material would be raised by the concentrated sunlight and the NEO's solar orbit would be altered.

## FURTHER READING

A nice online review of JAXA plans for a hybrid sail/ion-drive mission to Jupiter and the Trojan asteroids can be found in S. Sasaki et al., *Japanese mission plan for Jupiter system: the Jupiter magnetospheric orbiter and the Trojan asteroid explorer*, presented at EPSC-DPS Joint Meeting 2011. This is its web-address: [http://yly-mac.gps.caltech.edu/A\\_DPS/dps%202011%20/a\\_dps%202011%20program%20+%20abstracts/pdf/EPSC-DPS2011-1091.pdf](http://yly-mac.gps.caltech.edu/A_DPS/dps%202011%20/a_dps%202011%20program%20+%20abstracts/pdf/EPSC-DPS2011-1091.pdf), checked successfully on May 20, 2014.

Many texts consider the kinematics of Hohmann transfer orbits. We used R. R. Bate, D. D. Mueller and J. E. White, *Fundamentals of Astrodynamics*, Dover, NY (1971). A nice source for the numerical values of astronomical and physical constants is K. Lodders and B. Fegley Jr., *The Planetary Scientist's Companion*, Oxford University Press, NY (1998).

Our reference for the ion-thruster power level of the NASA Deep Space 1 probe is M. J. L. Turner, *Rocket and Spacecraft Propulsion*, 2nd ed., Springer-Praxis, Chichester, UK (2005).

The gravity tractor as a NEO deflection scheme has received a fair amount of attention in recent years. One reference is B. Wie, "Deflection and Control of Gravity Tractor Spacecraft for Asteroid Deflection," *Journal of Guidance, Control, and Dynamics*, **31**, 1413-1423 (2008).

Orbit cranking by solar radiation pressure, as a method of altering orbital inclination without the expenditure of fuel, is considered by C. McInnes on pp. 143-146 of *Solar Sailing: Technology, Dynamics, and Mission Applications*, Springer-Praxis, Chichester, UK (1999). However, this method was first considered by JPL in the 1970s.

A review of the paintball NEO-diversion suggestion is available on-line as J. Chu, "Paintballs may Deflect an Incoming Asteroid," *MIT News*, <http://web.mit.edu/newsoffice/2012/deflecting-an-asteroid-with-paintballs-1026.html> (accessed February 14, 2013).

The application of the solar collector in NEO deflection is discussed in the paper G. L. Matloff, *Deflecting Earth-Threatening Asteroids Using the Solar Collector*, *Acta Astronautica*, **82**, 209-214 (2013).

Using both nuclear ion propulsion and solar-photon sailing for very high energy missions was first proposed and analyzed in detail by author Vulpetti in his paper *Missions to the Heliopause and Beyond by Staged Propulsion Spacecraft*, paper IAA-92-0240, The World Space Congress, Aug. 28 – Sept. 5, Washington D.C. (1992)

## Part V

# Space Sailing: Some Technical Aspects

The first four parts of this book have described solar sailing and sailcraft, as well as the design problems, the unknowns, what has been done also in the last years, new perspectives, and the expectations from a revolution in space propulsion and vehicle design. These ones may be one of the main keys for an extended exploration and utilization of space within a few decades. The level of topic presentation was kept as simple as possible to provide nontechnical readers with basic information in every major area of space sailing without becoming involved in the underlying mathematical constructs.

However, like any area of science and technology, a deeper knowledge entails higher concepts and more appropriate language. The universal language of science is mathematics. In general, different though interconnected mathematical disciplines are used for addressing specific topics. A problem may be dealt with through many steps, each step obeying the underlying set of different and progressive assumptions of the current model.

Part V is intended for readers that are more technical and in particular for undergraduate students in physics, engineering, and mathematics. However, the math has been kept to a simple level. To read the following chapters requires a modest background in physics, and elementary calculus is advisable. The following chapters should be viewed as a short introduction for students interested in the dynamics of solar sailing as part of their future professional activity. In such a context, all the topics addressed in this book could also aid the reader to get a sufficiently general view of the problems related to both solar-sail spaceflight and the next steps of the endless human adventure in space.

The following chapters have been updated/amended with respect to the 1st edition of this book. In particular, the order of the definitions of the radiometric quantities has been changed for a greater generality, and compliantly with (Palmer, 2009) and (Vulpetti, 2012). New advancements in solar-photon sailing have been carried out during the 2008–2013 period.

# 18

## Space Sources of Light

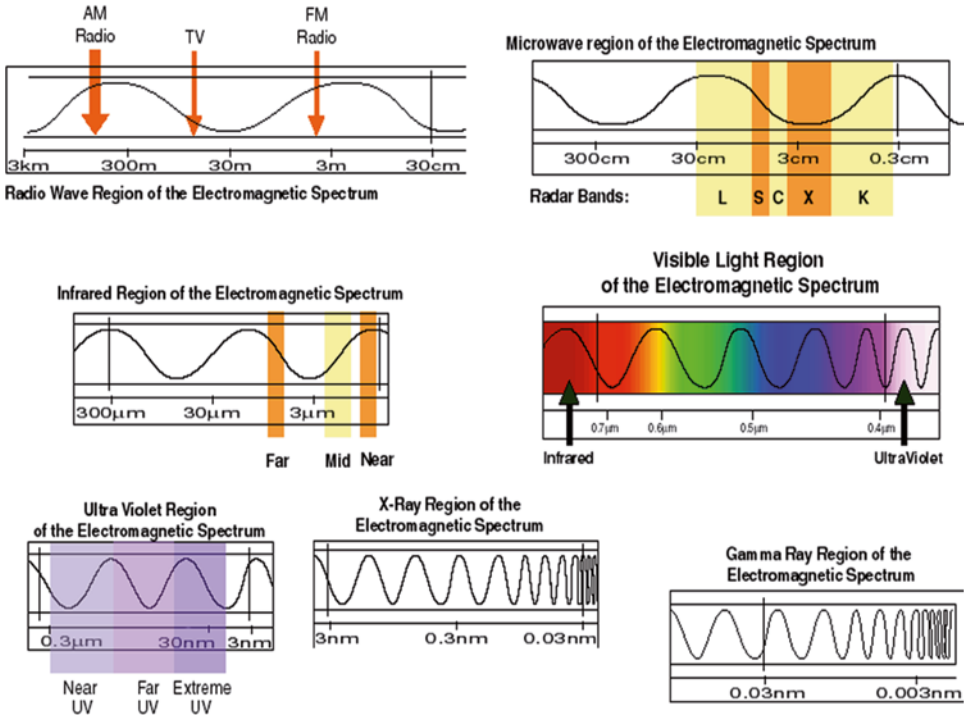
In Chap. 5, we addressed the problems of light and its amazing nature. We discussed the twofold nature of light: wave and particle. As this book regards solar sailing as a non-rocket photon-driven propulsion mode, we shall primarily focus on the properties of solar light and, secondarily, on the light from planets.

The energy of a photon is directly proportional to its frequency or, equivalently, inversely proportional to its wavelength. Frequency and wavelength refer to the oscillations of electric and magnetic fields traveling in a vacuum or inside matter. Wavelength determines the way both fields interact with objects met along their propagation path. Consequently, one can divide the electromagnetic spectrum into regions or bands (with different names). Bands are divided into sub-bands; historically, their nomenclature changed according to the progressive knowledge of their features. Figure 18.1 shows the main regions of the spectrum in terms of wavelength expressed in nanometers (nm), microns ( $\mu\text{m}$ ), or centimeters (cm), according to the band. Also, some of the sub-band names have been reported. Note how small the visible band is (0.4–0.7  $\mu\text{m}$ ) compared to the other regions. It may seem incredible that a typical TV wave transports energy  $10^{-12}$  times that of a photon of 0.1 nm wavelength, namely in the x-ray region. Someone might object that the spectrum regions/sub-regions are somewhat arbitrary. This is only partially true. Although discussing the related criteria is beyond the scope of this chapter, we mention an example: the gamma-ray region includes 511 keV, which corresponds to the energy of the rest mass of the free electron. The wavelength of any photon carrying this energy in vacuum is equal to  $\lambda = hc/E = 1,239.84191 \text{ nm}/E[eV] = 0.002426 \text{ nm}$ . (In practice, though, neither wavelength nor frequency is suitable for featuring photons beyond the sub-region of the hard x-rays, but energy is appropriate).

Considering the importance of the concepts regarding energy emission from a source of light and the energy received by a surface, we introduce the following definitions:

1. **Source of light:** A source of electromagnetic radiation can be the surface of active sources (like stars, lamps, living hot bodies, gas plasma, etc.) or any surface reflecting/scattering a fraction of the received light. When the source does not appear as point-like, the emitting surface can be partitioned in elemental or infinitesimal surfaces; each is endowed with its own radiation characteristics. Given an oriented surfaced **A**, emitting or receiving energy, and a direction **d** of radiation emission or incidence,

190 Space Sources of Light



18.1 Regions of the electromagnetic radiation spectrum (Courtesy of NASA)

the angle of emission or incidence between  $\mathbf{d}$  and  $\mathbf{n}$ , the positive normal to  $d\mathbf{A}$ , is denoted by  $\theta$  (also called the zenithal angle). Thus, the projected or orthogonal-to- $\mathbf{d}$  area is equal to  $dA_n = \cos(\theta) dA$ ,  $dA$  being the magnitude of  $d\mathbf{A}$ .

- Spectral Radiant Power ( $\Phi_\lambda$ ):** the power emitted per unit wavelength [ $\text{W}/\mu\text{m}$ ] from a source of light.
- Radiant Power ( $\Phi$ ):** is the total power, expressed in watts, emitted by a radiation source. It does not contain any other source-related information. It is equal to  $\Phi_\lambda$  integrated from some  $\lambda_1 > 0$  to some  $\lambda_2 > \lambda_1$ .
- Spectral Radiant Intensity ( $F_\lambda$ ):** the spectral power emitted per unit solid angle about a given direction.  $F_\lambda = d\Phi_\lambda / d\omega = d^2\Phi / d\omega d\lambda$ , usually measured in [ $\text{W}/(\text{sr nm})$ ] or [ $\text{W}/(\text{sr } \mu\text{m})$ ]
- Radiant Intensity ( $F$ ):** measured in  $\text{W}/\text{sr}$ , it is the  $F_\lambda$  integrated over a broadband  $[\lambda_1, \lambda_2]$  (as above). It should not be confused with radiance (see below).
- Spectral Radiant Exitance ( $M_\lambda$ ):** is the spectral radiant power emitted per source's unit area; usually measured in  $\text{W}/(\text{nm m}^2)$ .
- Radiant Exitance ( $M$ ):** the power emitted per source's unit surface [ $\text{W}/\text{m}^2$ ].  $M = d\Phi/dA$ , namely,  $M_\lambda$  integrated over  $[\lambda_1, \lambda_2]$ . This power is assumed to radiate into the hemisphere that contains  $\mathbf{n}$ .
- Spectral Radiance ( $L_\lambda$ ):** power emitted by a radiation source per unit wavelength, unit solid angle, and unit *projected* area, namely,  $L_\lambda = d^3\Phi/dA_n d\omega d\lambda$ . Spectral radiance

- is expressed in  $[\text{W}/(\text{m}^2 \text{ sr nm})]$ . Depending on the problem at hand, either photon frequency or energy can be used instead of wavelength.
9. **Radiance** ( $L$ ): the spectral radiance integrated over a range or band of wavelengths. Radiance units are  $[\text{W}/(\text{sr m}^2)]$ . Radiance should not be confused with the radiant intensity. For a Lambertian surface,  $L$  is independent of the viewing direction, by definition; as a result, it comes out that  $M = \pi L$ .
  10. **Spectral Irradiance** ( $I_\lambda$ ): is the electromagnetic power per unit wavelength incident on or crossing a unit surface. It is expressed in  $[\text{W}/(\text{m}^2 \text{ nm})]$  or  $[\text{W}/(\text{m}^2 \mu\text{m})]$ .  $I_\lambda = d^2\Psi/dA d\lambda$ , where power  $\Psi$  comes from *any* directions in the hemisphere based on  $dA$ .
  11. **Irradiance** ( $I$ ): the spectral irradiance integrated over a broadband  $[\lambda_1, \lambda_2]$ . When the band is the full electromagnetic spectrum, one gets the total irradiance. Irradiance is measured in  $[\text{W}/\text{m}^2]$ .

The concepts expressed in the above definitions are compliant with the regulations of the *Commission Internationale de l'Eclairage* (CIE, International Commission on Illumination) for radiometry and photometry. (The latter is radiometry restricted to the visible band, but connected to the spectral sensitivity of the human eye.) In particular, definitions 1–8 address the sources of light, whereas definitions 9 and 10 address radiation received by a surface (even an ideal one). However, a few scientific communities may have adopted different terminology and meanings. For instance, meteorologists call *flux* (as shorthand for *flux density*) the rate of radiant energy passing through a given flat surface, expressed in  $[\text{W}/\text{m}^2]$ . Consequently, they define the incident flux per unit solid angle  $[\text{W}/\text{m}^2 \text{ sr}]$  as the radiant intensity impinging on a given area.

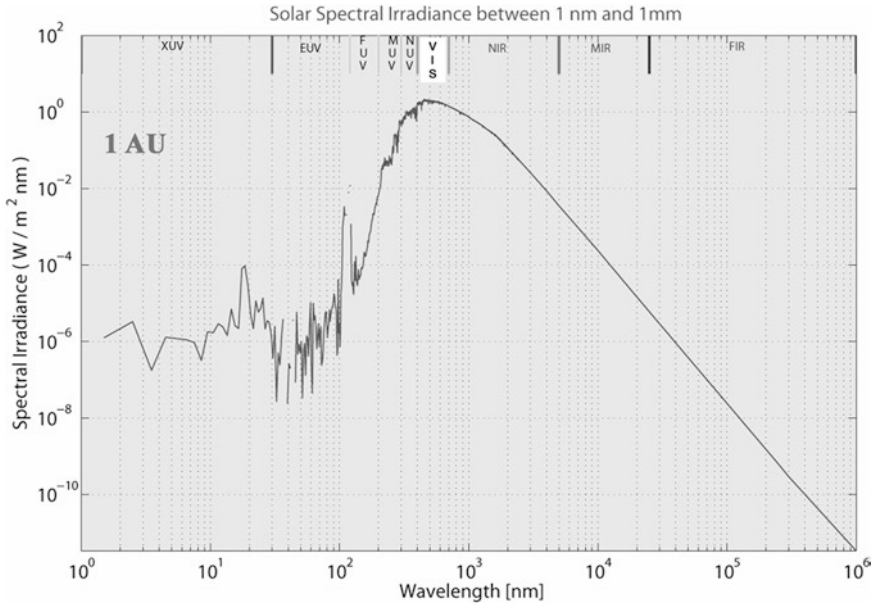
We use the international conventions and units here. The concepts of spectral and total radiance and irradiance will suffice for our purposes in this chapter.

Like any other source of natural electromagnetic radiation, the Sun does not emit light uniformly over wavelength. Let us consider a unit surface placed at 1 astronomical unit and orthogonally to the sunlight propagation direction, and at zero speed relatively to the Sun; then it is possible to measure the energy that impinges on such area per unit time, totally or as a function of the wavelength. In the former case, one gets the *total solar irradiance* (TSI), whereas in the latter case one obtains the *solar spectral irradiance* (SSI). Figure 18.2 shows SSI, in units of  $\text{W}/(\text{m}^2 \text{ nm})$ , from 1.5 to  $10^6$  nm. The sub-regions indicated in the upper part of the figure are detailed in Table 18.1. In other books, you can find some differences in the reported ranges. For instance, the 100 to 400-nm range can be divided into ultraviolet UV-C, UV-B, and UV-A, also according to the health effects on the human body. The ranges reported in Table 18.1 are compliant with the International Standards Organization (ISO) initiative 2002.

From Fig. 18.2 and Table 18.1, one can note some features. *First*, the visible band encompasses most of SSI; *second*, values in the overall UV region are strongly uneven; *third*, SSI decreases monotonically in the full infrared (IR) band; and *fourth*, over 92 % of TSI resides in the [0.4–25] micron range, whereas the UV range captures 8 % of it. Such figures are important in choosing the reflective layer of the sail.

The values of SSI shown in Fig. 18.2 are mean values over three solar cycles (21–23); as a point of fact, SSI values fluctuate in a solar cycle. Such variations are important for Earth's atmosphere, especially in the UV range, inasmuch as its energy content represents

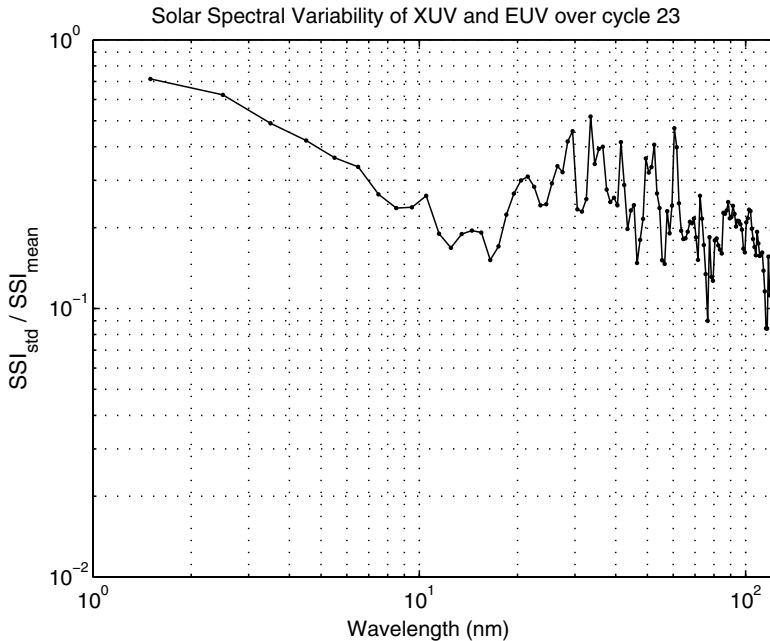




18.2 Sun’s spectral irradiance [W/m² nm], at 1 AU, over six orders of magnitude in radiation wavelength. Regions have been labeled (Solar Sails, 1st edition of this book)

**Table 18.1** Wavelength ranges of some sub-regions of the electromagnetic spectrum.

Fraction of the total irradiance	Sub-region	Min $\lambda$ (nm)	Max $\lambda$ (nm)	The following notes refer to the Earth’s atmosphere
0.06	XUV (soft x-rays)	1	30	Ionizes atoms and molecules; absorbed in the upper atmosphere
	EUV (extreme ultraviolet)	30	120	Ionizes nitrogen and oxygen molecules; absorbed above ~90 km
	FUV (far ultraviolet)	120	200	Dissociates oxygen molecules; absorbed above ~50 km
	MUV (middle ultraviolet)	200	300	Dissociates oxygen and ozone molecules; absorbed between ~30 and ~60 km
	NUV (near ultraviolet)	300	400	Can reach the ground
0.41	VIS (visible)	400	700	In practice, passes unabsorbed through the full atmosphere
0.529	NIR (near infrared)	700	4,000	Partially absorbed by water vapor
	MIR (middle infrared) or thermal infrared	4,000	25,000 or 50,000	Absorbed and re-emitted by ozone molecules, CO <sub>2</sub> , water vapor and the other gases present in low atmosphere
$<5 \times 10^{-5}$	FIR (far infrared)	25,000	1,000,000 or 50,000	Fully absorbed by water vapor



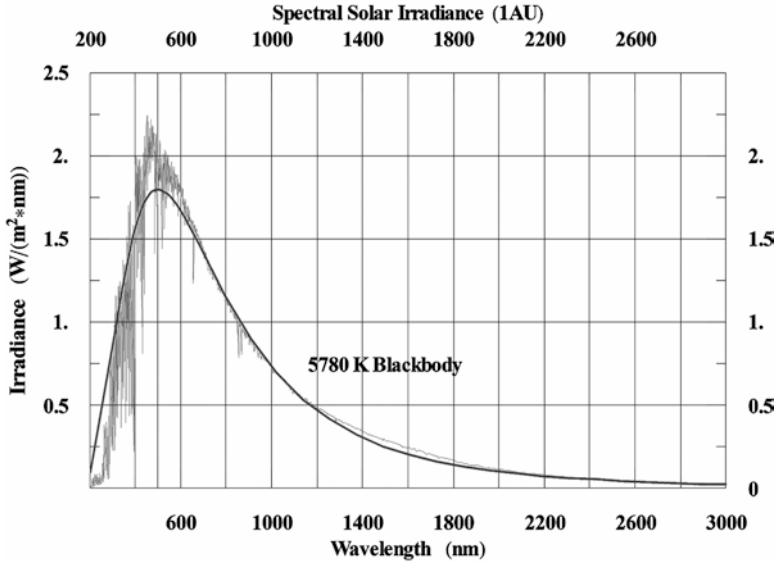
18.3 Variability of SSI in the solar XUV and EUV bands in cycle-23 (author Vulpetti, 2014)

the input of energy to the upper atmosphere: UV photons deposit their energy in the atmosphere layers known as the stratosphere, mesosphere, and thermosphere (altitude increases from the first one). In particular, they make and maintain the ionosphere. In the visible region and in the various infrared bands, relative changes of SSI during a solar cycle are rather small, i.e. of the order of 0.1 % or considerably lower (Chap. 2 of [1]). This is very good for the realization of solar-photon propulsion<sup>1</sup> because the ensuing sailcraft paths can be calculated and predicted with sufficient precision. The scenario changes completely in the UV band, where fluctuations can amount up to 100 % of the means (Fig. 14, page 67 in [1]). Even more happens in the XUV and EUV bands as shown in Fig. 18.3, where the solar spectral variability in these bands is evaluated in terms of standard deviation on average ratio in cycle-23.<sup>2</sup> The 1–120 nm region is not important for obtaining thrust via sail,<sup>3</sup> but it is for sail material degradation, and sail temperature too ([3], Chap. 4).

<sup>1</sup> However, for particularly complicated flights such as rendezvous with planets, one can show that the though small fluctuations of TSI have to be taken into account in designing sailcraft trajectories. The entries [5] and (Vulpetti, 2011), added to References of this chapter, are papers advised to the graduate student.

<sup>2</sup> The current solar cycle number is 24, according to the cycle numbering after Carrington, and began in January 2008 (<http://solarscience.msfc.nasa.gov/predict.shtml>).

<sup>3</sup> The contribution to TSI coming from XUV and EUV regions amounts to about 0.005 W/m<sup>2</sup>.



18.4 Solar spectral irradiance (1 AU) from 200 to 3,000 nm; the smooth curve is the blackbody distribution that produces the same total irradiance (approximately 1,370 W/m<sup>2</sup>) over the full solar spectrum

From a solar-sail propulsion viewpoint, the above discussion entails that the sail’s reflective film has to be chosen for reflecting light of the visible and infrared bands mainly; also, it has to be resistant to ultraviolet photons for decreasing the optical degradation. In Parts I to III of this book, statements like this one are now justified by modern measurement campaigns.

Let us gain additional information about solar light. Figure 18.4 zooms into the central part of Fig. 18.1, namely, from 200 to 3,000 nm. The vertical line represents the observed SSI, whereas the smooth line denotes the spectral radiance, integrated over the solid angle the Sun subtends at the 1 AU (or  $6.80 \times 10^{-5}$  sr), of a blackbody at 5,780 K. Such plots give us some important information:

1. The Sun behaves on average as a blackbody of high temperature, which refers roughly to the photosphere one observes as a whole (but the temperatures of the active solar zones can be much different);
2. The infrared band follows the blackbody distribution pretty well;
3. The visible and ultraviolet bands show non-negligible deviations from the blackbody, especially from the ideal maximum, e.g.  $\sim 1.8$  W/(m<sup>2</sup> nm) at 500 nm.

Blackbody distribution features a one-to-one relationship between spectral radiance and temperature. In other words, if you know the radiance  $L_0$  of an emitting body (regardless of its real properties) at some wavelength  $\lambda_0$ , there is one temperature  $T_b$  distribution passing through the point  $(L_0, \lambda_0)$ . A real general emitter can be characterized by a

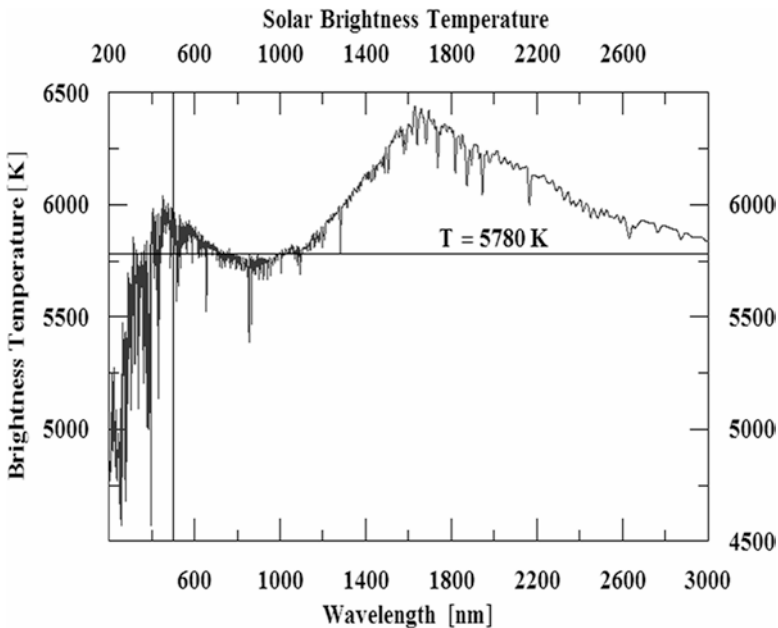
distribution of blackbody temperatures corresponding to its real radiances values. This is the concept of *brightness temperature* of a real emitting body. In formal terms:

$$T_b = B^{-1}(L_0, \lambda_0) = \frac{hc/k}{\lambda_0 \ln \left( 1 + 2 \frac{hc^2}{L_0 \lambda_0^5} \right)} \tag{18.1}$$

where  $B^{-1}(L_0, \lambda_0)$  denotes the inverse of the Planck function describing the blackbody spectral radiance (which can be found in any textbook on electromagnetic radiation). In Eq. (18.1),  $c$ ,  $h$ , and  $k$  denote the speed of light in vacuum, and the Planck and Boltzmann constants, respectively. Figure 18.5 shows the brightness temperature of the Sun in the 200 to 3,000-nm range (the same of Fig. 18.4). In this range, the Sun looks like a set of blackbodies from 4,000 to 6,450 K. Note, comparing Figs. 18.4 and 18.5, how small deviations in radiance at longer wavelengths translate into significant changes of the brightness temperature with respect to the reference blackbody temperature. This is expressed in the rightmost part of Eq. (18.1).

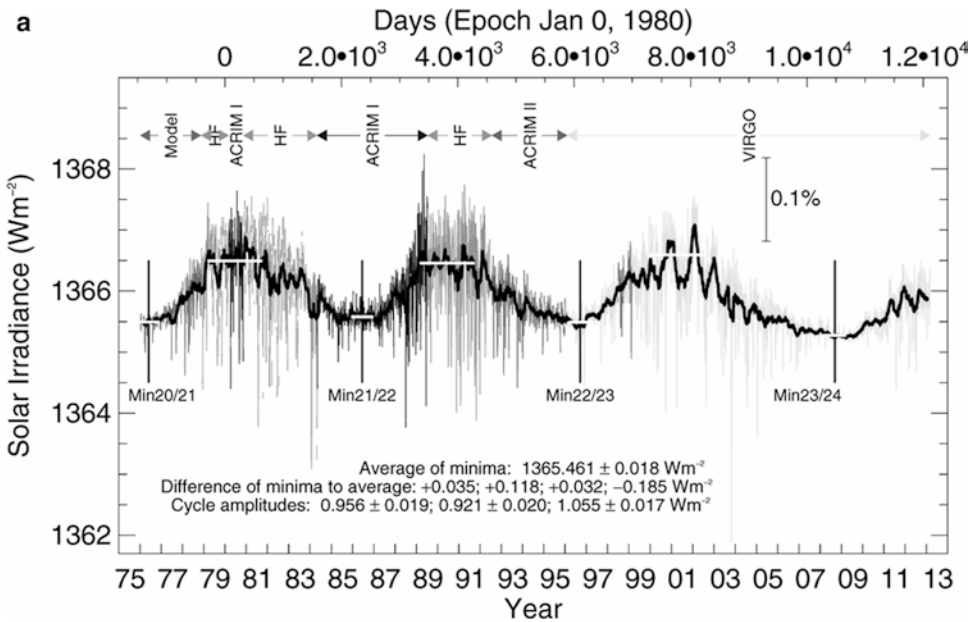
Now it's time to answer the following question: If a solar sail is  $R$  (usually astronomical units) away from the Sun, what is the total solar irradiance on it? Denoting such irradiance by  $I(R, \mathbf{p})$ , one can write

$$I(R, \mathbf{p}) = I_{\text{IAU}} f(R, \mathbf{p}) \tag{18.2}$$

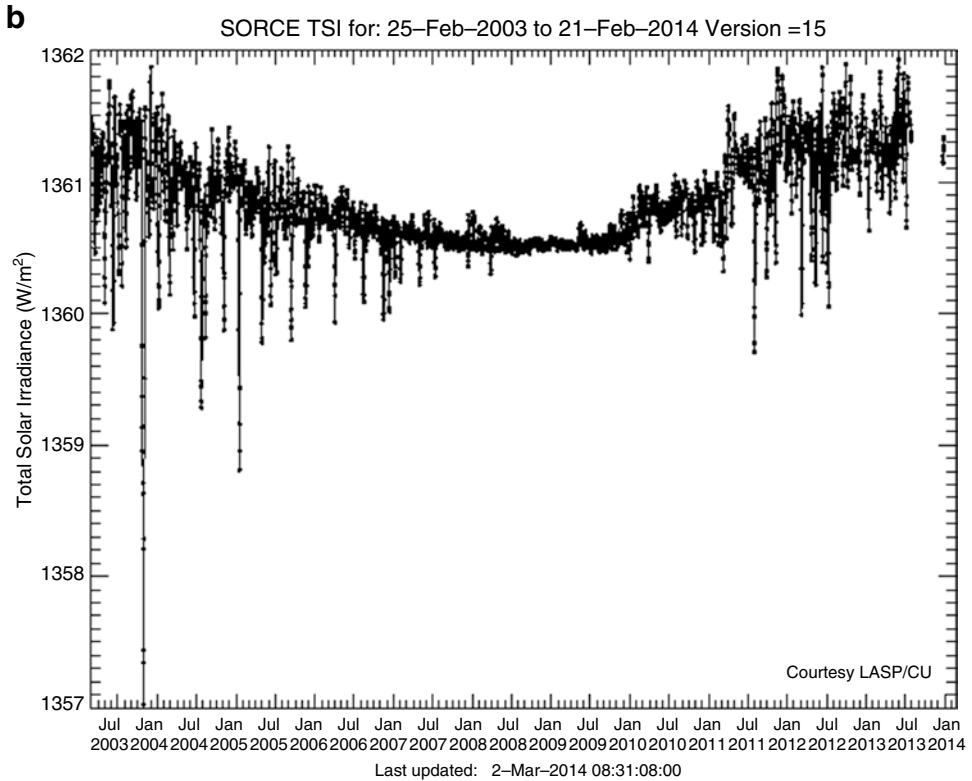


18.5 Solar brightness temperature from 200 to 3,000 nm

where the first term on the right-hand side is the standard TSI, whereas the second term represents the scaling function. The set of parameters the scaling factor depends on has been denoted by  $\mathbf{p}$ . Figure 18.6 shows the behavior of TSI in the solar cycles 21–23. The gray lines plot the daily averaged values coming from the radiometers on board satellites. The black line comes from data smoothing. Such a figure is the composite TSI time series, made by PMOD, which unifies measurements from different radiometers and histories (i.e., including degradation), and is adjusted to 1 AU. TSI, also named the solar constant, is not a constant; this quality jump—fully related to the space era—began on November 16, 1978, by means of the Hickey-Frieden (HF) radiometer on the satellite Nimbus-7. Subsequently, other high-precision satellite radiometers have measured the total solar irradiance every 2–3 min. The radiometers of the experiment VIRGO on the spacecraft SOHO have been continuing to monitor the Sun. French microsatellite Picard and NASA’s large Solar Dynamics Observatory (SDO, under the Living-with-a-Star program) were launched for new long high-accuracy and high-resolution campaigns of solar radiation



18.6 (a) Total solar irradiance (TSI, adjusted at 1 AU), over the solar cycles 21 to 23, and the new cycle 24 up to February 2013. The *gray lines* are the composite daily averaged values from many satellite observations. The *solid black curve* represents data smoothing. Note that the cycle amplitudes are lower than 1 W/m<sup>2</sup>. Space-borne data of TSI show that the “solar constant” is not constant. (Courtesy of PMOD, World Radiation Center, Switzerland). (b) Recent TSI measurements, in the 2003–2014 period, from the instrument Total Irradiance Monitor (TIM) onboard NASA’s spacecraft named Solar Radiation and Climate Experiment (SORCE), according to [7] (Courtesy of the American Geophysical Union)



18.6 (continued)

measurements for better understanding the complex solar activity cycle. Forecasting TSI over the next years is a difficult task indeed. However, time series such as those ones plotted in Fig. 18.6a, and the new models of the upper solar layers—where the solar variable magnetic field plays a prime role—may greatly help solar-physics scientists in this job. An excellent review of these important topics can be found in [4].

In the models of Earth climate, a TSI value of  $1,365.4 \pm 1.3 \text{ W}/\text{m}^2$  is standard. However, according to Kopp and Lean [7], recent measurements from the instrument Total Irradiance Monitor (TIM) onboard NASA's spacecraft named Solar Radiation and Climate Experiment (SORCE), show a TSI mean value of  $1,360.8 \pm 0.5 \text{ W}/\text{m}^2$ . This discrepancy ( $-4.6 \text{ W}/\text{m}^2$ ) is remarkably high not only for the strong implications on Earth climate (a huge problem nowadays), but also for accurate solar-photon sailing trajectories.

Nevertheless, in this book, we will go on referring to  $1,366 \text{ W}/\text{m}^2$  as the mean value of TSI over three solar cycles (21–23), also because, in literature, other time series (coming from other satellite instruments) regarding TSI continue to be endorsed.

For a sailcraft, variable TSI perturbs trajectory with respect to the assumed TSI-constant profile. The closer one goes to the Sun, the higher is the TSI impact. If one swings by the Sun, the trajectory arcs approaching the Sun may extend from some weeks to a few

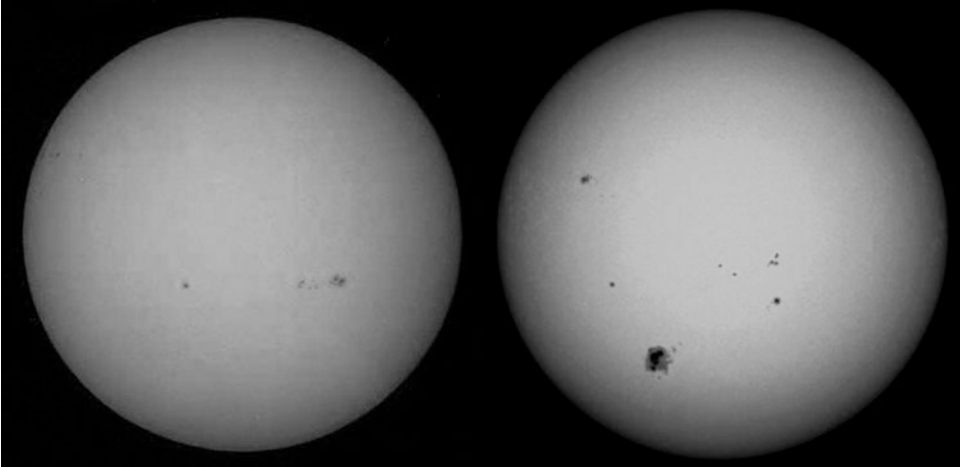
months; since there are daily TSI fluctuations, even of 3–4 W/m<sup>2</sup>, the outbound trajectory arc profile changes with respect to that with no TSI change, depending on the flyby perihelion value. This should apply in particular to the velocity direction. If the sailcraft deviates of 1 arc-minute at 1 AU, this translates in a miss distance of 1.75 million km at 40 AU. If one is trying to fly by Pluto or another object of the Kuiper belt, this error could mean the partial failure of the mission. One may object that deviations like this one (or even greater) could be corrected. However, a sailcraft receding from the Sun after a flyby is endowed with very high speed; it could take less than 2 weeks to pass Earth orbit, depending on perihelion and lightness number values. In other words, time for correction is short while the solar pressure decreases rapidly. This is only one of the several trajectory error sources influencing the trajectory of a sailcraft after a solar flyby. Besides the obvious attitude control uncertainties, we have to know how the space environment changes the thermo-optical properties of the sail's reflective and emissive films. Thrust acceleration and sail temperature depend on these properties, as we shall see in Chap. 19.

Greatly affected by variable TSI are the planetary rendezvous missions; the case for Mars has been analyzed recently [5, 6]. In any case, as solar sailing is a continuous photon propulsion mode, the irradiance from the external source(s) has to be modeled accurately for any mission. This means that when a mission design is performed, one should do a sensitivity analysis, also to address our ignorance in predicting TSI in future years. Another potential question regarding TSI is its claimed isotropy. Now, we have no long-period measurements of TSI at high heliographic latitudes. The time series of Fig. 18.6 are measurements substantially on the ecliptic, namely between  $-7.25^\circ$  and  $7.25^\circ$  with respect to the solar equator.

From studies in recent years, most of the TSI fluctuations appear to be explained by the change of luminosity in sunspots and faculae. With respect to the mean photosphere temperature, faculae are brighter and sunspots are darker. Thus, when the number of sunspots augments, the solar irradiance increases. One should note that the actual explanation of this fact is much more complicated [4].

Now let us discuss the scaling factor in Eq. (18.2). We know that a general point-like source of natural light emits spherical waves. As a result, if we observe the Sun far enough, we can write  $f(R, \mathbf{p}) = 1/R^2$  (where  $R$  is expressed in AU), namely, the scaling factor depends on the distance. What happens if the sail is sufficiently close to the Sun? We have two combined effects.

The *first* consists of a reduction of the solar irradiance with respect to the  $1/R^2$  law caused by the finite size of the Sun as observed from the sailcraft at a distance  $R$ . As a point of fact, each elementary area of the Sun casts its light onto the sail according to the area-sail direction. Even assuming that the Sun radiance is uniform (actually, it is not so), there is a spread of the radiation impinging on the sail. This reduces the solar pressure compared to the inverse-square law. In 1989, C.R. McInnes and J.C. Brown published  $f(R, \mathbf{p})$  for a perfectly reflecting at-rest flat sail oriented radially. In 1994, author Vulpetti calculated the effect on an arbitrary-oriented moving flat sail. Although the general solution is in closed form, it is notably complicated, and its proof is quite beyond the scope of this book. The former solution is a particular case of the latter one. The main feature of such irradiance reduction is that the deviation from the ideal  $R^{-2}$  law is negligible above 0.1 AU



18.7 Pictures of the solar photosphere showing sunspots and the limb-darkening effect (Courtesy of NASA)

(or about 21.5 solar radii). In particular, at 0.2 AU, such deviation is also lower than the irradiance reduction caused by the sunlight aberration on the sail. The *second* reduction in solar pressure can be seen by Fig. 18.7, showing two images of the photosphere in the visible band. One can immediately note that the observed solar radiance is not uniform over the solar disk. In particular,

1. The solar brightness decreases from the center to the disk edge or the limb;
2. Radiation tends to redden as the observer progressively looks toward the limb.

The overall phenomenon is referred as *limb darkening* and addresses the solar photosphere as a whole. As a point of fact, as the Sun is not uniform in its properties, in particular, temperature is height-dependent; however, for a number of emission spectral lines one may observe the opposite of the above points, i.e. limb brightening. The contribution of such lines to the effective TSI is negligible for propulsion purposes.

Describing limb darkening quantitatively is not a simple task, as the local and general properties of the external layers of the Sun are quite complicated. However, if one assumes thermodynamic equilibrium and solar emissivity constant over the whole electromagnetic spectrum, the so-called graybody approximation, one can get a particularly simple expression of the total radiance as function of the observer's zenithal angle as follows:

$$L(\theta) = L(0) \frac{3 \cos \theta + 2}{5} = \langle L \rangle \frac{3 \cos \theta + 2}{4} \quad (18.3)$$

where  $L(0)$  denotes the total radiance measured along the line of sight, and  $\langle L \rangle = 20.09 \text{ MW}/(\text{m}^2 \text{ sr})$  is the mean solar radiance. There are other more accurate models of limb



darkening. For instance, in recording images of the photosphere via special solar telescopes such as the solar bolometric imagers, the following model is used for limb darkening:

$$L(\theta) = L(0) \left( a_0 + a_1 \cos \theta + a_2 \cos^2 \theta + \dots \right) \quad (18.4)$$

where the actual number of terms is found via regression analysis.

With regard to the combined effect from finite size and limb darkening onto a general-attitude sail, some simplified formulas can be found in Chap. 4 of NASA/CR 2002-211730, June 2002, which can be downloaded from <http://www.giovannivulpetti.it/>.

When a deployed sailcraft orbits Earth for weeks or months, depending on its lightness number, its trajectory is further perturbed by the radiation emitted from Earth. Also, if ever a sail-based transportation system were operational back and forth between the L1 and L2 points close to the Moon, then the sail motion would be perturbed by the lunar radiance. In both these cases, irradiance on the sail depends also on the changing Earth/Moon phases the sailcraft sees along its orbit. In the much more complicated case of sailcraft orbiting Earth at low altitude, one should take into account global cloud coverage, and the thermal emission from much different sources such as continents and oceans. If a sailcraft spirals for long time, the different components (which can be calculated as function of time) of the irradiance should be averaged; but this task should be accomplished after the basic thrust validation in a real flight.

As a simple exercise, we can compute a rough approximation of the Earth-caused irradiance on a sail at the geostationary altitude:

1. Let us consider the zenith emission via Earth's cloud- and aerosol-free atmosphere approximation. Earth surface, as a whole, may be assumed to be a blackbody emitter at 288 K (its radiance peak, at 10  $\mu\text{m}$ , lies in the infrared region). In the near and thermal infrared regions, combining radiance and transmittance gives an interesting result: although the atmosphere transmission exhibits a complex "indented" behavior and swings many times between almost zero (full opacity) and almost 1 (full transparency), nevertheless the only range with appreciable energy emission to the outer space is 8–13  $\mu\text{m}$ . Such a window encompasses 31.2 % of the total surface emission, whereas we can assume roughly 60 % of mean atmospheric transmittance. Thus, if the sail is at a distance  $r$  from the Earth barycenter ( $r=6.61$  earth radii in this example), the thermal irradiance on the sail amounts to

$$I_{\text{IF}} \cong \sigma T_{\text{earth}}^4 \xi_{8-13} t_{\text{IF}} / r^2 = 1.67 \text{ W / m}^2 \quad (18.5)$$

where  $\sigma$ ,  $\xi_{8-13}$ , and  $t_{\text{IF}}$  denote the Stefan-Boltzmann constant, the power fraction emitted in the 8 to 13- $\mu\text{m}$  range, and the mean atmospheric transparency in the same range, respectively. Expression 18.5 neglects the emissions from the different layers of the atmosphere and their related absorptions before exiting the full atmosphere.

2. Let us turn to the visible and near-infrared light (V-NIF or the 0.4 to 4- $\mu\text{m}$  range) originating from the Sun and reflected by Earth. Although things are very complicated, we can use the observed quantity known as the *planetary albedo*. Let us summarize. *Bond albedo* is defined as the total energy reflected from an object on which solar light impinges. If the object is a planet, then one gets the planetary albedo. For Earth, sunlight reflection depends strongly on water, snow/ice, vegetation, desert, clouds, human settlements, and so forth. In addition, Earth's albedo changes with latitude and regional mean surface temperatures (that affect the snow/ice extensions). When Earth's albedo is averaged over latitude/longitude, height from ground, and over 1 year, one gets the mean planetary albedo (here denoted by  $A_p$ ), a useful quantity indeed. The V-NIF-related irradiance onto a sail can then be approximately by

$$I_{\text{V-NIF}} \cong \frac{1}{4} A_p \xi_{0.4-4} \text{TSI} / r^2 = 2.20 \text{ W} / \text{m}^2 \quad (18.6)$$

where  $\text{TSI} = 1,366 \text{ W}/\text{m}^2$  (which is the mean value of the daily means in the solar cycles 21–23, included in Fig. 18.6),  $A_p = 0.31$ , and  $\xi_{0.4-4} = 0.91$  (the fractional solar irradiance at 1 AU in the V-NIF range); such values come from observations. The factor  $1/4$  stems from the maximum cross section on the spherical surface ratio.

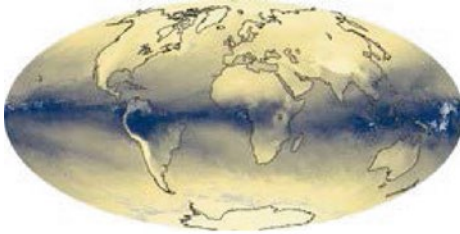
Thus, at 1 AU from the Sun, the terrestrial irradiance onto a sail at a geostationary radius amounts to  $3.9 \text{ W}/\text{m}^2$ , according to this approximate model. This is a factor 3 of the mean TSI cycle amplitudes observed since 1978 (Fig. 18.6).

We have to note that the inverse-square law used in Eqs. (18.5) and (18.6) is not fully correct. For shorter distances, the finite-size of Earth intervenes heavily in the computation of the irradiance. The full calculation is considerably more complicated than the solar case; as a matter of fact, as the sail draws closer to Earth, it can “distinguish” the various regions (including the atmosphere) of the planet with their own radiative characteristics. The changing attitude of a sailcraft orbiting the Earth entails that, alternatively, the front-side, the backside, or both sides of the sail are irradiated in complicated configurations. For a real sailcraft to be operational around our planet, one may test whether the full irradiation model is sufficiently correct, and how to improve it via the orbit determination process. Figure 18.8 shows some climatological quantities of our globe averaged in April 2014. They all affect the net radiation from the various zones. The reader can, even at a glance, realize how complicated the radiation from Earth's surface and atmosphere may be.

Finally, let us note that the solar irradiance changes according to Earth's orbit radius. As the osculating Earth orbit has a mean eccentricity of 0.0167, irradiance at the top of Earth's atmosphere varies from 1,321 to 1,413  $\text{W}/\text{m}^2$ . Such change affects Eqs. (18.5) and (18.6) the same way; as a point of fact,  $\sigma T_{\text{earth}}^4$  is proportional to TSI.

We have shown how delicate the matter of computing the irradiance on the sail area. We note again that this is the amount of radiation received by the sail *before* it interacts with photons. Chapter 19 describes the interaction in a simplified way.

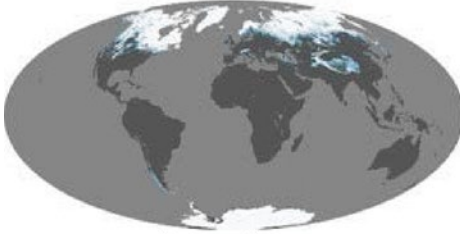
**Acknowledgments** We thank Dr. Robert F. Cahalan, head of the Climate & Radiation Branch of NASA's Goddard Space Flight Center, for his *Mathematica* notebook *SolarIrr-3.nb* on solar and terrestrial irradi-



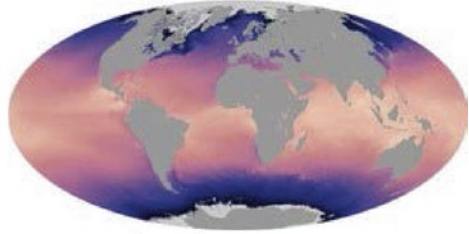
Water Vapor



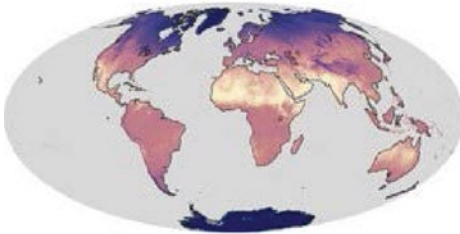
Clouds



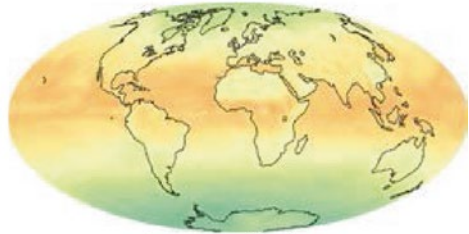
Snow Cover



Sea Temperature



Land Temperature



Net Radiation

18.8 Some meteorological/climatological quantities throughout an Earth surface map in April 2014 (Courtesy of NASA)

ances, on which we based Figs. 18.2, 18.4, and 18.5. Special credit goes to Physikalisch-Meteorologisches Observatorium, Davos, Switzerland, designated to serve as a world radiation center since 1971, for the composite TSI time series, shown in Fig. 18.6.

## FURTHER READING

<http://climate.gsfc.nasa.gov/>.

<http://www.pmodwrc.ch/>.

<http://umbra.nascom.nasa.gov/sdac.html>; <http://sohowww.nascom.nasa.gov/>.

[http://www.gigahertz-optik.com/database\\_en/html/applications-tutorials/](http://www.gigahertz-optik.com/database_en/html/applications-tutorials/).

<http://www.optics.arizona.edu/Palmer/rpfaq/rpfaq.htm>.

<http://www.solarmonitor.org/index.php>.  
<http://www.albedoarts.net/Define.html>

## **REFERENCES**

1. J. P. Rozelot (Ed.), *Solar and Heliospheric Origins of Space Weather Phenomena*, Lecture Notes in Physics Series, Springer-Verlag Berlin Heidelberg, 2006(recommended for the graduate student)
2. J. M. Palmer, B. G. Grant., *The Art of Radiometry*, SPIE Press Monograph, PM184, December **2009**
3. G. Vulpetti, *Fast Solar Sailing – Astrodynamics of Special Sailcraft Trajectories*, Space Technology Library, Springer, August **2012**
4. V. Domingo, I. Ermolli, P. Fox, C. Frohlich, M. Haberreiter, N. Krivova, G. Kopp, W. Schmutz, S. K. Solanki, H. C. Spruit, Y. Unruh, A. Vogler, *Solar Surface Magnetism and Irradiance on Time Scales from Days to the 11-Year Cycle*, Space Science Review,**2009**
5. G. Vulpetti, *Effect of the total solar irradiance variations on solar-sail low eccentricity orbits*, *Acta Astronautica*, Vol. 67, No. 1-2, July/August **2010**
6. G. Vulpetti, *Total solar irradiance fluctuation effects on sailcraft-Mars rendezvous*, *Acta Astronautica*, Vol. 68, No. 5-6, March/April **2011**
7. G. Vulpetti, *Impact of Total Solar Irradiance Fluctuations on Solar-Sail Mission Design*, *SciTopics*, November **2010** (an overview of the problem).
8. G. Kopp and J. L. Lean, *A new, lower value of total solar irradiance: Evidence and climate significance*, *Geophysical Research Letters*, Vol. 38, L01706, doi:[10.1029/2010GL045777](https://doi.org/10.1029/2010GL045777), **2011**

# 19

## Modeling Thrust from Electromagnetic Radiation Pressure

In Chap. 18, we saw what type of light the Sun and Earth cast into space, each body with its own characteristics. In particular, we emphasized that 38 years of high-precision measurements from satellites have revealed that the total solar irradiance fluctuates, and which parts of its spectrum can affect a solar sail significantly. In practice, the wavelength range from 100 nm to 20  $\mu\text{m}$  contains all solar energy flux in which we are interested.

### MAIN SYMBOLS AND ACRONYMS

In this chapter, capital and lower case **bold** letters denote vectors in the usual three-dimensional space. Italic and Greek letters denote scalars (unless otherwise specified or plain from the context).

EHOF	extended heliocentric orbital frame, also denoted by SOF
HIF	heliocentric inertial frame
SB	Sun's barycenter
SSB	solar-system barycenter
SOF	sailcraft orbital frame, also denoted by EHOF
TAI	international atomic time
TT	terrestrial time
UTC	coordinated universal time
$a$	sailfront-side total absorptance
$r_{\text{spec}}$	sailfront-side specular reflectance
$r_{\text{diff}}$	sailfront-side diffuse reflectance
$l$	sailcraft's lightness number
<b>h</b>	direction of the Z-axis of EHOF or SOF
<b>n</b>	sail's orientation unit vector (in the opposite semispace containing the sunlight beam), usually resolved in SOF
<b>r</b>	radial direction outwards, or <b>R/R</b>
<b>u</b>	direction of the sunlight incident on sail, usually resolved in SOF

$t$	coordinate time
$\varepsilon_x$	hemispherical emittance of the sail side ‘x’
$\sigma$	sailcraft sail loading
$\sigma_C$	critical sail loading
$\tau$	thrust efficiency
$\mathbf{A}^F$	thrust acceleration resolved in frame ‘F’
$B$	sailing scalar acceleration experienced by a blackbody-sail
$GM_\odot$	Sun’s gravitational constant
$H$	sailcraft invariant, or $\mathbf{H} \cdot \mathbf{h}$
$\mathbf{H}$	sailcraft’s orbital angular momentum
$\mathbf{L}$	sailcraft’s lightness vector
$\mathbf{R}$	vector position
$R$	Sun-sailcraft distance
$S$	sail area
$T$	sail equilibrium temperature
$T_{\text{eph}}$	JPL-defined ephemeris time
$\mathbf{V}$	vector velocity

## FRAMES OF REFERENCE

It is time to address the problem of the interaction of the solar photons with sail materials. To keep things simple but meaningful, we use a model where the sail’s macroscopic behavior is highlighted. In other words, we model the vector thrust acceleration induced by the solar photons impinging onto the sail. What matters is the (thrust) acceleration sensed onboard,<sup>1</sup> and its components with respect to some sailcraft-centered reference frame. Once this vector acceleration is established, one can transform it into the reference frame where the spacecraft motion is described. (Actually, this is a general principle for computing the trajectories of any powered spacecraft.)

We need two reference frames here: the heliocentric inertial frame (HIF), and the sailcraft orbital frame (SOF). The HIF has its origin in the Sun’s barycenter (SB). To define HIF (and other reference frames), we need a reference epoch, which is January 1, 2000, 12:00:00 Terrestrial Time (TT). This date can be expressed equivalently as January 1, 2000, 11:59:27.816 International Atomic Time (TAI), or January 1, 2000, 11:58:55.816 Coordinated Universal Time (UTC), namely, the everyday time scale. Normally, such date is denoted by either J2000.0 or J2000. TT<sup>2</sup> may be thought of as an ideal form of TAI. TT and TAI differ only by an offset:  $TT = TAI + 32.184 \text{ s}$ . This bias is inessential for our aims here.

Let us choose the HIF having the mean ecliptic and equinox at J2000 as its reference plane and its x-axis, respectively. The y-axis and z-axis follow consequently. With respect to HIF, let  $\mathbf{R}$  and  $\mathbf{V}$  denote the sailcraft’s instantaneous vector position and velocity, respectively.

<sup>1</sup> By the Principle of Equivalence, only non-gravitational acceleration (like thrust) or gravity-gradient acceleration (e.g. microgravity) can be sensed in a free-falling finite body.

<sup>2</sup> Terrestrial Time is currently defined as a *coordinate* time in the relativistic sense; the graduate (and panic-free) student may look up the technical publications of IERS at <http://www.iers.org> (also, see *Note-2* below) about time and reference frames.

*Note 1:* Actually, a frame centered on SB cannot be inertial in the strict sense, since the Sun slowly revolves about the barycenter of the solar system (SSB). The SB–SSB distance ranges from 0 to about 2 solar radii (1 solar-radius=696,000 km), with a mean value slightly more than 1 solar radius. This variable shift is induced by the planets' perturbative accelerations to the Sun, mainly by Jupiter. If one wants to describe the motion of a celestial or artificial body with respect to HIF, then the original equations with respect to SSB-centered reference frame have to be transformed according to Celestial Mechanics.

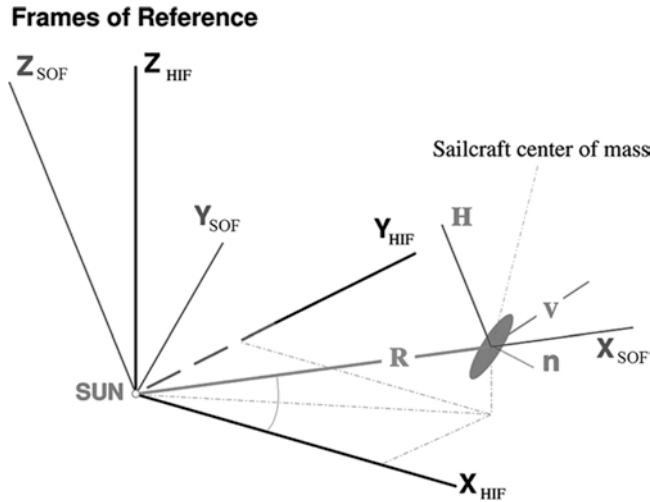
*Note 2:* The time scales that one uses either in everyday life or for scientific purposes are very important and should not be undervalued. The attentive reader is invited to begin with an introduction to this complex area of scientific investigation by visiting the web site <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Time> (and the many references therein). Then, for in-depth scientific understanding, we recommend <http://www.iers.org/>, <http://physics.nist.gov/Genint/Time/time.html>, and <http://tycho.usno.navy.mil/>. Another important time scale is the Ephemeris Time ( $T_{\text{eph}}$ ) used by Jet Propulsion Laboratory for computing and distributing high-precision orbital elements of the various planets and satellites. The International Astronomical Union (IAU) has established that  $T_{\text{eph}}$  is quite compliant with the International Celestial Reference Frame, which is a standard frame for general scientific activity, and therefore also for trajectories in the solar system.

Let us define SOF, also called the Extended Heliocentric Orbital Frame (EHOF) if classical dynamics is considered (like the current case). This is a spacecraft-centered frame. We have to distinguish three cases:

1. If the sailcraft flight begins with a *direct* (or counterclockwise) motion, as observed in HIF, then the x-axis is determined by the unit vector  $\mathbf{r}=\mathbf{R}/R$ , whereas the reference plane is given by the plane determined by  $\mathbf{R}$  and  $\mathbf{V}$  (assumed nonparallel to one another). The z-axis is given by the direction  $\mathbf{h}$  of the sailcraft's orbital angular momentum per unit mass, or  $\mathbf{H}=\mathbf{R}\times\mathbf{V}$ , where  $\times$  denotes the usual cross product of two three-dimensional vectors.
2. If the sailcraft flight begins with a *retrograde* (or clockwise) motion, as observed in HIF, then the x-axis is the same as in case 1, but the z-axis is oriented *opposite* to  $\mathbf{H}$  and, consequently, the y-axis is in the semi-plane  $(\mathbf{R}, -\mathbf{V})$ .
3. If  $\mathbf{H}=0$  at some instant  $t^*$ , then the direction of the z-axis is the limit of the z-axis of either case (1) or (2) as time  $t$  approaches the value  $t^*$ . This may be one of the values of a *finite* set of instants in a general sailcraft trajectory where the motion reverses at each  $t^*$  value. If the orbital angular momentum vanishes for a finite interval of time, then a simple (intuitive) frame can be defined for describing such a rectilinear trajectory.

This definition of SOF, which extends the classical concept of orbital frame, reflects the fact that a general sailcraft trajectory may be composed of direct and retrograde arcs separated by at least one point where the orbital angular momentum either vanishes in magnitude ( $H=0$ ) or in its Z-component ( $H_z=0$ ) only. It is possible to show that SOF always evolves *smoothly* with respect to HIF. Therefore, there exists a continuous time-variable orthogonal matrix, which transforms SOF vectors into HIF vectors.

Figure 19.1 sketches both reference frames (SOF is counterclockwise like HIF) together with the position, velocity, and angular momentum of a sailcraft.



19.1 HIF and SOF frames of reference (see text)

Because we are dealing with classical (i.e., nonrelativistic) dynamics, HIF and SOF are sufficient to characterize the interplanetary sailcraft motion. In this framework, HIF and SOF can share the same time scale, which we assume to be the above-mentioned  $T_{\text{eph}}$ . If one likes to consider planetary gravitational perturbations in the sailcraft trajectory computation, adopting this time scale simplifies the utilization of data coming from the JPL ephemeris files.

### PHENOMENA TRANSFERRING MOMENTUM

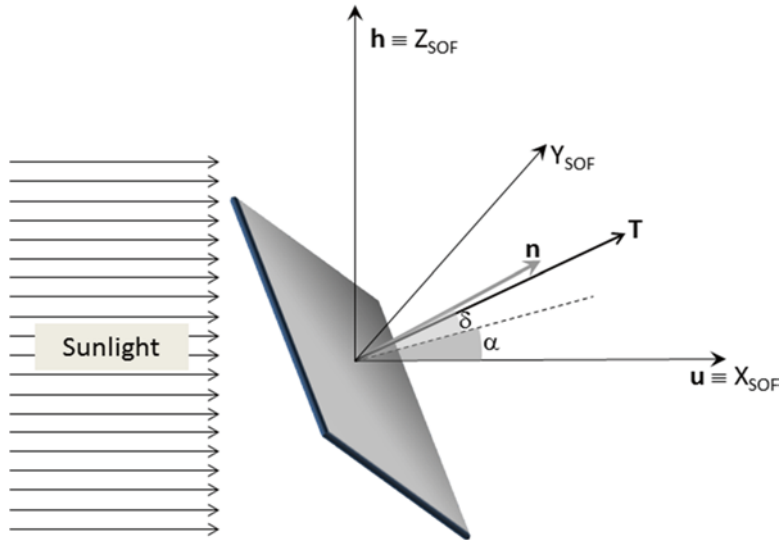
Now we have the complete (i.e., including time scale) reference frames and can model the vector thrust. Figure 19.2 shows a squared flat sail arbitrarily oriented in SOF. We are choosing the orientation unit vector  $\mathbf{n}$  (orthogonal to the sail) contained in the semispace opposite to the reflective layer. In such semispace,  $\mathbf{n}$  can be resolved in SOF via two angles, the azimuth  $\alpha$ , and the elevation  $\delta$ , defined quite similarly to longitude and latitude. Therefore:

$$\mathbf{n}^T \equiv (n_x, n_y, n_x) = (\cos \alpha \cos \delta, \sin \alpha \cos \delta, \sin \delta) \quad (19.1)$$

One should not confuse this standard pair (i.e. azimuth and elevation) with another pair of angles often employed in literature for sail attitude, namely, the cone and clock angles, or the classical astronomical pair (i.e. right ascension and declination).

We can proceed with describing the effects of the interaction between photons and sail. In general, the solar-sail materials exhibit specular reflection, diffuse reflection, and absorption of sunlight. We will not choose material types and thicknesses that allow sunlight to be transmitted. Light may be partially transmitted through metals if their thickness





**19.2** Scheme of the sail orientation in SOF. Note that thrust is not along the sail's normal line, but always in the plane angle delimited by the sail axis  $\mathbf{n}$  and the sunlight direction  $\mathbf{u}$  (or the direction of  $\mathbf{X}_{\text{SOF}}$ ). When sail axis is aligned with sunlight, all three directions coincide (if the aberration of light is neglected)

is sufficiently small, but no thrust would be produced by such photons if the plastic substrate were transparent (and sufficiently smooth). Reflection, diffusion, and absorption of photons are complex phenomena indeed, which can be described via the full electromagnetic theory or, even more generally, quantum physics. Here, we will use a very simplified picture (but not in contrast to the mentioned theories), stressing those macroscopic properties of interest in solar sailing.

*Specularly reflected* light causes a net force normal to the sail surface and oriented as  $\mathbf{n}$ . This is very easy to check in SOF by using the momentum conservation law applied to photons and sail (which is at rest here) just before and after the interaction.

Then, let us consider *absorption*. Because absorbed photons are not re-emitted, they transfer their momentum to the sail body in the same direction of incidence. In SOF, such direction is simply the unit vector  $\mathbf{u}^{\text{T}} \equiv (1 \ 0 \ 0)$ , namely, the instantaneous radial direction of sunlight. However, the energy absorbed by the sail's reflective layer is subsequently emitted by both sail sides. This emission not only determines the sail's mean temperature, but also induces a further net thrust. For understanding how, we have to note that each side emits in its semispace ( $2\pi$  sr): the light emitted in any solid elementary angle causes recoil momentum. Such momenta have to be summed to get the total momentum acting on the body. If the considered surface side were Lambertian, then the radiance would be uniform (by definition), i.e. angle independent, and the total recoil momentum rate would be directed along the direction normal to the opposite side. Its magnitude would be exactly two thirds of the momentum rate that would result if the side had the same radiant exitance (Chap. 18) turned into a directional beam of light. A real surface has an emission/diffusion

coefficient, say,  $\chi$  different from two thirds, in general. Combining the net effect from both sail sides, the net thrust results to be proportional to the absorbed power and to the following dimensionless factor:

$$\kappa \equiv \frac{\chi_f \varepsilon_f(T) - \chi_b \varepsilon_b(T)}{\varepsilon_f(T) + \varepsilon_b(T)} \quad (19.2)$$

where  $\varepsilon$  denotes the temperature-dependent emittance of the surface and  $T$  is the sail temperature. The subscripts refer to the frontside and backside of the sail. Note that whereas  $\chi_f$  and  $\chi_b$  may be almost equal to one another, the emissive layer of the sail exhibits an emittance much higher than the reflective layer's, just for lessening  $T$  drastically. Consequently,  $\kappa$  is negative in general; namely, this thrust contribution is directed along  $-\mathbf{n}$ .

Now, let us consider the light *diffused* by the reflective layer. When a beam of light impinges onto a real surface at some given angle, the reflection consists of two parts: one is the direct or specular reflection, and the other one is the diffuse reflection.<sup>3</sup> A surface never is perfectly smooth and may be pictured as a random sequence of very small hills and valleys with respect to the mean surface level. On the reflective layer, such irregularities spread the re-emitted light over the hemisphere; the recoil momentum distribution is characterized by the coefficient  $\chi_f$ , which generally indicates a non-uniform reflected radiance. For simplicity, one generally assumes that the net momentum rate has azimuthal symmetry, so that this thrust component is along  $\mathbf{n}$ . Surface roughness reduces the thrust magnitude with respect to what is expected from a full specular reflection.

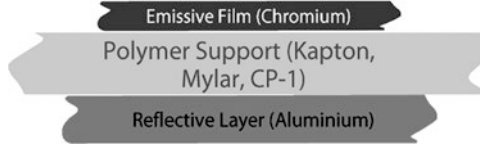
From a microscopic viewpoint, *diffuse* reflection can be viewed as taking place in two steps. First, photons are absorbed by the surface atoms/molecules. Second, according to the characteristic times of the atoms/molecules, photons may be re-emitted along random directions, even if all incident photons have the same direction; this step has been characterized above. The first step transfers momentum to the sail parallel to the incidence direction, which is represented by  $\mathbf{u}$  in SOF, just like the absorption. When a high number of photons with wavelength of the order of or higher than the (opaque-)surface roughness is involved, then their overall response is just as classical electro-magnetic waves do: via optical diffraction.

All in all, we can see that a sunlight beam impinging on a reflective sail produces a thrust consisting of two main components: the more intense is directed along  $\mathbf{n}$ , and the other one is directed along  $\mathbf{u}$ . (Equivalently, one could split the total thrust in a component parallel to  $\mathbf{n}$  and another one along the sail surface. However,  $\mathbf{n}$  and  $\mathbf{u}$  both have a direct physical meaning.) This picture is not complete.

A solar-photon sail curves under the pressure of light. Its surface form is complicated by the presence of the booms and various loading lines, while the overall shape depends also on the incident angle of sunlight. Calculating all the phenomena causing thrust to a

---

<sup>3</sup> Strictly speaking, the radiometric quantity ( $r_{\text{diff}}$ ) here associated to diffuse reflection is the *total directional-hemispherical reflectance* [6]. ‘Total’ refers to the whole incident bandwidth; ‘directional’ means that the incident waves are not spread in space (i.e. the source is observed as point-like), whereas ‘hemispherical’ tells us that the diffuse light spreads in  $2\pi$  steradian (in particular, it lies in the incident-light semisphere of the reflecting surface).



**19.3** A typical sail’s multilayer arrangement: Aluminium and chromium are deposited on a plastic substrate, which may consist of Kapton, CP-1, or Mylar for the solar-sail missions currently under investigation at NASA and JAXA

sailcraft is a complicated—but necessary—task. Often in the literature of solar sailing, such complication has been neglected, and the sail has been assumed as an ideal mirror, too far from reality indeed. Sometimes, much attention (correctly) has been done to the resulting shape of a sail, for example, by using the finite-element method and a tensor-based algorithm to integrate the elemental thrust acting of an infinitesimal element of the sail surface. Whatever the sail shape may be, such elemental surface can be considered flat; different elemental surfaces have different orientations, in general.

The basic problem remains the physical model of thrust. As a point of fact, if one uses a too simplified physical model, then the integrated thrust over an even precisely calculated surface will result in rough sailcraft acceleration.

Compliantly with the introductory purposes of this part of the book, we now assume that the sail area is not too large and almost wrinkle-free, i.e. the sail is supposed to be sufficiently flat. These assumptions regard the shape of the sail. From a physical viewpoint, here we neglect the various polarization contributions to thrust<sup>4</sup> because of their complexity in this introductory chapter. Technically speaking, we report the thrust acceleration equation for a flat sail according to scalar scattering theory without proof (what was said previously is sufficient to check the main aspects of the equation). We suppose that the sail materials configuration is like that sketched in Fig. 19.3, namely, a three-layer film. If the sail is sufficiently far from the Sun ( $R > 0.1$  AU, in practice), then in SOF we get:

$$\mathbf{A}^{\text{SOF}} = g_{\odot} \mathbf{L} = \left( \frac{GM_{\odot}}{R^2} \right) \left( \frac{1}{2} \frac{\sigma_c}{\sigma} \right) n_x \left[ (2r_{\text{spec}} n_x + \chi_f r_{\text{diff}} + \kappa a) \mathbf{n} + (a + r_{\text{diff}}) \mathbf{u} \right] \equiv \mathbf{Bb} \quad (19.3a)$$

$$\mathbf{L} = \left( \frac{1}{2} \frac{\sigma_c}{\sigma} \right) n_x \left[ (2r_{\text{spec}} n_x + \chi_f r_{\text{diff}} + \kappa a) \mathbf{n} + (a + r_{\text{diff}}) \mathbf{u} \right] \quad (19.3b)$$

where we have set

---

<sup>4</sup> Although sunlight is incoherent, the scattering of light from a metal surface depends also on each polarization modes, e.g. the parallel-to-parallel mode, of light. It is expected that the overall effect of such modes on thrust may change its direction and magnitude, as analyzed in [Vulpetti 2012 and 2014].

$$\begin{aligned}
 B &\equiv \frac{GM_{\odot}}{R^2} \frac{1}{2} \frac{\sigma_c}{\sigma} n_x \\
 \sigma_c &\equiv 2 \frac{I_{1\text{AU}}}{c g_{1\text{AU}}} \cong 1.5368 \text{ g/m}^2 \left( I_{1\text{AU}} = 1366 \text{ W/m}^2 \right) \\
 \sigma &\equiv m/S
 \end{aligned} \tag{19.4}$$

where  $\mathbf{L} = (l_x \ l_y \ l_z)^T$  denotes the *lightness vector*, namely, the thrust acceleration normalized to the local solar gravitational acceleration ( $g_{\odot}$ ) and *resolved* in the orbital reference frame. Note that, in general,  $\mathbf{b}$  is not a unit vector because of Eq. (19.5) (see below). On the right side of Eq. (19.3a), the first parentheses contain the gravitational acceleration magnitude to be multiplied by the semi-ratio between the critical loading ( $\sigma_c$ ) and the actual sailcraft (sail) loading ( $\sigma$ ), namely, the ratio between the whole sailcraft mass  $m$  and the effective sail area  $S$ .

Normally, one writes  $GM_{\odot}/R^2 = g_{1\text{AU}}(\text{AU}/R)^2 = 0.005930/R^2$  [ $\text{m/s}^2$ ] with the Sun-sailcraft distance  $R$  expressed in AU. (Note that the mean solar gravity, which keeps Earth in its orbit in spite of the perturbations of the other planets, amounts to less than 6  $\text{mm/s}^2$ , that is 0.6 thousandth of the mean Earth gravity on ground.)

The quantity in braces is a dimensionless vector whose magnitude can vary in the interval  $[0, 2]$ . The set  $\{r_{\text{spec}}, r_{\text{diff}}, a\}$  represents appropriate mean values of the specular reflectance, diffuse reflectance, and absorptance, respectively, of the sail frontside. Finally, “ $c$ ” denotes the speed of light we mentioned in the previous parts of this book.

*Note 3:* The relationship  $l\sigma - \sigma_c = 0$  is a useful identity between  $|\mathbf{L}| \equiv l$  (or the instantaneous lightness number), the sailcraft sail loading ( $\sigma$ ), and the thrust efficiency ( $\tau$ ), that is, the ratio of the actual thrust on the thrust of at-rest ideal sail orthogonal to sunlight.

The components of  $\mathbf{L}$  can be named the *radial* (lightness) number, the *transversal* number, and the *normal* number, respectively. The full mathematics related to  $\mathbf{L}$  is beyond the scope of this book. However, we will show below a number of properties of fundamental importance for sailcraft mission design.

## THRUST ACCELERATION FEATURES

Although some simplifications were introduced for carrying out Eq. (19.3a), however we are able to highlight many features, which the sailcraft acceleration equation exhibits. First, let us see what the term  $B$  represents. Assume that we are building a sail with the same material and properties on both sides. Additionally, this sail is supposed to behave as a blackbody, in practice. The first assumption entails  $\kappa = 0$ , while the second one implies  $a = 1$ . As a result, it is very easy to carry out

$$\mathbf{A}^{\text{SOF}} \Big|_{\text{blackbody}} = \left( \frac{GM_{\odot}}{R^2} \frac{1}{2} \frac{\sigma_c}{\sigma} n_x \right) \mathbf{u} = B \mathbf{u} = \frac{GM_{\odot}}{R^2} (l_x \ 0 \ 0)^T \tag{19.5}$$

In words,  $B$  represents the magnitude of the acceleration experienced by a *blackbody* sail receiving the irradiance  $I_{1\text{AU}} n_x / R^2$ , where  $R$  is in AU again. The magnitude of this

acceleration (which is proportional to the actual solar irradiance) depends on the sail attitude through  $n_s$ . However, its direction always is radial outward, no matter how the sail may be oriented. That restricts considerably the set of trajectories that such a sailcraft is able to run. On the other hand, a full transparent sail would produce zero acceleration since plainly  $r_{\text{spec}} = r_{\text{diff}} = a = 0$ .<sup>5</sup> Thus, we can state the basic property that a solar sail with full *controllable* thrust requires materials having  $r_{\text{spec}} + r_{\text{diff}} > 0$ . In this context, two limit cases may be distinct. If the reflectance were only diffuse (not necessarily Lambertian) with no transmission and no absorption, then one could get

$$\mathbf{A}^{\text{SOF}} \Big|_{\text{diffusion}} = B(\chi_f \mathbf{n} + \mathbf{u}) \quad (19.6)$$

If the sail were perfectly specular, then the acceleration would equal

$$\mathbf{A}^{\text{SOF}} \Big|_{\text{full-reflection}} = 2B\mathbf{n} \quad (19.7)$$

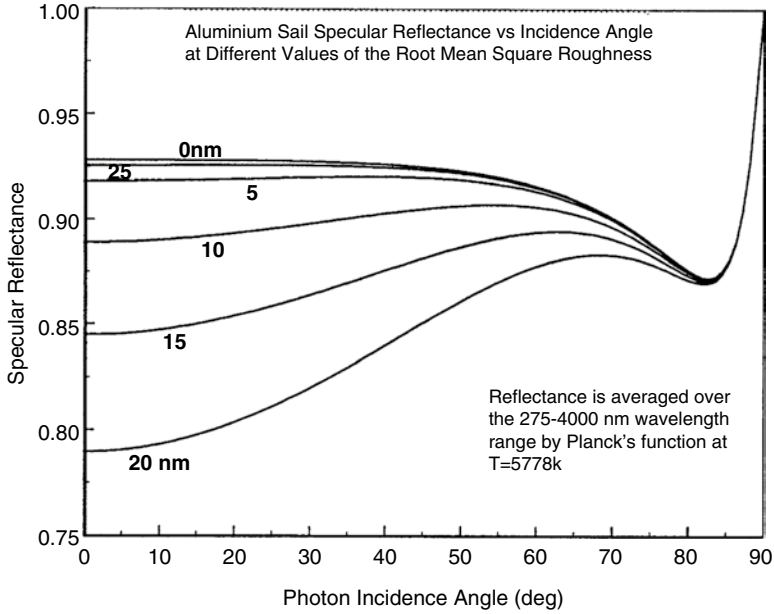
Equations (19.3)–(19.7) tell us that the direction of the thrust acceleration always lies in the plane angle  $\mathbf{n}\mathbf{u}$ , bounds included, as shown in Fig. 19.2.<sup>6</sup>

With regard to the magnitude of  $\mathbf{A}^{\text{SOF}}$ , this can be increased by decreasing  $\sigma$  and increasing the specular part of the total reflectance. In general,  $\mathbf{A}^{\text{SOF}}$  changes during a flight simply because the sail attitude has to be varied for driving the sailcraft to the target. The maximum value of  $|\mathbf{A}^{\text{SOF}}|$  at 1 AU is defined as the characteristic acceleration. Although this sole value does not determine the sailcraft trajectory class, it is often used for comparing two missions of the same class; it is a useful parameter, but one should remember that only the time-dependent vector function  $\mathbf{L}(t)$  defines completely the trajectory between the starting point and the desired target. Trajectories can be classified through the  $\mathbf{L}$ 's components exhaustively.

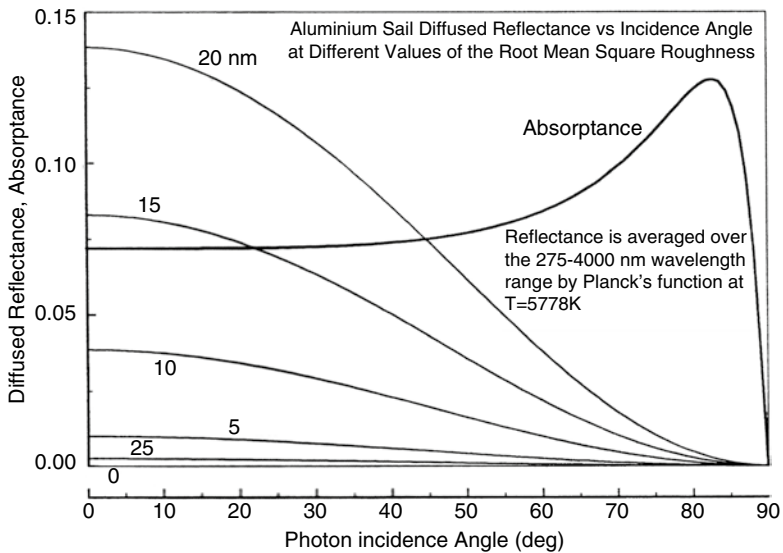
The features so far discussed focus on the main behavior of thrust. Things are less simple in reality. By using the above concepts, let us try to grasp what should happen in practice, though our model is sufficiently complicated in its own. The lightness vector components (defined above) can be obtained by varying the attitude angles  $\alpha$  and  $\delta$  (or the azimuth and the elevation, respectively, in SOF). One might be induced to think that the various lightness numbers can be found by solely inserting Eq. (19.1) into Eq. (19.3). Actually, the thermo-optical parameters of the sail's frontside and backside are not constant throughout the solar spectrum. In particular, reflectance mainly depends on wavelength and polarization of light, surface roughness, and the incidence angle of sunlight onto the reflective layer. In the case of a reflective layer of Aluminum with a thickness  $\sim 100$  nm, Figs. 19.4 and 19.5 show the *averaged* behaviors of specular reflectance, diffuse reflectance, and absorptance as a function of the incidence angle and the surface roughness—according to a scalar theory of scattering of light. Note that high roughness

<sup>5</sup> Strictly speaking, if the sail's backside is sufficiently rough, only the specular transmission causes a loss of thrust. See Sect. 6.5.1 in the author Vulpetti book (2012) for the theoretical model.

<sup>6</sup> According to the paper [1], such property should persist even when polarization is included in the model of thrust.



19.4 Thin Aluminum-film *specular* reflectance plotted as function of the sunlight incidence angle and surface roughness (From [2], Courtesy of Elsevier)



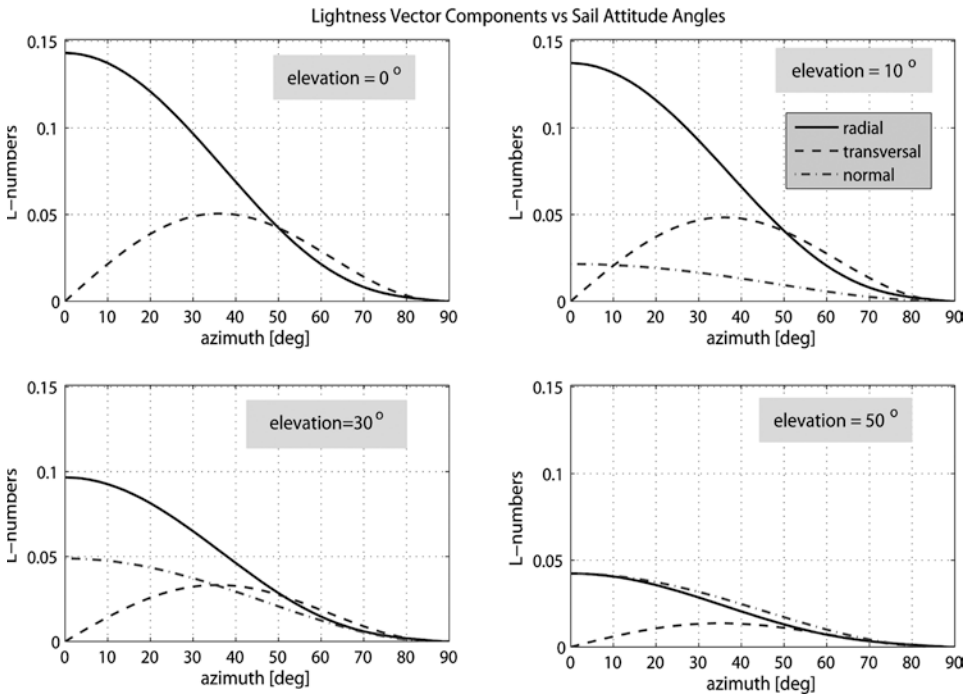
19.5 Thin Aluminum-film *diffuse* reflectance plotted as a function of the sunlight incidence angle and surface roughness. Absorptance is a function of the incidence angle (From [2], Courtesy of Elsevier)

values cause  $r_{\text{spec}}$  reduction around the normal incidence. The opposite holds for  $r_{\text{diff}}$ . With regard to the absorptance, it may be considered constant up to incidence angles of about  $35^\circ$ . Then, it increases and achieves a local maximum at  $83^\circ$ . Note that absorptance does not depend on the surface roughness in the current model of scattering of light.

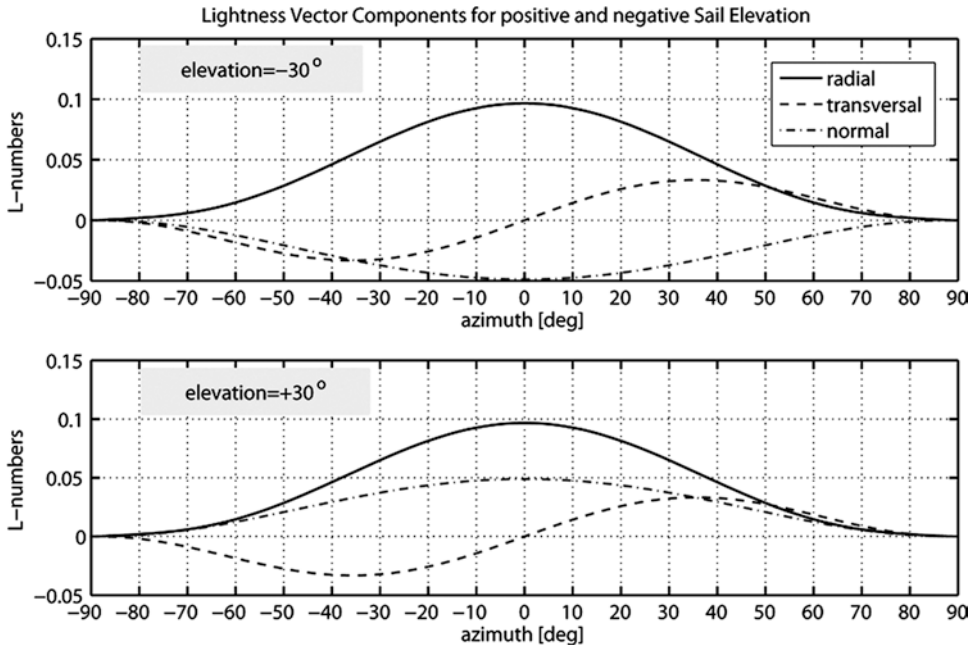
*Note 4:* In designing any sailcraft mission, theoretical models about the thermo-optical parameters of the sail sides and extended measurements should be used for calculating an accurate trajectory profile. However, all such calculations have to be repeated as soon as the mission analyst receives the profiles of the thermo-optical properties *measured on the sail to be actually flown*. This point is quite important—conceptually and practically—especially for the future high- $l$  sailcraft missions. During the flight, once the orbit determination process is activated as part of the operations at the mission control center, the necessary refinements to the thrust model can be accomplished.

**BEHAVIOR OF THE THRUST ACCELERATION COMPONENTS**

Figure 19.6 shows the lightness vector x-y-z components, which generally we name the *radial*, the *transversal*, and the *normal* lightness numbers, respectively, for a sailcraft with  $\sigma = 10 \text{ g/m}^2$  and at 1 AU from the Sun. TSI has been taken on  $1,366 \text{ W/m}^2$ , very close to the



**19.6** Components of the lightness vector for different sail attitudes. Lightness numbers are shown as function of the sail azimuth for various sail elevations. TSI has been assumed equal to  $1,366 \text{ W/m}^2$  and the sailcraft located at 1 AU from the Sun. Sailcraft sail loading was supposed to be equal to  $10 \text{ g/m}^2$ . Sail reflective-layer root mean square roughness amounts to  $20 \text{ nm}$



**19.7** Components of the lightness vector versus the full admissible range in azimuth for positive and negative elevations. The other parameters are unchanged from Fig. 19.6

average over the solar cycles 21–23. The lightness numbers are plotted versus sail azimuth between 0 and 90° for different non-negative values of sail elevation. Figure 19.7 displays  $L$ 's behavior as function of the full azimuth range for two symmetric values of elevation. The same scales have been kept in all subplots for ease of comparison. A number of interesting behaviors of the Aluminum layer can be inferred from both figures, as follows:

1. The relative shapes of the  $L$ 's components are independent of the particular  $\sigma$ -value, as expressed by Eq. (19.3).
2. The radial number always is non-negative and exhibits a bell-like shape with the maximum at  $\alpha=0$ .
3. The transversal number shows one local maximum and one local minimum, which are present independently of the sail elevation. In addition, one gets  $sign(l_y)=sign(\alpha)$ . (When  $\sigma$  goes below 2.1 g/m<sup>2</sup>, this property can be utilized for fast solar sailing.)
4. The normal number has the sign of the sail attitude elevation, namely  $sign(l_z)=sign(\delta)$ . In every cases, it looks like a wide bell with either maximum or minimum at  $\alpha=0$ .
5. Even for moderate elevation, the normal number is rather lower than the radial number; however, if elevation is sufficiently high,  $l_z > l_x$ .
6. The transversal number eventually crosses the radial one, and becomes higher; but its value is of the same order of the radial one.



7. The radial number is normally the highest one; however, all components all go to vanish at  $\alpha = \pm 90^\circ$ . This property pertains to flat sails or sails with sufficiently low temperatures. However, since the sail's substrate is of plastic material, the sail progressively billows as the sailcraft draws closer to the Sun.<sup>7</sup>

**Thrust Acceleration in the Heliocentric Inertial Frame**

The orthogonal matrix that transforms a vector, resolved in SOF, into the corresponding vector with components in HIF is given by

$$\Xi = (\mathbf{r} \mathbf{h} \times \mathbf{r} \mathbf{h}) \tag{19.8}$$

with  $\mathbf{r} = \mathbf{R}/R$ . This agrees with the SOF definition given in section “Frames of Reference”. Therefore, it is immediate to get

$$\mathbf{A}^{\text{HIF}} = \Xi \mathbf{A}^{\text{SOF}} = g_\odot (\mathbf{r} \mathbf{h} \times \mathbf{r} \mathbf{h}) \begin{pmatrix} l_x \\ l_y \\ l_z \end{pmatrix} = \frac{g_{1\text{AU}}}{R^2} (l_x \mathbf{r} + l_y \mathbf{h} \times \mathbf{r} + l_z \mathbf{h}) \tag{19.9}$$

(where  $R$  is expressed in AU). This vector has to be summed to the solar gravitational acceleration and any other perturbation acceleration vectors; altogether, they are equal to the time derivative of the sailcraft velocity.

Because of their physical meaning, we will report from the book by author Vulpetti (August 2012) some relationships for the inverse-square solar gravity. However, even in the presence of planetary perturbations, the peculiar meaning of such equations persists. One gets

$$\frac{d\mathbf{V}}{dt} = \frac{d^2\mathbf{R}}{dt^2} = \frac{GM_\odot}{R^2} [-(1-l_x)\mathbf{r} + l_y\mathbf{h} \times \mathbf{r} + l_z\mathbf{h}] \tag{19.10}$$

where all symbols have been defined above.

It is possible to prove that the solar radiation pressure on sail gives rise to two conservative fields (i.e. the solar gravity and the radial thrust) and one *non*-conservative field (i.e. the transversal thrust). Therefore, the sailcraft's energy per unit mass is expressed by

$$E = \frac{1}{2}V^2 - (1-l_x)\frac{GM_\odot}{R} \tag{19.11}$$

Important is its time derivative, which can be shown expressible as

---

<sup>7</sup> Property-7 is clear in the current model of thrust. However, the behavior of the sail thrust at sunlight's very large incidence angles depends on many complicated factors, including effects related to the surface roughness, large-scale and local curvatures.

$$\frac{dE}{dt} = \left( \frac{GM_{\odot}}{R^2} \mathbf{V} \cdot \mathbf{h} \times \mathbf{r} \right) l_y + \frac{GM_{\odot}}{R} \frac{dl_x}{dt} \quad (19.12)$$

Thus, it appears that the orbital energy of a sailcraft can be changed in one or two ways, namely, by using the transversal lightness number (e.g. by orienting the sail axis differently from the (local) radial direction) or by changing only the radial lightness number (e.g. via mass jettisoning or driving the reflectance by an applied voltage), or both. Methods for thrust maneuvering have been qualitatively discussed in Chap. 11.

Now we turn the attention to the orbital angular momentum (per unit mass) of the sailcraft, or, more precisely, its time derivative. We report three equations from Chap. 7 of [3], and then we will discuss them shortly. The first one gives the time derivative of  $\mathbf{H}$

$$\frac{d\mathbf{H}}{dt} = \mathbf{R} \times \frac{d\mathbf{V}}{dt} = \frac{GM_{\odot}}{R} (l_y \mathbf{h} - l_z \mathbf{h} \times \mathbf{r}) \quad (19.13)$$

By cross-multiplying  $\mathbf{H}$  and its derivative given by Eq. (19.13), we get

$$\mathbf{H} \times \frac{d\mathbf{H}}{dt} = \frac{GM_{\odot}}{R} H l_z \mathbf{r} \quad (19.14)$$

where the quantity  $H \equiv \mathbf{H} \cdot \mathbf{h} = RV \sin \varphi$  with  $0 \leq \varphi < 2\pi$  (defined in [3]),  $\varphi$  being the angle from  $\mathbf{R}$  to  $\mathbf{V}$  advancing in the sense of the sailcraft motion. Because of the definition of SOF (or EHOF), in a general planar trajectory the sailcraft velocity can approach the direction of  $\mathbf{R}$ , or its opposite, achieve it, and go beyond without any discontinuity. The time behavior of the invariant  $H$  obeys the following differential equation

$$\frac{d}{dt} H = \frac{GM_{\odot}}{R} l_y \quad (19.15)$$

In Eq. (19.15),  $R$  is generally time variable or may be constant. In any case, even a small value of  $l_y$  causes the simultaneous change of sailcraft's orbital energy and orbital angular momentum. If the transversal number is sufficiently negative, a sailcraft starting from the Earth orbit could flyby the Sun closely in either two ways: via a direct-motion trajectory arc or a retrograde-motion arc, giving rise to a number of literally *unusual* trajectory families with no propellant consumption.

The definition of EHOF (that extends the classical heliocentric orbital frame, which is usually named HOF), the concept of  $\mathbf{L}(t)$ , and Eqs. (19.10)–(19.15) represent the heart of the lightness vector formalism. In its full formulation, a sailcraft trajectory can be analyzed more deeply by using the geometric powerful concepts of curvature and torsion, which can be expressed in a meaningful way by means of the  $\mathbf{L}$ 's components too. It is rather difficult to carry out the many of the *new* properties of sailcraft trajectory families via the conventional formalism (i.e. one scalar characteristic acceleration and two attitude angles). Some properties may not be found simply because the conventional HOF cannot be defined at  $\mathbf{H}=0$ . There are theorems and propositions [3] about the so-called  $H$ -reversal trajectories, which are beyond the aims of this introductory chapter.

It is meaningful that young Italian researchers (from Pisa University and Rome University ‘La Sapienza’) and Chinese researchers (from Tsinghua University) found out additional intriguing features of the  $H$ -reversal trajectories, and suggested very interesting mission concepts. The interested reader can find many other references in the two papers cited below [4, 5]. Another interesting application of the  $H$ -reversal mode would be the rendezvous with retrograde-motion celestial bodies, e.g. a returning comet such as the Halley comet, which should re-appear in 2061. In this case, one could well suppose a very advanced nanotech-based sailcraft, employ a detailed mass model, envisage a sophisticated thrust vectoring [3], and try to calculate a set of optimal mission profiles (depending on the assumed constraints). Such a mission design (complex indeed) may be the object of an original Ph.D. thesis.

*Note 5: Numerical experiments.* The student, who has access to a computer algebraic system (CAS) at her/his university, might like to implement Eqs. (19.1)–(19.15) as a notebook or worksheet file of the chosen CAS, and perform preliminary numerical experiments of sailcraft trajectory profiles. This student is suggested writing a piece of code that implements the above definition of EHO, so that the trajectory computation (if the input makes sense, of course) may proceed seamless.

To begin with, one should decide the  $\sigma$ -values and the type of material as the reflective layer of the sail. The first ones may be chosen in the range [2–20] g/m<sup>2</sup> (starting from the higher values), remarkably more advanced than the current sailcraft. Thus, the maximum ideal lightness number (not achievable in practice) would be  $l_{\max} = \sigma_c / \sigma$ . Obviously, you can choose Aluminum as the preferred reflecting material; thus, Figs. 19.4 and 19.5 can be used for extracting values to be inserted into Eq. (19.3b). In addition, you could start from  $\kappa=0$  for simplicity.

Then, you should use the orientation angles for building the vector  $\mathbf{n}$ ; remember that  $\mathbf{u}^T = (1 \ 0 \ 0)$  by definition. We remind also the student that  $\cos \alpha \cos \delta = \cos \vartheta_{\odot}$ , where  $\vartheta_{\odot}$  is the (local) angle of sunlight incidence on the sail, just the angle that is as abscissa in Figs. 19.4 and 19.5.

*Note 6:* Alternatively to Note-5 (for purposes of learning again), the numerical experiments maybe performed gradually in a different parametric way; for instance, starting from a 2D (heliocentric) circular orbit, first try  $l_x$  in the range [0, 0.6] and  $l_y = l_z = 0$ . Then, once fixed some values of the radial lightness number, try to change  $l_y$  in the interval [–0.4, +0.4] (with small steps) and  $l_z = 0$ . Finally, after the student “masters” enough 2D trajectories, 3D cases may be analyzed, for example varying  $l_z$  in the range [–0.1, +0.1] and some meaningful pair(s) of  $(l_x, l_y)$  different from zero both. However, the student should *always* keep in mind that, even though the motion equations appear decoupled from the interaction of the solar irradiance with the solar sail, nevertheless things are different. The *realization* of the lightness vector (which is a piecewise-continuous *function of time*, in general) passes through calculations involving (mainly) diffraction of light, absorption and re-radiation, and hence of the shape that the sail membrane (with booms) will take under the pressure of light.

*Note 7:* The student is recommended using method(s) with *sufficient* high accuracy and high precision for integrating the system of differential equations numerically. What means ‘sufficient’ can be learnt by employing different-in-principle integration algorithms,

and comparing results. Efficient numerical recipes, and their implementation on computer, can be found in many textbooks on numerical analysis.<sup>8</sup>

Finally, we end this chapter by mentioning a few issues about the influence of the thermo-optical parameters degradation on the sailcraft acceleration and structures. Comparing Eqs. (19.6) and (19.7) shows that surface roughness is a sort of *intrinsic* degradation (in terms of thrust acceleration) directly causing any real surface to behave quite off from an ideal mirror, especially considering that a solar-photon sail receives light over a *broad* effective-to-thrust wavelength band. However, there is an overall optical *external* degradation caused by the space environment. As a point of fact, (mainly) solar-wind protons and ultraviolet photons, both emitted abundantly by the Sun, can modify the surface of the sail's reflective layer gradually. Such changes in the layer's lattice increase with time and depend on the energy of the particles impinging onto the surface. Thus, the longer a sailcraft remains in space close to the Sun, the higher the change of the thermo-optical parameters comes out. Such a change is permanent, meaning that if a sail were tilted to negligible thrust at some time during the flight, then the sail's original optical state could not be recovered. On a conceptual basis, one may note that surface roughness causes part of the (otherwise specular) reflectance to turn into diffuse reflectance; in contrast, when external degradation is active, part of the total reflectance turns into absorptance. This can increase the sail temperature and decrease the available thrust significantly, depending on the mission. For instance, a mission surveying the solar poles at a fraction of AU should be carefully designed even from the viewpoint of the operational orbit, which otherwise would progressively get closer and closer to the Sun.

The reader can find additional information regarding a sail in the interplanetary environment later in Chap. 21.

## FURTHER READING

[http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Solar\\_sail](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Solar_sail). The reader should be aware that many different authors write on Wikipedia.org independently, and in different periods. Wikipedia Staff members try to keep things simple and uniform. Nevertheless, when the technical topic is particularly complicated, these aims sacrifice many aspects of Physics and Engineering. Some numerical results regarding solar sailing reflect a particular historical period where simple physical models were assumed for the sake of simplicity. Such oversimplified models of thrust (e.g. the sail as a perfect mirror) are analytically very attractive, and hence often still nowadays used by some authors even in advanced algorithms. However, the student should be aware that any *real* sail is quite a different thing. Therefore, the authors of this book recommend her/him considering soon more realistic sail models in their learning exercises.

<http://www.giovanivulpetti.it/SolarSailing/SailPhotonPhysics/tabid/64/Default.aspx> (updated periodically).

---

<sup>8</sup> According to various authors, numerical analysis is an art rather than a science. In any case, the student should not forget that, even though one numerical method can be very good for a set of problems, nevertheless this entails in no way that this algorithm will work well when applied to another class of problems.

## REFERENCES

1. G. Vulpetti, Applying Vector Scattering Theory to Solar-Photon Sail Thrust Modeling in *Advances in Solar Sailing*, ISBN 978-3-642-34906-5, Springer, **2014**
2. G. Vulpetti and S. Scaglione, *The Aurora Project: Estimation of the Optical Sail Parameters*, Special issue of *Acta Astronautica*, vol. 44, no. 2–4, pp. 123–132, **1999**.
3. G. Vulpetti, *Fast Solar Sailing: Astrodynamics of Special Sailcraft Trajectories*, Springer, **2012**
4. G. Mengali, A. Quarta, D. Romagnoli, C. Circi, *H<sup>2</sup>-reversal trajectory: a new mission application for high-performance solar sailing*, *Advances in Space Research*, **2010**
5. X. Zeng, H. Baoyin, J. Li, S. Gong, *New application of the H-reversal trajectory using solar sails*, in Cornell University Library, arXiv:1103.1470v1 [astro-ph.SR], **2011**
6. J. M. Palmer, The measurement of transmission, absorption, emission and reflection, *Handbook of Optics: Vol. II*, 3rd edition, **2010**, McGraw-Hill, New York

# 20

## Sailcraft Trajectories

We are nearing the end of this introductory book on solar sailing. We saved one of the most intriguing topics—trajectory design—in the end. Although, in Chap. 19, we reported some key equations for showing the physical meaning and usefulness of the lightness vector formalism, nevertheless it is beyond the scope of this book to delve *deeply* into mathematics and the related physical aspects. Therefore, after a very short presentation of the sailcraft motion equations, we discuss the class of trajectories (and missions) via several technical plots. Some trajectories have been designed in past decades, some were investigated in the first years of this century, and some have been calculated specifically for this book by means of modern (and very complex) computer codes. In this chapter, we deal with:

1. sailcraft motion equations in their simple form by using no additional mathematics;
2. generalized Keplerian orbits that only sailcraft can draw;
3. interplanetary transfer by solar sailing;
4. some of the new striking features solar-sail propulsion offers, such as the possibility of designing orbits that differ from the Keplerian ones significantly, allowing a mission designer to move beyond the limits of conventional spacecraft;
5. the behavior of a sailcraft under the gravitational influence of more than one celestial body;
6. the so-called artificial equilibrium points;
7. the high non-linear feature of very low sail-loading sailcraft.

### MOTION EQUATIONS

Formally, the classical motion equations of spacecraft are not complicated. But in addition to the difficulty, common to any scientific discipline, of modeling the real world, in Astrodynamics there is the need to optimize trajectories with respect to some performance criterion related to the mission goals. Furthermore, one has to solve equations numerically,

which may seem a trivial task, at first glance, in the modern era of high-level software and computers. However, the opposite is true. Judicious choices of calculation units, reference frames, switching from one frame to another (when applicable), numeric integrators, optimization methods, and computing additional information (useful for understanding the many aspects of the problems) are all delicate procedures for achieving reliable results upon which a mission may be designed. There is an incredible amount of high-level literature on these topics. We cite a few studies in the course of this chapter relatively to the sailcraft trajectories we are discussing.

In the inertial reference frame (IF) where one wants to describe the sailcraft motion, let  $\mathbf{r}$  denote the position vector of the sailcraft, namely, the vector from the origin of IF to the sailcraft's barycenter. Often, the IF origin coincides with the center of mass of a celestial body in the solar system (the Sun or any planet), which is taken as the central body. Let  $GM \equiv \mu$  indicate the gravitational mass of such a *central* body. Then, the equation of motion can be written as follows:

$$\frac{d^2 \mathbf{r}}{dt^2} = -\mu_* \mathbf{r} / r^3 + \mathbf{P} + (\mu_{\odot} / R^2) \Phi \mathbf{L} \quad (20.1)$$

where the subscript \* stands for the Sun ( $\odot$ ), Earth ( $\otimes$ ), or any other planet. Let us explain the meaning of this vector equation. Like any classical motion equation, the left-hand side (l.h.s.) represents the vector acceleration (a pure kinematical quantity). The right-hand side (r.h.s.) includes all dynamical contributions, namely, the forces per unit mass that act upon the space vehicle. The first term on the (r.h.s.) represents the gravitational vector acceleration due to the central body;  $\mathbf{P}$  denotes the overall perturbation acceleration stemming from conservative or non-conservative fields (but propulsion), whereas the third term is the solar-sail thrust acceleration due to the sunlight's solar pressure, as described in other chapters of this book.  $R$  is the distance from the sailcraft to the Sun,  $\mathbf{L}$  is the sailcraft lightness vector defined in Eq. (19.3) in Chap. 19. Finally,  $\Phi$  is the rotation matrix from SOF (the reference frame defined in Chap. 19) to HIF. Such a matrix transforms the  $\mathbf{L}$ 's components in SOF to those in the current inertial reference frame. The degradation of the sail's reflectance (Chap. 21) should not be included in an equation of this type. However, as discussed in Chap. 19, one can include varying-with-sunlight incidence reflection and absorption in this equation.

Therefore, for our purposes, the above equation of motion can be considered general. Of course, we have to specify either initial conditions (the initial value problem) or mixed information regarding the initial and final state (the two-boundary problem) of the sailcraft in order to integrate such second-order differential equation *numerically*. However, that is not enough. Like any differential equation containing free parameters, or *controls*, Eq. (20.1) needs a time profile of such controls in order to be solved completely. How may we specify such control behaviors? Normally, in designing a trajectory (or a set of trajectories) for a space mission with given payload goals, one has to identify *three* important classes of linear/non-linear constraints and some objective function: (1) state equality/inequality constraints, (2) control equality/inequality constraints, and (3) mixed state and control constraints. Classes 1 and 2 in particular are characteristic of the set of admissible trajectories, whereas class 3 is the direct consequence of the optimization problem at hand.

Designing space missions based on rocket propulsion has a strong feature: minimizing the propellant during the transfer-to-target phase and during the operational mission (orbit and attitude control). In contrast, sailcraft-based space missions will be characterized—among the many features we have highlighted in the previous chapters—by two noteworthy aspects: (1) strongly minimizing the transfer time (e.g. avoiding multiple planetary fly-bys), and (2) achieving controlled operational configurations without using propellant of any type. These aspects often are impossible to accomplish via rocket propulsion. Optimization criterion (1) is important not only for cutting mission costs and a number of equally significant nontechnical issues, but also for reducing the degradation of the reflective layer of the sail, another significant objective indeed.

Equation (20.1) may contain the contribution to non-Keplerian acceleration coming from the pressure of the light backscattered or emitted by a planet or a natural satellite (where applicable). Because *planetary-radiation* thrust acceleration is always much weaker than *solar-radiation* thrust acceleration (due to planet temperature that is very low compared to the solar one, the planetary albedo, considerable absorbing and scattering planet atmosphere, etc.), nobody thinks of using the planet's radiation for controlling the trajectory of a sailcraft. Instead, this acceleration—even if modeled in computer codes (at least in the most sophisticated ones)—may be dealt with as a perturbation to sailcraft spiraling about a planet. Therefore, it can be considered as included in the term  $\mathbf{P}$  of Eq. (20.1), which mainly contains gravitational perturbations, caused by celestial bodies other than the central body, and its aspherical shape.

## GENERAL KEPLERIAN ORBITS

The best way to see the effects of solar-radiation thrust is to analyze a number of very special trajectory classes by first removing the perturbation term from Eq. (20.1) and considering heliocentric sail trajectories. In addition, let us suppose that the sail *direction* is always parallel to the local sunlight (i.e. its surface is perpendicular to sunlight direction). From the general equation, one gets

$$\frac{d^2\mathbf{R}}{dt^2} = -(1-l_x)\frac{\mu_\odot}{R^3}\mathbf{R} \quad (20.2)$$

where  $l_x$  is the radial lightness number defined in Chap. 16. This equation is the differential equation governing all possible *general* Keplerian orbits. Conceptually, they are very simple: the sailcraft senses the Sun with an *effective* gravitational mass  $\tilde{\mu}_\odot = (1-l_x)\mu_\odot$ . Depending on the technology that we will utilize progressively in future solar sailing,  $\tilde{\mu}_\odot$  may become negative too; that is, the sum of the solar gravity and the solar-radiation effect can be *repulsive* on the sailcraft. In the special case that the radial number is identically one (that is,  $l = l_x = 1$  and  $\sigma = \tau\sigma_c$  from Note 3 in Chap. 19), the sailcraft can move uniformly on a rectilinear trajectory, with speed and direction depending on the initial conditions, in the solar system. (Perturbations alter this ideal state, of course.) This property lends itself to intriguing interplanetary transfers. Such an advanced-sail and spacecraft technology would allow sailcraft to spiral fast (1 month at most) about Earth and to escape



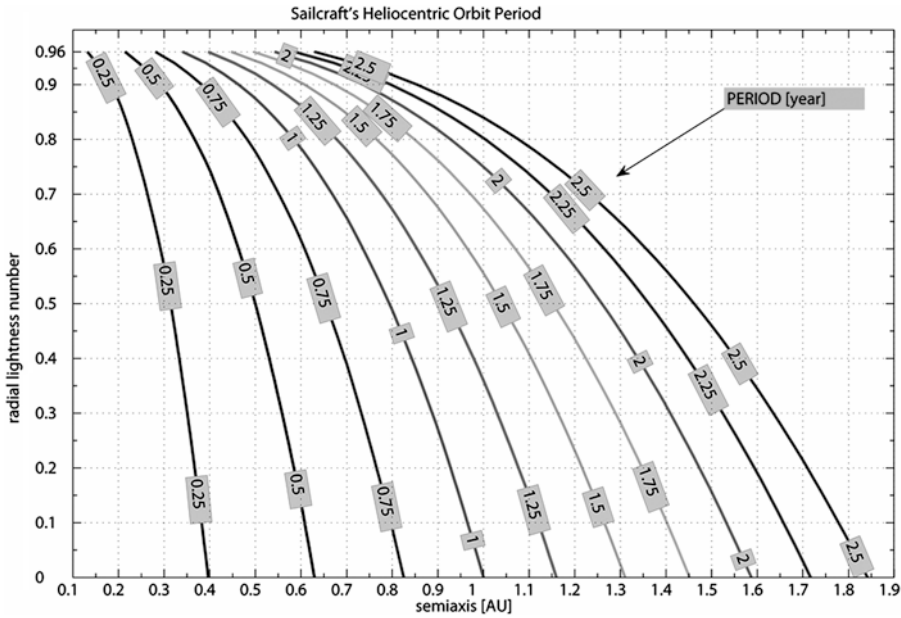
the Earth–Moon system with a residual speed of 1–2 km/s. Thus, the heliocentric speed may amount to 6.5–6.7 AU/year. The velocity direction is approximately perpendicular to the position vector of the Earth, and in Earth’s heliocentric orbit plane, at the exiting time. (More generally, such property holds for any sailcraft with  $l_x = 1$ , and leaving any planet.) After a rectilinear arc, the sail would be tilted so as to progressively match the heliocentric vector velocity of the target planet (e.g., Mars). If we include the spiral time about Mars, the whole Earth-to-Mars transfer should last half the time of the current flights to the red planet. However, the main advantage would be that most of the heliocentric trajectory would be orthogonal to the departure-planet vector position, as stated above, with the immediate consequence of relaxing the launch window considerably; in other words, going to Mars would not need to wait for favorable Earth–Mars relative positions. A similar thing would apply for the return trip. Thus, a reusable sailcraft may accomplish round-trips to Mars twice as fast and with low dependence on the planetary positions! Since the sail technology for such flights is somewhat advanced with respect to that available today, missions like this one have not yet been studied carefully. (At the time of this writing, preliminary research was in progress in Italy about the possibility of using special carbon nanotube membranes for future applications to solar sailing, though we are not yet able to estimate how far in the future all this may take place.)

Other interesting novel solutions happen if  $0 < l_x < 1$ . They are the subject of the rest of this section. Let consider a heliocentric circular orbit obeying Eq. (20.2). What is the period of such an orbit? Figure 20.1 shows period values as a function of the orbit radius and the radial number.

*Note 1:* The circular-orbit solutions to Eq. (20.2) correspond to orbits with the sail *already* deployed. If the spacecraft initially orbits about the Sun circularly with the sail unfolded and subsequently opens its sail radially, then the orbit transforms into an elliptic, parabolic or hyperbolic, depending on the radial number. The sailcraft pre-deployment speed has to be lower than the usual circular value  $\sqrt{\infty_0} / R$  for getting a sail-open circular orbit. For instance, the deployment maneuver can happen at the aphelion of a pure Keplerian ellipse.

In Fig. 20.1, note the curve representing the 1-year period orbits. In particular, one can envisage a sailcraft on the same plane of Earth orbit and 0.3 AU sunward and always on the same Sun–Earth line. (This is analogous to what happens close to the Sun–Earth system L1 point; however, L1 is 1.5 million km or 0.01 AU far from Earth). This sail mission concept requires  $l_x = 0.657$ , namely, a technology considerably more advanced than the current one. Such mission could be not only scientific but also utilitarian. Among other things, as anticipated in Chap. 9, the space-storm warning time would range from 16 to 31 h instead of the current 70–90 min from L1 (including the lower-speed path of the solar wind in Earth’s magnetopause).

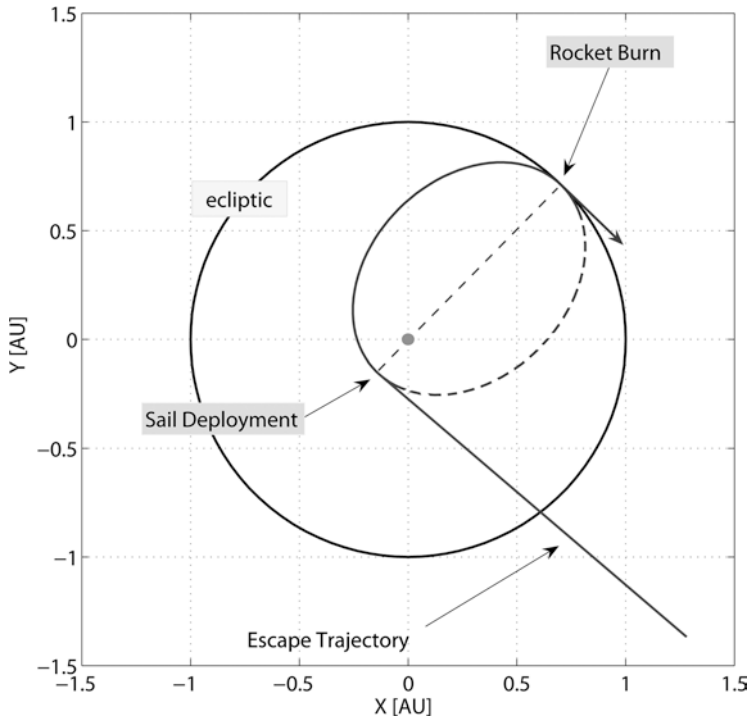
Implicit in Note 1 is that Fig. 20.1 holds for any elliptic orbit of a sailcraft about the Sun. We suggest college students starting from Eq. (20.2) and carry out some general formulas (e.g., energy, angular momentum, eccentricity, semimajor axis, etc.) useful to evaluate the performance of a sailcraft with respect to a classical spacecraft capable of rocket maneuver. As a point of fact, the sail deployment may be viewed as an impulsive maneuver with no propellant consumption. For a spacecraft orbiting about the Sun on any circular path, deploying a sail—completely sunward and with lightness number equal to



**20.1** Contours of the period (year) of a general Keplerian orbit as a function of the semimajor axis (AU) and the radial lightness number

$\frac{1}{2}$ —inserts the vehicle into a parabolic orbit. The open interval  $(\frac{1}{2}, 1)$  entails a hyperbolic orbit with some excess velocity.

With the concepts established so far, we are able to apply a sail mission concept studied years ago by author Matloff. The following is an ideal mission from some viewpoints; nevertheless, it will be useful for defining the concepts of fast and very-fast solar sailing modes, which we will deal with later in this chapter. Suppose that a spacecraft has two propulsion systems: (1) an impulsive rocket engine, and (2) a photon solar sail. Some launcher delivers the vehicle to about 2.7 million km from Earth where the solar field dominates. Let us assume that the rocket is capable of releasing a velocity impulse equal to  $(\sqrt{2} - 1) / \sqrt{R_0}$  (or 12.3 km/s at  $R_0 = 1$  AU, very large indeed). Were such impulse applied parallel to Earth's orbital velocity at that point ( $\mathbf{V}_E$ ), the spacecraft would escape the solar system on a parabola. One knows that in such a case the speed at infinity is  $V_\infty = 0$ . However, let us apply the same impulse antiparallel to  $\mathbf{V}_E$ . The ensuing orbit is elliptic sunward and the vehicle can achieve the perihelion  $R_p = \frac{1}{2} (\sqrt{2} - 1) R_0$  (or 0.207 AU) after about 85.5 days (during which the rocket system has been jettisoned). Here, the sail comes into play. Let us suppose (1) we deploy the sail in a very brief time interval and radially, having designed the sailcraft with  $l_x = 1$ , (2) to keep the sail radial from that moment on. The scenario, which we may call the *CRS* (combined rocket-sail) reference flight, is depicted in Fig. 20.2. The ensuing motion is rectilinear and uniform with a speed equal to twice the parabolic speed at  $R_0$ , namely, 84.24 km/s or about 17.77 AU/year. This value is five times the speed of Voyager 1, the fastest spacecraft launched hitherto.



**20.2** Ideal *two-propulsion* reference mission. An impulsive rocket burn is applied opposite to the orbital velocity at  $R_0$ . At the perihelion of the elliptic orbit, the sail is deployed impulsively, radially, and giving the sailcraft a lightness number equal to 1. This generates an escape rectilinear trajectory with a cruise speed equal to twice the parabolic speed at  $R_0$

The analysis performed above is as simple as striking: specific values have been reported, but the result about the cruise speed depends only on the initial circular orbit. Two observations:

1. To achieve a final high speed, the spacecraft first has to lose most of its initial kinetic energy, about 65.7 %, independently of the initial orbit. Subsequently and closer to the Sun, the radiation pressure will be able to give the sailcraft much higher energy.
2. If one wants to achieve 84 km/s of excess speed (cruise speed) by a single rocket (tangential) impulse at 1 AU (where  $V_{\text{circ}} = 29.785$  km/s), from the energy equation, it is straightforward to carry out  $\Delta V = 64.2$  km/s, a huge impulse, a “mission impossible” for rockets.

Much probably, the above mission concept will be unfeasible for a number of reasons that are beyond the scopes of this book; nevertheless, it is meaningful from a theoretical viewpoint. As a point of fact, we will consider again such scenario later (see Fast and Very Fast Sailing), when we discuss realistic high-speed sailcraft trajectories.

## INTERPLANETARY TRANSFERS

General Keplerian orbits are based on sailing always orthogonal to the local sunlight direction as sensed in SOF. The general control of a sail is expressed via the lightness vector in the vector Eq. (20.1). We discussed the  $\mathbf{L}$ -vector and the sailcraft acceleration components in Chap. 19. Here, we summarize the dynamical role of the lightness components in order to introduce the reader to the interplanetary transfers. Then, we will show a number of meaningful examples of them.

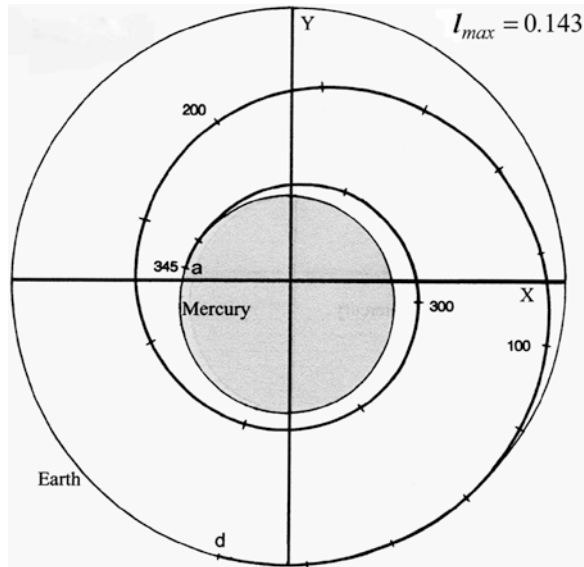
Apart from the solar-wind and the gravitational perturbations from solar system bodies, a heliocentric sailcraft undergoes three fields when the sail is arbitrarily oriented in SOF: (1) the Sun's local gravity, (2) the *radial* sunlight-pressure force component, and (3) the *orthogonal* sunlight-pressure force component. Fields 1 and 2 are conservative; in contrast, field 3 is non-conservative. It is a strange behavior due to field splitting. From Chap. 19, we highlight:

1. The orbital energy, though depending on  $l_x$ , can be increased/ decreased if  $l_y \neq 0$ , or  $dl_y/dt \neq 0$ , or both.
2. The angular momentum can be changed in direction only if  $l_z \neq 0$ .
3. The angular momentum can be varied in magnitude only via  $l_y \neq 0$ .

The utilization of these properties allows the mission analyst to design any interplanetary transfer flight. Of course, a mathematical algorithm of optimization, with equality and inequality constraints, produces a set of locally optimal trajectories. The problem of which is the best one for a certain mission depends on the characteristics of the whole project one is dealing with. (This is the most difficult astrodynamical problem to be solved for each planned mission.)

Most interplanetary solar-sail transfers have been envisaged of rendezvous type. Although such rendezvous transfers are from the heliocentric orbit viewpoint only (i.e., the gravitational fields of the departure and arrival planets have not been considered), they are of significant historical meaning. The departure and the arrival may be approximately viewed as position-velocity states on the so-called spheres of gravitational influence. Furthermore, to illustrate the main trajectories properties, some flights have been supposed to be coplanar with the planetary orbits (this is not true, of course, but this approximation allows one to focus on the principal properties of the transfer trajectory). Nevertheless, the authors have re-computed such profiles in the modern view expressed in Chap. 19. One of the most meaningful novelties is the introduction of variable thermo-optical parameters, such as those shown in Figs. 19.4 and 19.5. When appropriate, we will comment on such results.

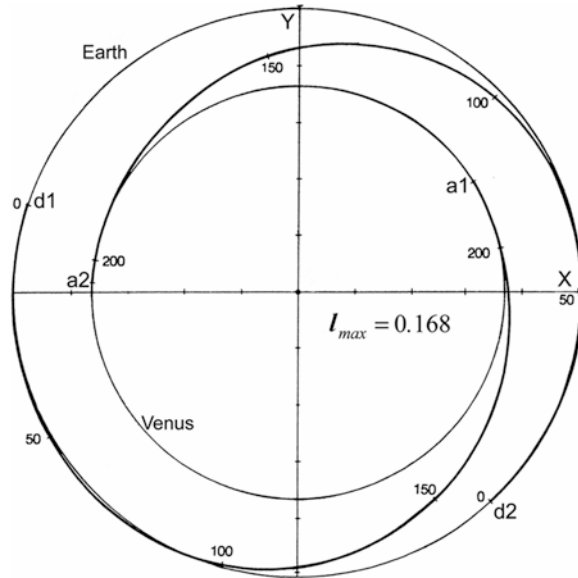
Figure 20.3 shows the 1987–1988 Earth-to-Mercury rendezvous transfer. As is apparent, the sail has to be kept at a negative azimuth in SOF for slowly decreasing its distance  $R$  from the Sun. For over 3 months, the sailcraft speed  $V$  decreases slowly as well; then, although the sail attitude angle continues to be negative,  $V$  begins increasing because of the lower  $R$ . In the last month of the transfer, the sail azimuth is positive for progressively matching the orbital velocity of Mercury. The total transfer lasts 345 days. An interesting three-dimensional transfer from the real Earth orbit to the real Mercury orbit can be computed for the 2020–2021 opportunity. A combination of transfer time and perihelion of the transfer trajectory can be optimized to 382 days/0.33 AU, respectively, with only three simple attitude maneuvers in SOF.



**20.3** Example of Earth-to-Mercury transfer via solar sailing. Departure date was June 7, 1987. The maximum lightness number (but not achieved in the trajectory profile) is 0.143 (Adapted from [1], Courtesy of Taylor & Francis Group)

Apart from the attitude strategy, one should note that the sailcraft has to be transferred in orbital energy from  $-0.5$  to  $-1.292$ , while its orbital angular momentum has to change from 1 to 0.609, in solar units. Such changes are enormous with respect to the current propulsion capabilities. Let us digress for a moment. An enlightening example comes from the next 2-spacecraft cornerstone mission by ESA and JAXA, named BepiColombo, for exploring Mercury deeply. BepiColombo should be set off in July 2016 on a journey to Mercury where it should arrive in January 2024! The transfer from Earth to Mercury is remarkably complicated. The spacecraft will be set on its interplanetary trajectory after a launch by Ariane. On its way to Mercury, the spacecraft shall employ a total of eight flybys at Earth, Venus, and Mercury!. BepiColombo will use solar-electric propulsion too.

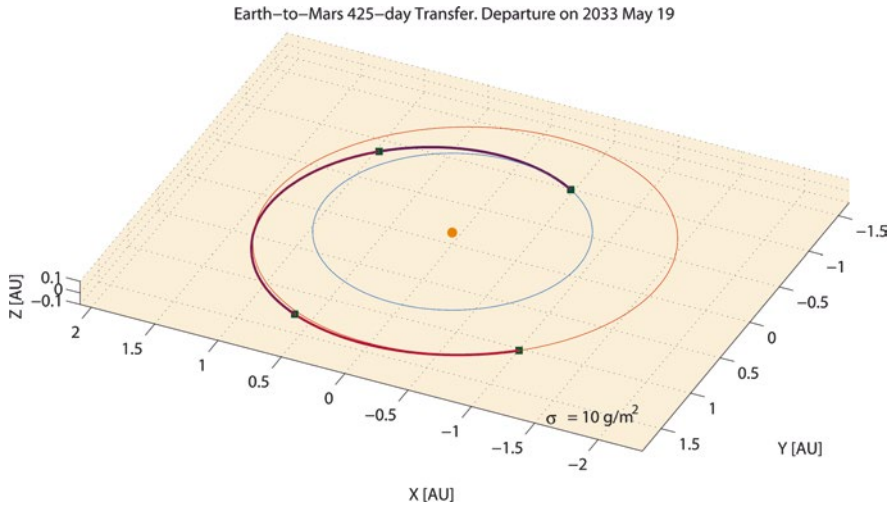
When approaching Mercury, BepiColombo will use the planet's gravity and a conventional rocket engine to insert itself into the target polar orbit. Like many other important NASA and ESA missions, the astrodynamical realization of the flight depends completely on the relative positions of some planets; in other words, the launch window is very narrow, its repeatability is very low, and the transfer time is long. The authors have checked that, if sailcraft technology with a lightness number of 0.16 had been ready in 2013 (it was not), then the real heliocentric transfer to Mercury would have last 367 days. Mission opportunities would repeat more than one in every year and in different months, since there is no flyby need for gaining delta-V. Earth escape could be performed by a launcher providing a small hyperbolic excess speed, whereas Mercury capture (via solar sailing) may be aided by a small-size chemical engine. To within a quarter of a century (or less), Earth–Mercury–Earth regular round-trips may become a reality for many scientific missions via solar-photon sailing, if the major space agencies do not close their minds.



**20.4** Two examples of Earth-to-Venus transfer via solar sailing with maximum lightness number equal to 0.168. Departures were on August 5, 1981 and March 4, 1983 (Adapted from [1], Courtesy of Taylor & Francis Group)

Figure 20.4 shows two Earth-to-Venus rendezvous transfers, in 1981–1983, lasting about 204 and 213 days, respectively. Sailcraft technology has been assumed to perform  $I_{\max} = 0.168$ , or  $1 \text{ mm/s}^2$  as characteristic acceleration. In each profile, most of the trajectory is a decelerating arc, and then the final orbit matching occurs via a slight accelerating arc. For the future, we have computed a good 218-day opportunity with departure on December 6, 2019 (using the same technology). As opposed to missions to Mercury, good launches repeat every 20 months; transfer times can be different among them essentially because of the Venus orbit inclination (about  $3.4^\circ$ ) over the ecliptic, and Earth and Venus orbit nodes (which differ by about  $100^\circ$ , on the average).

Figure 20.5 shows an example of Earth-to-Mars rendezvous transfers in 2033, as computed by author Vulpetti. (Earth and Mars orbits are those corresponding to 2033–2034). Let us at once say that there are many, many opportunities of rendezvous with Mars in the next two decades. We have chosen an overall “medium-technology” sailcraft with a total sail loading of  $10 \text{ g/m}^2$  and a 425-day journey to Mars. This  $\sigma$ -value is about one order of magnitude better than the ESA Geosail mission concept. The small squares in Fig. 20.5 mark the departure, the arrival, and two intermediate attitude maneuvers. Thus, the minimum-time attitude control is piecewise-constant in HOF, and is simple to implement. One can suppose that even using a moderate sailcraft technology as a whole, a rather large sail could be designed realistically in the 2030s. Thus, if a  $1\text{-km}^2$  sail could be managed, a 10-tonne (1 tonne = 1 metric ton) ferry sailcraft would go forth and back between Earth and Mars, most probably with a gross payload of 6 tonnes; in that period, many infrastructures on the Mars surface would be presumably built. NASA, JAXA,



**20.5** A  $10\text{-g/m}^2$  sailcraft minimum-time trajectory to Mars. Departure is on May 19, 2033; arrival is on July 19, 2034. *Squares* denote departure, arrival, and intermediate attitude maneuvers. The three trajectory arcs correspond to three SOF-constant attitudes. Specular and diffuse reflection and absorption of light by the Aluminum reflective layer have been realistically considered in the thrust model for this trajectory profile. (author Vulpetti, 2008, courtesy of Springer)

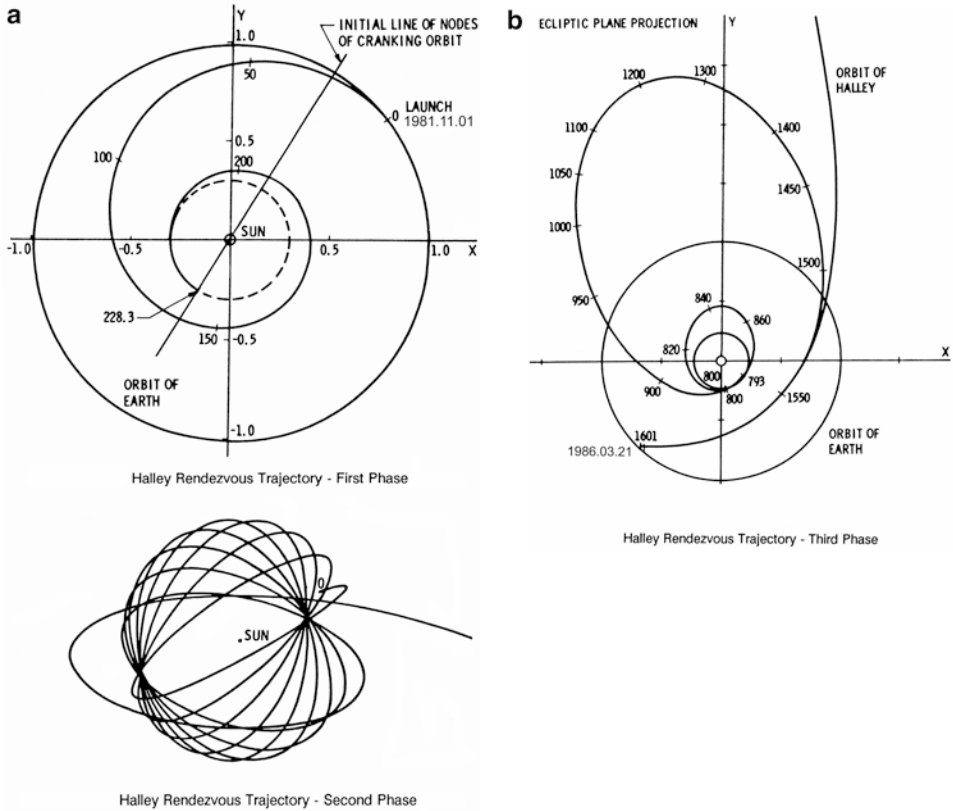
China, and ESA may have their ferries for Mars colonization. Of course, the set of trajectories of ferry sailcraft is more complex than what we have shown here; some of the related concepts hold, though.

Sailcraft can go to the planets beyond Mars. However, we do not present trajectory profiles here because the celestial-mechanics concepts of inner and outer spheres of influence could not be neglected for the distant large planets of the solar system. Only a few examples can be found in the specialized literature, but they refer to sailcraft “entering” some unstated sphere of planetary influence with too high a speed for ignoring a number of problems. The design of even simple sailcraft trajectories to the outer planets is beyond the scope of this chapter.<sup>1</sup>

Now, we shall show three figures of significant historical importance; the trajectory that a large sailcraft—envisaged, studied, and fostered by the Jet Propulsion Laboratory (JPL)—would have followed to rendezvous with the Halley comet in 1986. However, NASA headquarters did not approve the mission, and the history of solar sailing changed. However, who knows? Perhaps, if that very complicated mission had failed for some unexpected reason, public opinion would have been that the mission was unimpressive,

---

<sup>1</sup> At the time of this writing, there are rumors that JAXA has been working on a sailcraft aimed to go to Jupiter; however, at least to the authors’ knowledge, no technical paper has been published hitherto.



**20.6** Halley comet rendezvous trajectory as designed by the Jet Propulsion Laboratory in 1970s. The conceived sail was a square of 800 m on each side; sailcraft sail loading was  $7.7 \text{ g/m}^2$ , and the maximum lightness number was equal to 0.177. (a) Two phases of the full transfer to Halley. (b) Retrograde trajectory arc to arrive at the comet post-perihelion rendezvous (Courtesy of NASA)

and now neither NASA nor other big space agency would be engaged in solar sailing, the authors of this book included!

Figure 20.6 shows the three phases of the full trajectory to Halley. JPL conceived a square sail with 800-m side, allowing a sailcraft sail loading of  $7.7 \text{ g/m}^2$  and maximum lightness number equal to 0.177. After ballistic injection into the solar field (at 3.5 km/s) and sail deployment, the sailcraft is controlled such to spiral down and move to a circular orbit at 0.25 AU, but inclined  $20^\circ$  with respect to the ecliptic plane (see *ecliptic* in the Glossary). This completes the first transfer phase, as plotted in Fig. 20.6 (top left). In the second phase, shown in Fig. 20.6 (bottom left), the sailcraft maneuvers in attitude and changes the inclination of its osculating orbits until about  $145^\circ$  are achieved. As we know, orbits with inclination higher than  $90^\circ$  are retrograde. As a point of fact, not only is Halley comet strongly inclined with respect to the ecliptic, but also its motion is opposite to that of the planets, namely, it is clockwise. The sailcraft cranking in this phase can be described as a circular orbit slowly rotating about an axis lying on the ecliptic (i.e., the axis indicated



at the top of the figure). The third phase consists of a slow increase of energy and angular momentum parallel to that of the comet, as shown in Fig. 20.6 (right), due to the relatively low lightness number. The sailcraft approaches the comet from below, resulting in a post-perihelion rendezvous (a bit less than 1 AU). Then, the sail system is jettisoned so the spacecraft moves with the comet and eventually lands on it.

Some comments are in order: *First*, a similar mission accomplished by some electric engines would be hugely expensive. *Second*, the first two phases of the above trajectory design suggest a way to send a sailcraft over the solar poles, namely, in an orbit literally orthogonal to the solar equator. Some concepts of sailing to the solar poles are based on such a trajectory strategy. *Third*, a rendezvous near the comet's perihelion ( $\sim 0.58$  AU) would be desirable for scientific purposes. *Fourth*, at the time of the above JPL rendezvous mission concept, the *H*-reversal theory (which could be appropriate also for rendezvous with other retrograde-motion comets) was not yet set up. Even if it had been,  $7.7 \text{ g/m}^2$  would have been too high for getting sailcraft motion reversal. *Fifth*, both solutions to the general equations to solar-photon sailing may be utilized for fast intercepting near Earth asteroids, e.g. see [2–4]. *Sixth*, according to JPL, the next Halley's perihelion will occur on May 31, 2061. There is plenty of time for designing a sailcraft using new technologies. Together with the progress already made in solar-sailing Astrodynamics, all that will certainly result in a completely new, much faster, and adjustable rendezvous trajectory, and robots for exploring and probing the comet.

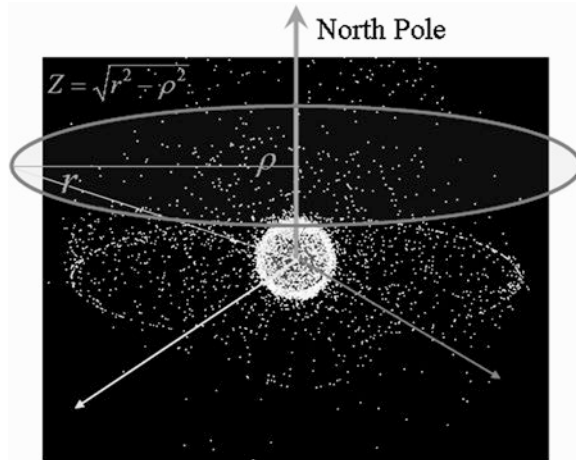
These topics may be developed or analyzed still further in original Ph.D. dissertations mainly for graduate students in Astrodynamics or Aerospace engineering.

## NON-KEPLERIAN ORBITS

When one talks about Keplerian orbits, either conventional or generalized (see General Keplerian Orbits, above), one implicitly assumes a basic fact: the instantaneous plane of the orbit passes through the barycenter of the central body. This holds even in many-body dynamics via the concept of osculating orbit. Now, let us suppose that all components of the lightness vector are nonzero except  $l_y$  (the transversal number). According to Eq. (19.9), the sailcraft thrust acceleration in HIF has no azimuthal component. In addition, according to points 1 and 3 on page 229, the sailcraft's angular-momentum magnitude and orbital energy are constant. In contrast, the angular momentum changes in direction; this excludes any set of circular orbits, the planes of which contain the solar center of mass. Do such factors have a more direct geometrical meaning? Yes, they have. A particular, but rich, family of orbits has been investigated in detail. However, by theoretical and numerical tools, it is possible to show that there exists a special class of non-Keplerian orbits described by:

$$\mathbf{R}(t) = \mathbf{s} + \mathbf{C}(t), \quad \mathbf{s} \cdot \mathbf{C}(t) = 0 \quad (20.3)$$

where  $\mathbf{s}$  is a constant vector and  $\mathbf{C}(t)$  is the vector position of either a circular or elliptic orbit perpendicular to  $\mathbf{s}$ . In other words, we can get circles or ellipses on planes not passing through the Sun! Vector  $\mathbf{s}$  is just the shift of the orbital plane. In the past years, shifted circular orbits have been well studied from many interesting viewpoints, including



**20.7** Displaced geostationary orbit for telecommunications over Earth's North Pole (Courtesy of NASA; adapted by author Vulpetti)

potential applications. In contrast, the larger family of shifted ellipses have been studied limitedly, probably because of its higher mathematical complexity. We have checked numerically that ellipses orthogonal to arbitrary shift vectors surely exist in the case of *ideal* sails. Of course, their geometrical properties are tightly related to the lightness vector and, as a consequence, to the sail technology and the evolution of the sail materials in the space environment (see Chap. 21).

The above feature holds also for planetocentric sailcraft, in particular Earth-bound. Applications of shifted circular and elliptic orbits maybe various. At the end of the 1980s, Robert L. Forward suggested utilizing some displaced geostationary orbit (GEO) for allowing telecommunications over Earth's poles, which cannot be seen by conventional GEO satellites just for the reason that their planes have to pass through the Earth's center of mass. He made preliminary calculations and invited colleagues to pursue further studies. In 2005, author Vulpetti, for his lectures at the Aerospace School of Rome University, computed aluminized-sail operational orbits and showed the relationships between orbit displacement, orbit period, pole elevation angle, and sailcraft sail loading. A simple example of shifted GEO orbit is shown in Fig. 20.7. This operational orbit is outside the zone of danger due to space debris (in the figure, the white dots represent a sort of visual mean distribution of space debris according to NASA). Table 20.1 contains the main parameters related to such an orbit.

The reported numbers are self-explanatory. The ultra-low value of the sail loading entails a factor of 800 in technological improvement with respect to the ESA Geosail mission concept. It should not be possible to increase appreciably the distance of the sailcraft from Earth so that the local gravitational acceleration is significantly lower. As a point of fact, even polar-zone telecommunications imply (1) reasonable elevation angles (the sailcraft is seen from any observer on ground), and (2) the requirement that voice-telecom should not have a time delay higher than the current 0.25 s. The users of GEO telecom satellites have all experienced annoyance from this delay during telephone conversations

**Table 20.1.** Main parameters relatively to the nominal shifted geostationary orbit, shown in Fig. 20.7 for observing terrestrial zones around the North Pole.

Operational-orbit period	86164.0989 s (1 sidereal day)
Sailcraft elevation at North Pole	11 degrees
Orbit displacement ( $Z$ )	2.211 Earth radii
Orbit radius ( $\rho$ )	6.2300 Earth radii
Sail distance ( $r$ )	6.6107 Earth radii
Lightness number ( $\lambda$ ) {Sun, Earth}	{12.65, 0.334}
Sailcraft sail loading ( $\sigma$ )	0.1215 g/m <sup>2</sup>

especially on the job. The analysis of realistic-sail-shifted ellipses (or quasi-ellipses) should be another topic of frontier Astrodynamics, to be addressed in M.S. theses or Ph.D. dissertations.

Recently, new families of non-Keplerian orbits have been discovered by Heiligers and McInnes [5]. Though the calculations were made by assuming an ideal sail, particular families should arise when the sailcraft motion is restricted to cylindrical or spherical surfaces through appropriate attitude control laws, which are function of the sailcraft's orbital acceleration. Sets of quasi-periodic or true-periodic orbits have been found. If such properties were confirmed for a *realistic*-physics sail, then amazing applications of solar-system science would be possible (depending on the sail-system technology of course). Incidentally, once again, none of the related envisaged missions would be accomplishable by rocket-craft.

## MANY-BODY ORBITS

The many-body problem in celestial mechanics is known not to have a general analytical solution except for the two-body and the restricted three-body problems. Nevertheless, the many-body system is well managed numerically, as shown in several successful space missions. The JPL ephemeris file DE-430 is an excellent example of that. However, even the restricted two-body solar sailing (Sun plus sailcraft), as drawn from Eq. (20.1) with  $\mathbf{P}=0$ , exhibits no general closed-form solution, even in the two-dimensional case. There exist special solutions, though, in the restricted Sun–planet–sailcraft problem, namely, two primaries plus an infinitesimal mass body sensitive to the pressure of the light emitted by either primary. These particular solutions can be found if one assumes that:

1. the primaries (of masses  $M_1$  and  $M_2$ ) revolve on circular (coplanar) orbits about their common barycenter,
2. the sail has *specular* reflectance (which may be lower than 1, but with no diffuse component), and
3. the sail attitude is fixed in the baricentric reference frame (BRF), which is the frame co-rotating with the primaries.

In problems of this kind, what matters is to find the sailcraft's position and velocity histories in BRF.

The mathematical analysis of such a problem proceeds similarly to the well-known restricted three-body problem, with primaries moving in circles. The classical problem exhibits five equilibrium points (of which three are unstable) in the circles plane. However, in the current case, one has three more parameters: the sail loading  $\sigma$  or, equivalently, the lightness number (if the sail is perfectly reflecting), and the two angles specifying the sail orientation  $\mathbf{n}$ . In principle,  $\sigma$  and  $\mathbf{n}$  can be chosen arbitrarily. Given a set  $\{\sigma, \mathbf{n}\}$ , the sailcraft has a certain *radial* number and, as discussed above (see General Keplerian Orbits), sees the luminous primary with reduced mass  $M_1^* = (1 - l_x) M_1$  (here,  $l_x$  is assumed to be less than 1). As a result, there are equilibrium points for the equivalent restricted problem with primaries  $\{M_1^*, M_2\}$ ; if there is a nonzero *normal* number, then such points are expected to be displaced with respect to the common plane of the primaries' motion. Varying the parameters  $\{\sigma, \mathbf{n}\}$  in a continuous range entails an infinite set of equilibrium points, which are quite *local* and *relative* in nature, namely, they are sensed only by the sailcraft. (One might call them *artificial* equilibrium points, but one should remember that different sailcraft sense different equilibria, in general). In this context, there are *allowed* three-dimensional space regions of equilibrium points *induced* by the full set of values  $\{M_1, M_2, \sigma, \mathbf{n}\}$ . If  $\sigma \rightarrow \infty$  (i.e., a spacecraft without sail), then one finds the classical Lagrange points again.

What about a sailcraft that moves in the Earth–Moon system? By using the mathematical tool known as the theory of perturbations, it is possible to investigate many features dependent also on the particular mass ratio  $M_{\text{Moon}}/M_{\text{Earth}} = 0.0123$  of such system. For example, *above* the classical Lagrange points, sailcraft may move on an elliptic displaced orbit, but active control is required; in other words, sail attitude has to be trimmed to compensate for secular effects.

What about a sailcraft that is placed in the Sun–Earth system ( $M_{\text{Sun}}/M_{\text{Earth}} = 333,000$ )? Perturbative analysis of sailcraft dynamics shows that the equilibrium points are generally unstable. However, due to the very small perturbation accelerations around them, a sail orientation trimming strategy should be sufficient for getting a long stay of the sailcraft around these points.

Some of the above considerations even hold for a rocket-powered spacecraft. For instance, NASA spacecraft ACE (Advanced Composition Explorer) has been orbiting around the classical  $L_1$  point of the Sun–Earth system. This libration-point orbit is unstable and four to six station-keeping maneuvers per year are required to keep the spacecraft bound to  $L_1$ . The overall fuel consumption per year amounts to about 4.1 kg (9 lb). There is sufficient fuel onboard to allow operations until 2022. However, ACE (or similar spacecraft) would be unable to find long-term equilibrium in arbitrary regions of the Sun–Earth gravitational system. Although they are conceptually possible, the fuel to be spent via any control strategy would be enormous or expensive at least. This is not the case for sailcraft, as we already know.

Colin McInnes (now at University of Strathclyde, Glasgow, UK) has studied for years halo orbits and their potential applications. They have many problems that are not yet investigated due to the huge complexity of the many-body problem. For instance, suitable research on special realistic-sail-induced equilibrium regions under the influence of the

Sun and a number ( $N > 2$ ) of planets would be high desirable. Again, this could be the subject of Ph.D. dissertations. Potential applications, not known so far, may arise.

On a completely different scale, recently, a team of Italian researchers at Pisa University [6] analyzed the behavior of an ideal balloon under the influence of two stars, namely, a restricted three-body problem with radiation pressure due to two stars, e.g. those ones in the Alpha Centauri A/B system. This work began extending the cases of previous papers [7, 8], and is part of the MIRA Collaboration. This collaboration is an Italian inter-university no-profit scientific work about physical, mathematical, and technological aspects regarding special future sailcraft carried by a starship to a nearby star, hopefully launched within the twenty-first-century towards the stellar system of Alpha Centauri. A starship of this type is currently under theoretical investigation in the Project Icarus. At the time of this writing, University of Rome *La Sapienza* and University of Pisa have been participating in MIRA, which is coordinated by author Vulpetti.

### FAST AND VERY FAST SAILING

Let us resume the CRS reference mission described earlier. We can distinguish two semi-open intervals of speed<sup>2</sup>: (1)  $[V^{circ}, V^{parab})_{R_0}$ , and (2)  $[V^{parab}, V^{star})_{R_0}$ . If a sailcraft endowed with a certain sail loading can be guided such a way that its *cruise* speed belongs to interval-1, then the sailcraft is said to perform a *fast* solar sailing. If the cruise speed falls in open interval-2, then we talk about *very fast* solar sailing. Thus, the CRS reference flight represents a “conceptual attainment” of the (otherwise arbitrary) lower bound of the very fast range. Below, we discuss the upper bound  $V^{star}$ .

The theory of fast and very fast solar sailing is a rather complex topic of solar sailing Astrodynamics. It was formulated only in the mid-1990s [9, 10], and only recently, it has been deeply investigated [11–15]. This intriguing research is beyond the scope of this book. Nevertheless, we will explain the basic principles qualitatively and, as done in the previous sections of this chapter, show some examples from our computer programs, which are able to consider a large number of effects known hitherto for getting a realistic trajectory of high-speed sailcraft.

Although the original description of high-speed sailcraft trajectories was different from what we are discussing, it is useful to begin with an earlier observation. For simplicity, let us consider a two-dimensional flight: a sailcraft starts its sail-powered flight from a circular orbit about the Sun. Suppose that the maximum lightness number is in the open interval  $(1/2, 1)$ . If there were only the radial number non-vanishing, then we know from our earlier discussion that the sailcraft trajectory would be hyperbolic, but with decreasing speed. Let us take a specific, but meaningful example:  $l_x = 0.725$ . This sailcraft, starting from Earth’s orbit, would have a speed of almost 20.1 km/s at 100 AU from the Sun (a speed higher than the Voyager-1 cruise speed). Now, let us think of a different sail control strategy for the *same* sailcraft: the sail is tilted such that  $l_x = 0.534$  and  $l_y = -0.242$  (this is possible for a realistic aluminized sail with  $\sigma = 2 \text{ g/m}^2$ ,  $\alpha = -25.9^\circ$  and a surface mean roughness

---

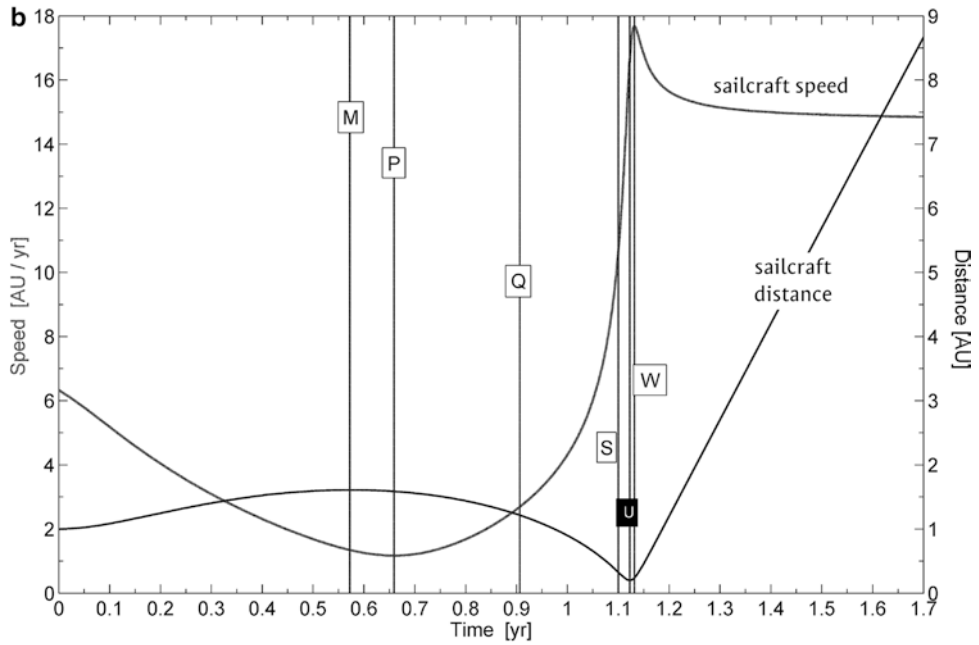
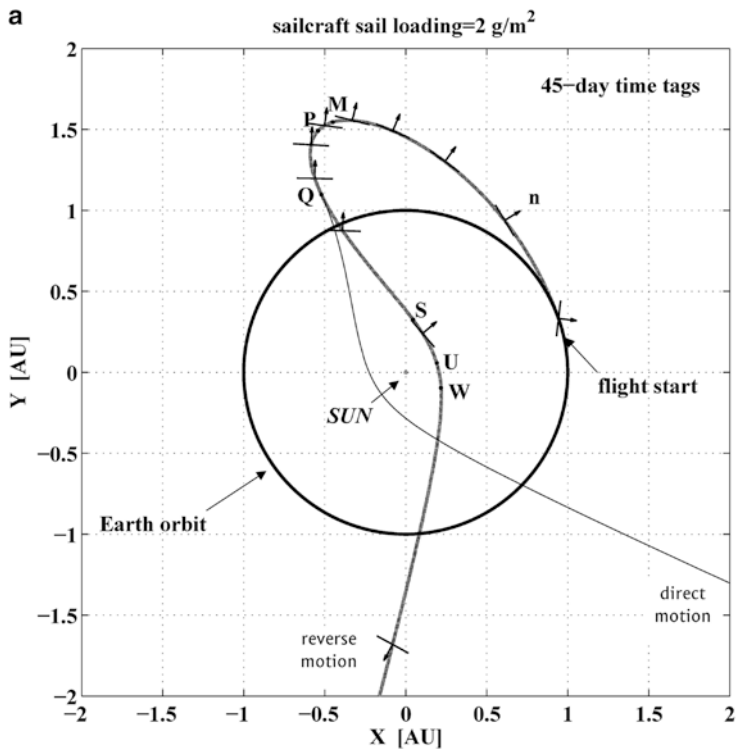
<sup>2</sup> With respect to the 1<sup>st</sup> edition of this book, these intervals have been changed a bit in order to reflect the new studies about escaping from the solar system.

of 10 nm, according to Eqs. (19.3a)–(19.3b), and Figs. 19.4 and 19.5). What happens? Because the radial number is higher than  $\frac{1}{2}$ , the sailcraft first moves outward from the initial circular orbit (as above), but now both angular momentum and energy progressively decrease because the transversal number is negative and sufficiently high. Geometrically, the first effect entails that the angle between the sailcraft's position and velocity vectors increases gradually, whereas the second effect implies that speed decreases more quickly than in a pure hyperbolic orbit.

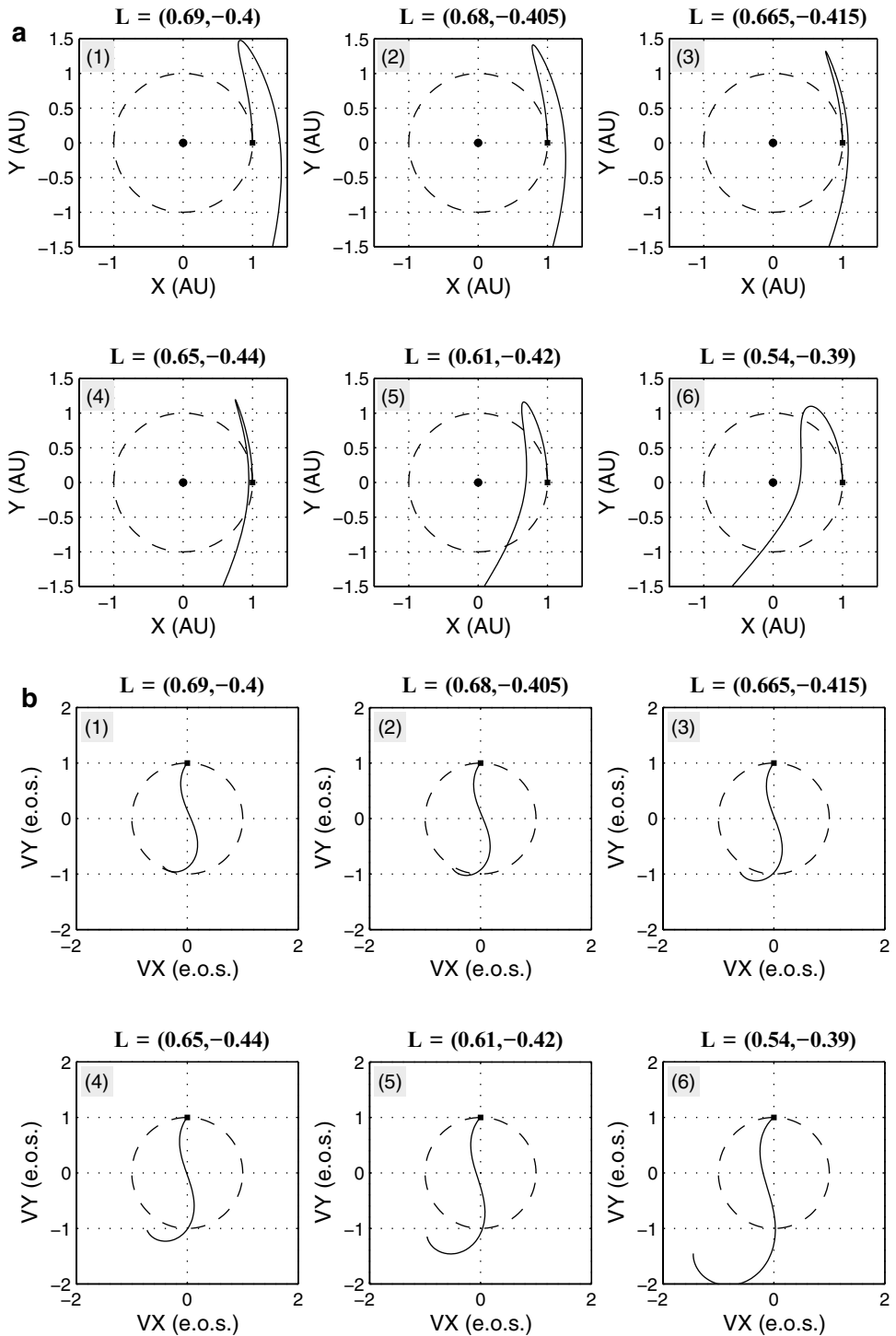
Eventually, a point  $P^*$  in space *may* be reached at time  $t^*$ , where vector position and velocity, both different from zero, are anti-parallel, namely, the orbital angular momentum  $\mathbf{H}$  vanishes; in addition, in  $P^*$  the orbital energy achieves its absolute minimum in the flight. Why “*may*”? Because there are two special options: (1) immediately before  $P^*$ —in principle, in the infinitesimal interval  $(t^*-dt, t^*)$ —the sailcraft is commanded to carry out an impulsive attitude maneuver for obtaining the sail's opposite azimuth,  $+25.9^\circ$ ; or (2) the sail azimuth is kept at  $-25.9^\circ$ . The first case entails an obvious acceleration while the motion continues to be direct (or counterclockwise); in other words,  $\mathbf{H}=0$  is not achieved. A seemingly strange situation happens for the second case: the sailcraft accelerates as well! Why? After reaching  $\mathbf{H}=0$ ,  $\mathbf{H}$  reverses, namely the angle from the position vector to the velocity vector becomes progressively greater than  $180^\circ$ , and the motion becomes clockwise. As a result, a negative azimuth in retrograde motion means acceleration, does it not? Thus, in both cases, the sailcraft accelerates toward the Sun and can actually fly by the star along different paths. However, our surprises are not finished. It can be shown mathematically that the perihelion in each case is *not* the point of maximum speed (as in either classical or generalized Keplerian orbits). Past the perihelion (at 0.20 AU), the sailcraft continues to accelerate until a maximum speed value (83.8 km/s) is achieved very soon. Subsequently, the speed decreases (but not so much) with another striking feature. Due to the radial number that balances more than a half of the solar gravity (at any distance) and to the transversal number that does not cease accelerating the vehicle, the sailcraft speed exhibits a sort of plateau past the initial circular departure orbit. Differently from parabolic and hyperbolic orbits, one can speak of cruise phase indeed.

The attentive reader could argue, OK, it is a fine and intriguing behavior of (nonlinear) solar sailing; but will we gain anything? Well, we above reported a speed of 20 km/s at 100 AU for an intuitive sailcraft control. Now, accurate calculations show that practically the cruise speed amounts to 70 km/s for any  $R > 9$  AU. We stress that the sailcraft is the same; only the attitude control strategy is different and is constant in SOF again! As a result, this sailcraft is able to reach 100 AU after 7.9 years from launch, instead of 23.2 years. Figure 20.8 shows this case of motion reversal. In particular, the sail orientation in HIF is shown (remember that it is constant in SOF). The capital letters in the figure label special points in chronological order: M maximum distance from the Sun; P, minimum speed; Q,  $\mathbf{H}=0$ ; S, energy vanishes, namely, the escape condition is met; U, perihelion, and W, maximum speed.

The example discussed above is only one element of the large mission class of fast sailing. Figure 20.9a shows how the trajectory profile changes with the negative transversal number and the radial number higher than  $\frac{1}{2}$ . Note that the motion reversal happens even for lightness numbers lower than that considered above. Figure 20.9b shows the corresponding hodographs. Of course, the unit circles denote the Earth velocity evolution (here



**20.8** Example of *fast solar sailing*. Sun flyby via 2D motion-reversal for escaping the solar system; sailcraft technology is of  $2 \text{ g/m}^2$ . (a) Pre-perihelion and post-perihelion trajectory arcs with constant-in-SOF sail attitude. The second profile (*thinner line*), starting from point Q, shows the symmetric direct-motion trajectory. (b) Time behaviors of the Sun–sailcraft distance and sailcraft speed. The time tags are described in the text



**20.9** (a) Angular-momentum reversal as a function of the negative transversal number and the radial number higher than  $1/2$ ; (b) Hodographs of the trajectories plotted in (a). The unit circle denotes the Earth velocity evolution (here assumed to be circular for simplicity). Velocity unit is the earth orbital speed (e.o.s.), or  $2\pi$  AU/year



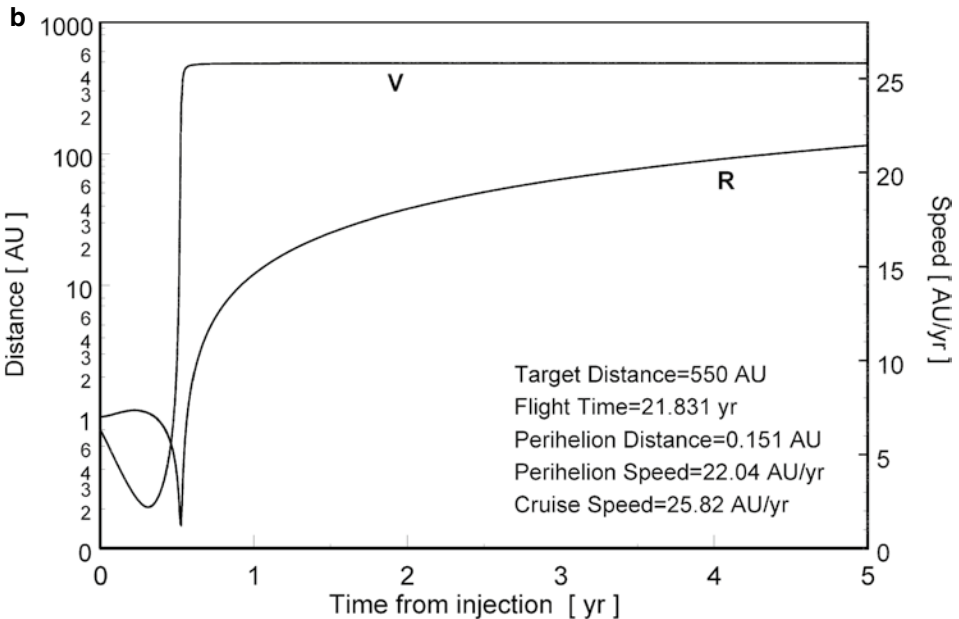
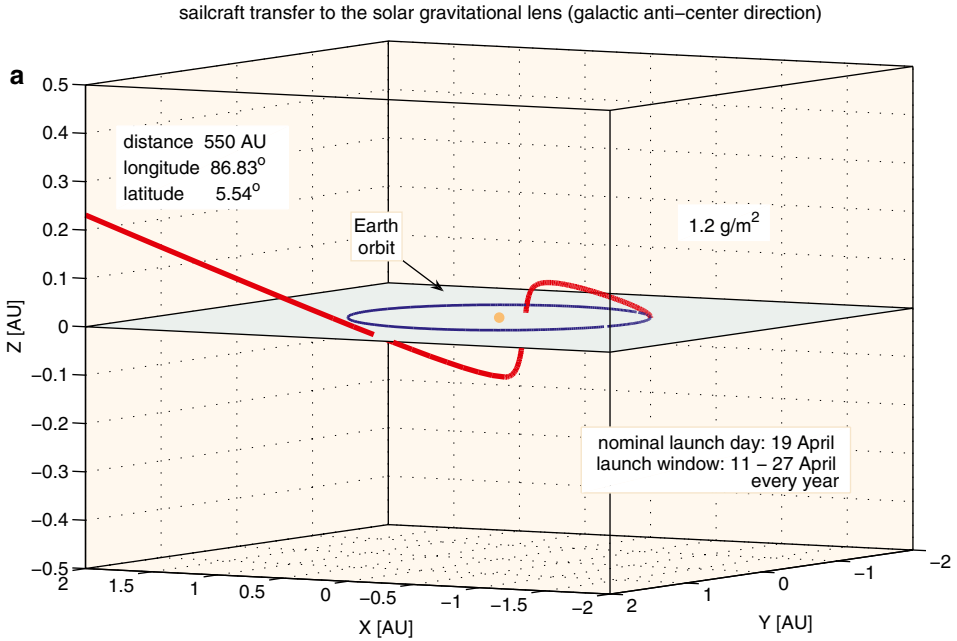
assumed as circular for simplicity). Plots are self-explanatory. In particular, note how each hodograph evolves by reversing the curvature vector. The final speeds in the last two examples are considerably higher than the speed of the departure planet.

*Note 2:* We have emphasized sailing mode 2. Trajectory of sailing mode-1 is different in the second part, namely, from point Q on. However, both cruise speed and transfer time are exactly equal to those ones of mode 2. This is due to the symmetry of such sailing modes. If you draw the line passing through the Sun (at the origin O) and the point Q, then either trajectory arc can be gotten from the other one by a  $180^\circ$  rotation about this line. Then, the final path directions are different. However, this is a very good thing. As a point of fact, by shifting the launch date by some months (depending on the lightness number), one finds *two* launch opportunities per year, *every year*, for rapidly escaping from the solar system toward a prefixed direction. Said differently, the dependence on the relative positions of planets to give energy to spacecraft (often through many flybys) will be only a vague memory when light and large solar sails are made and managed in space.

*Note 3:* The perihelion value is rather sensitive to the sail attitude. Small midcourse attitude maneuvers may be accomplished to satisfy trajectory constraints. After perihelion, some large attitude maneuver could be designed and safely performed to optimize some index of performance, for example, the time to target.

The 2D trajectories discussed hitherto are ideal; no real sailcraft can strictly move in a plane for a number of reasons. At first glance, this may seem plain; in fact, there are attitude errors, planetary and environmental perturbations, and unmodeled forces. However, there is a non-intuitive cause. If the third component of the lightness vector, which we named the normal number ( $l_z$ ) in Chap. 19, is different from zero in any finite time interval wherein one requires  $\mathbf{H}=0$ , then the trajectory *torsion* diverges as the angle ( $\varphi$ ) from  $\mathbf{R}$  to  $\mathbf{V}$  approaches  $180^\circ$ , no matter how small  $l_z$  may be. That brings about a new sailcraft trajectory class (which is three-dimensional and is driven by a sail attitude profile that is not as easy as that above) exhibiting motion reversal. The analysis of such a class involves not only energy and angular momentum, but also trajectory torsion. It can be proved that the  $\mathbf{Hl}$  does not vanish, but passes through a minimum much lower than the angular momentum of the sailcraft departure orbit. After the time of such minimum, the third component of  $\mathbf{H}$  reverses and retains its new sign in receding from the Sun.

We would like to end this chapter by discussing an example of 3D motion-reversal very fast trajectory. The related mission was first presented and discussed at STAIF-2000 (Albuquerque, New Mexico) by author Vulpetti. Sail-system and spacecraft technology has been supposed such that  $\sigma=1.2 \text{ g/m}^2$ , namely, over three orders of magnitude better than IKAROS. The *maximum* lightness number is 1.21 (equivalent to a characteristic acceleration of  $7.18 \text{ mm/s}^2$ ); that is, the sailcraft could, when necessary, thrust higher than the local gravitational acceleration. The nominal target of this extrasolar mission is  $\{550 \text{ AU, ecliptic longitude}=86.8^\circ, \text{ ecliptic latitude}=5.5^\circ\}$ . The distance value means the minimum distance of the Sun's gravitational lens (see Glossary) for photons (nothing dealing with gravitational waves); the direction is that from the Galaxy's center to the Sun (the galactic anti-center direction). Figures 20.10 summarize what may be of concern here. The trajectory arc around the Sun clearly shows that the sailcraft goes above the ecliptic by decelerating, and then sailcraft crosses the ecliptic after motion reversal. Perihelion



**20.10** Example of 3D *very fast* solar sailing. Sailcraft escapes the solar system via motion-reversal and aims at the target distance of 550 AU. Sailcraft technology has been assumed to be  $1.2 \text{ g/m}^2$ . (a) Pre-perihelion and post-perihelion trajectory arcs, (b) Time behaviors of the Sun-sailcraft distance and sailcraft speed (Solar Sails, 1st edition, courtesy of Springer)

(0.15 AU) is below the ecliptic. The sailcraft reemerges still accelerating because now the optimal sail attitude entails a lightness number of 1.18. The time evolution of sailcraft speed and distance are plotted in Fig. 20.10b. The effect of having a sailcraft sail loading sufficiently below the critical density is manifest in the speed behavior: no local maximum takes place. Strictly speaking, if the sail is not jettisoned at few astronomical units, the sailcraft continues to accelerate because the sum of the accelerations is  $+0.18 \mu_{\odot}/R^2$  outward. If one jettisons the sail at, for example, 5 AU, the speed loss is 8 % of the cruise speed. Since a high-technology sail may also work as a multifunction object, there is no compelling reason for jettisoning it inside the solar system; this may be accomplished beyond the heliopause. Note the square-root-like shape of  $V(t)$  with a cruise value of 25.82 AU/year, or 122.4 km/s, or almost three times the escape speed from the solar system at Earth's orbit. According to the criteria set at the beginning of this section, this is a very fast solar-sail mission. The 550-AU target distance is achieved in less than 22 years.<sup>3</sup> A 16-day launch window is found in April, *every year*.

Numerical experiments, regarding Sun flybys via either motion-reversal or motion-direct, have shown that this highly nonlinear effect in solar sailing is possible only if the sailcraft sail loading is lower than 2.10-2.20 g/m<sup>2</sup>, depending on how the thrust model is accurate. If medium-term technology exhibits higher values, then *two* direct-motion solar flybys may be used to increase the cruise speed for escaping the solar system. However, one does not get the same cruise speed of the single flyby! The difference between these two modes is significant and depends on the actual  $\sigma$ -value.

Finally, what about the above-mentioned upper bound  $V^{star}$ ? The superscript *star* means that it depends also on the star that emits light. It appears obvious that some limit (somewhat less than  $c$ ) should exist from a couple of evident facts: (1) the Sun has a finite temperature and radius, and (2) the sailcraft sail loading cannot be made arbitrarily small. We suggest some considerations related to dynamics, nanotechnology and space environment (see Chap. 21). As a result, the following very simple expression,  $V^{star} = 2\pi\sqrt{2l_{max}/R_{min}}$  [AU / year], is a good reference value for the maximum (realistically attained) speed by future advanced sailcraft. Note that, if high lightness number is achieved after the separation of a spacecraft from the (remaining) sailcraft having another spacecraft as payload, then  $l_{max}$  pertains to this sailcraft.

Projected nanotechnology (from current research) might allow  $l \simeq 30$ , e.g. for tiny sailcraft discussed by author Matloff [16], while the minimum reachable distance (by such sailcraft) from the Sun might be  $R_{min} = 0.05$  AU. Then,  $V^{star} \simeq 218$  AU/year  $\simeq 1030$  km/s  $= 0.0034c$ . The future of solar-photon sailing, in the context of the so-called interstellar precursor missions [17], appears exciting enough.

---

<sup>3</sup> At the time of this writing, Voyager-1 is far 126.8 AU from the Sun and is running off with a speed of 3.5 AU/year (<http://voyager.jpl.nasa.gov/>). Independently of the antenna working, this Voyager will reach 550 AU in the autumn of 2134. If the above (or like) sailcraft were launched in 2027 (i.e. 50 years *after* the Voyagers), it would achieve 550 AU in 2049, i.e. 85 years *before* Voyager-1! A nanotech-based fast sailcraft is not required to flyby many planets to get much energy for escaping from the solar system. One Sun flyby is necessary and sufficient for tapping much more energy.

## FURTHER READING

<http://adsabs.harvard.edu/abs/1979Sci...205.1133E>.  
<http://archive.ncsa.uiuc.edu/Cyberia/NumRel/EinsteinTest.html>.

## REFERENCES

1. I.J. L. Wright, *Space Sailing*, Gordon and Breach Science Publishers, 1992
2. G. L. Matloff, The Solar Collector and Near-Earth Object Deflection, *Vol. 62, No. 4-5*, February–March 2008, pp. 334–337
3. G. L. Matloff, Deflecting Asteroids, *IEEE Spectrum*, March 28, 2012
4. X. Zeng, H. Baoyin, J. Li, and S. Gong, Earth-crossing asteroids deflection with a sailcraft, 3<sup>rd</sup> International Symposium on Solar Sailing, June 11-13, Glasgow, 2013
5. J. Heiligers and C. McInnes, New Families of non-Keplerian Orbits: Solar Sail Motion over Cylinders and Spheres, 3<sup>rd</sup> International Symposium on Solar Sailing, June 11-13, Glasgow, 2013
6. G. Aliasi, G. Mengali, and A. A. Quarta, Artificial Equilibrium Points for a Solar Balloon in the Alpha Centauri System, 8<sup>th</sup> IAA Symposium on the Future of Space Exploration: Towards the Stars, Turin, July 3-5, 2013
7. J. F. L. Simmons, A. J. C. McDonald, and J. C. Brown, The Restricted 3-Body Problem with Radiation Pressure, *Celestial Mechanics*, **35** (1985), 145-187
8. V. V. Markellos, E. Perdios, K. Papadakis, The stability of inner collinear equilibrium points in the photo-gravitational elliptic restricted problem, *Astrophysics and Space Science*, Vol. 199, No. 1, 1993, pp. 139-146
9. G. Vulpetti, *Missions to the Heliopause and Beyond by Staged Propulsion Spacecraft*, 43<sup>rd</sup> IAF Congress, paper IAA-92-0240, at The World Space Congress, Washington D.C., 1992 (published by the American Institute of Aeronautics and Astronautics, New York).
10. G. Vulpetti, *Sailcraft at High Speed by Orbital Angular Momentum Reversal*, *Acta Astronautica* 1997, 40: 733–758
11. G. Vulpetti, *3D high-speed escape heliocentric trajectories by all-metallic-sail low-mass sailcraft*, *Acta Astronautica* 1996; 39: 161–170
12. G. Vulpetti, Sailcraft-Based Mission to The Solar Gravitational Lens, STAIF-2000, Albuquerque (New Mexico, USA), 30 Jan - 3 Feb, 2000
13. G. Vulpetti, *Fundamentals and Progress of Solar-Photon Sailing*, Lectures at Dept. of Astronautical Engineering of Rome University ‘La Sapienza’, April-May 2013, in /SolarSailing/SailPhotonPhysics of <http://www.giovannivulpetti.it>
14. G. L. Matloff, G. Vulpetti, C. Bangs, R. Haggerty, *The Interstellar Probe (ISP): Pre-Perihelion Trajectories and Application of Holography*, NASA/CR-2002-211730, June 2002.
15. G. Vulpetti, *Fast Solar Sailing: Astrodynamics of Special Sailcraft Trajectories*, Springer, 2012
16. G. L. Matloff, *Deep-Space Probes*, 2nd ed., Springer-Praxis, Chichester, UK, 2005.
17. *Studies by the International Academy of Astronautics, Key Technologies to Enable Near-Term Interstellar Scientific Precursor Missions*, May 2013

# 21

## Sails in the Space Environment

Gossamer structures like solar sails are very fragile. First-generation solar sails will be manufactured and tested on Earth and, consequently, be required to sustain their own weight in our 1 g environment. In space they will experience what is perhaps the most hostile environment known to man—space itself. The operating “space” for a solar sail is far more than a mere vacuum, which poses problems in and of itself. Space near the Sun, which is where solar sails will first operate, is bathed in radiation from our star in the form of visible light, ultraviolet photons, x-ray, and gamma rays. The subsequent thermal extremes pose many unique design challenges. The solar wind pummels near-space constantly, and violent storms of charged particles periodically and unpredictably erupt from the Sun and engulf vast regions of interplanetary space much larger than Earth. In general, the inner solar system is not a very friendly place to operate, and it is here that solar sails will be first asked to perform.

### MANUFACTURING: THE ENVIRONMENT OF DAMAGE AND RISK

A solar sail must be lightweight enough to move itself and a payload (in space) when sunlight reflects from it. To meet the design requirements for many of the missions discussed in this book (see Chaps. 9 and 17), even the first-generation solar sails have to be gossamer-like; hence, they will be very fragile. In addition, they must be sufficiently large. The sail must be large to reflect enough light to produce thrust and propel itself and its payload to a destination elsewhere in the solar system. First-generation solar sails will have areal densities of 10 g/m<sup>2</sup> or less, and be tens of meters in diameter. (This is the loading of the bare sail, not that of the whole sailcraft we denoted by  $\sigma$  in Chap. 19.)

At first glance, these sails will resemble common aluminum foil found in many kitchens. Who hasn't attempted to pull aluminum foil off a roll, only to have it hopelessly torn to shreds, forcing you to start over with another piece? However, appearances are misleading. Aluminum foil used in the kitchen is typically 0.013 mm thick, thicker than the first-generation solar sails. Now imagine fabricating a sail 100-m by 100-m square out of something ten times thinner than aluminum foil. Not only must the sail be this large, but it has to be strong enough to sustain its own weight under gravity during testing. Even our best materials are too fragile (by themselves) under these conditions and require bracing with cords embedded in them to provide additional strength and to reduce the effects of the inevitable tears. This cord serves the same ripstop function as those found in parachutes. If a tear starts, it will spread until it encounters the cord, where it will be stopped. The edges of the sails are reinforced and securely fastened to the booms during operation. All of these tear-prevention techniques add mass to the sail and must be carefully considered in any sail design.

### **LAUNCH: SHAKE, RATTLE, ROLL, AND OUTGAS**

Once the sail is manufactured, it must be folded and stowed for launch. Even though the Cosmos-1 mission by the Planetary Society was unsuccessful in 2005 due to a catastrophic failure in the Russian launcher Volna, the preassembly operations and the assembled spacecraft could give some idea about folding and stowing, as shown in Fig. 21.1. IKAROS and NanoSail-D had similar challenges, and difficulties, in their manufacture. In the future, very large solar sails would be folded and stored in small structures within spacecraft for later deployment. Unfortunately, the very factors that make a rocket launch exciting to watch and experience, even vicariously, are the rapid acceleration and the intense vibrations experienced by all things onboard. This vibration environment can damage improperly engineered payloads, shaking them apart before they even make it to space. National space agencies and most, if not all, commercial launch providers require that all payloads demonstrate they will not shake apart during launch. This requires both analysis and testing during the design and development phases of a project. Again, sails are lightweight and gossamer, making them potentially susceptible to damage from the stresses of launch. Fortunately, with adequate analysis and testing, they can be packaged to survive the launch environment of whatever vehicle they are selected to fly upon.

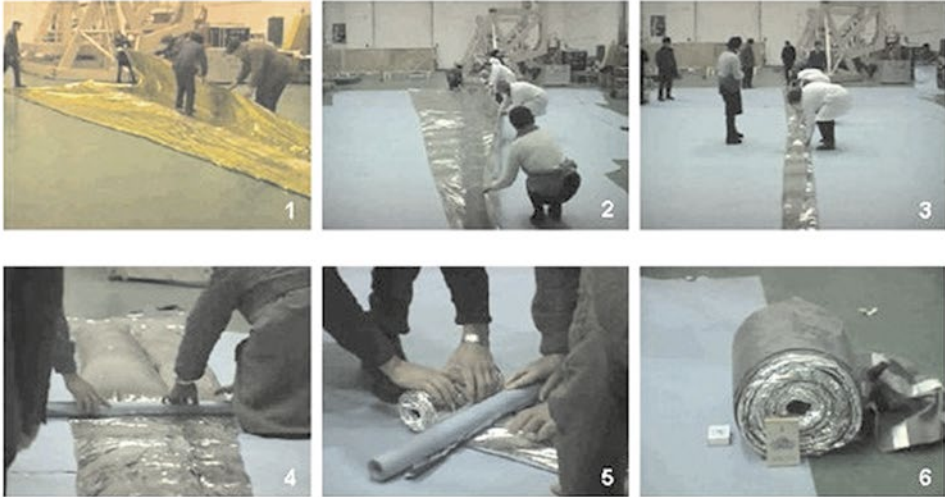
Another problem during launch is outgassing. A rocket may go from one atmosphere of pressure to total vacuum in 8 min. A payload riding the rocket experiences the very same pressure change, resulting in a rapid flow of air from the craft to space. A sail has the additional problem of trapped air between folded layers. If the folding is not performed with care, then air bubbles between some layers will form and rush out from between others. The results might range from an inability to deploy (from a bloated sail) to outright destruction (from the rapid out-rush of air, causing a tear). For this reason, testing, called "ascent venting," is performed to simulate the launch environment. It has been shown that sails can be packaged to survive the rigors of launch into space.

## SOLAR SAIL PROJECT

BABAKIN SCIENCE & RESEARCH CENTER SPACE RESEARCH INSTITUTE RAS



### SOLAR SAIL LAYING



21.1 Pictures of the Cosmos-1 sail folding and packing (Adapted in color and resolution from The Planetary Society's website, [planetary.org](http://planetary.org), and its related links in May 2005. Courtesy of The Planetary Society)



**LOW EARTH ORBIT: “NO-MAN’S-LAND” FOR SOLAR SAILS**

We discussed how easily sails may be damaged during the manufacturing process and during launch. But what about in space? While they are optimized to operate in the low-gravity vacuum of space, one must realize that this environment is neither empty nor benign. The environment of low earth orbit (LEO) is particularly challenging—so challenging, in fact, that it is likely that solar sails will never operate there.

First, there is not a discrete upper boundary to Earth’s atmosphere. While the pressures are very low, often lower than many vacuum chambers on Earth, within LEO they are not zero. Broadly speaking, LEO is a region beginning at approximately 160 km altitude extending outward to about 600 km. Within this region, there is a diffuse gas of charged particles, or plasma, formed when sunlight interacts with very high altitude atmospheric gases, giving them enough energy to become ionized and to escape further from Earth. In addition to the plasma, there is a rather significant population of neutral atoms as well. The characteristics of the plasma and neutral atoms are fairly well known and their effects are frequently encountered and measured.

The International Space Station operates well within this region of atmospheric plasma. The net effect is that the station interacts at nearly 8 km/s with the plasma, resulting in an overall drag force on the station, acting to slow it down and drop its orbital altitude. Without frequent propulsive reboost, the Space Station would spiral ever deeper into the atmosphere until it finally burns up and falls to the ground. But the station has been designed to reboost periodically, maintaining its orbit.

The ballistic coefficient is a measure of a spacecraft’s ability to overcome air (or plasma) resistance in flight. The ballistic coefficient can be calculated for a body based on its overall mass and surface area. The larger and lighter-weight the spacecraft, the more air resistance it experiences in flight. The smaller or heavier the object, the better it performs. Solar sails are both lightweight and very large, and hence have a very “bad” ballistic coefficient. When unfurled in LEO, the drag on the sail produced by its flight through this residual atmosphere can be very high; larger in magnitude than the thrust the sail experiences by reflecting sunlight. Simply put, a sail flown in LEO will very quickly lose energy by interacting with the ionosphere (despite the fact that it is getting accelerated by reflected sunlight), and find itself on a reentry trajectory. It is easy to compute that a sail shall operate beyond 700 km (nominally); if one takes the upper-atmosphere changes into account, the previous lower limit increases to 750–770 km.

Not only does the plasma of LEO put too much drag on the sail, but it also (potentially) causes damage to the sail itself. One of the constituents of the plasma is monatomic oxygen produced when ultraviolet light ionizes a normal diatomic oxygen atom. This monatomic oxygen quickly erodes away many of the materials commonly used in solar sails and other space systems. While not insurmountable, it is still an issue that must be addressed. Recent environmental testing of proposed solar sail materials resulted in their becoming very fragile and, in some cases, disintegrating under the assault of the monatomic oxygen. The combined effects of excessive atmospheric drag, monatomic oxygen, and solar ultraviolet light make LEO a very poor place for solar sails to operate.



## THE INNER SOLAR SYSTEM: AT HOME FOR SOLAR SAILS (BUT NOT A SAFE HARBOR)

Solar sails operate best in the inner solar system and well away from Earth. Sunlight is plentiful and continuous. Away from planetary gravity, there are few mechanical stresses on their tenuous gossamer structures. Though the extreme effects of LEO are not present in interplanetary space, it, too, is far from empty.

Permeating the solar system is a constant stream of small rocky projectiles called micrometeors. Though micrometeors are very small, weighing as little as a gram or less in many cases, they are moving very fast. In addition, if they hit the sail, they can potentially damage it. Many of the materials being considered for solar sails were tested under simulated space conditions that included impinging upon them with hypervelocity pellets. Though the sails began to look like Swiss cheese, they remained structurally intact with very little tearing. And since the total reflective area lost from hole formation was very small, there appears to be no impact on the long-term operational performance of the overall solar sail propulsion system.

If you refer to Chap. 18, you will see that a flat plate in space near the Earth that faces directly into the Sun receives a nearly constant  $1,366 \text{ W/m}^2$  of solar electromagnetic (EM) radiation. This varies with solar distance according to an inverse square relationship. Every time you halve the distance to the Sun, the solar electromagnetic flux on the flat plate is multiplied by a factor of four. On the other hand, the solar EM flux is reduced by a factor of four if you double the solar distance.

Most of the Sun's radiant output falls in the near ultraviolet (UV) through near infrared (IR) regions of the spectrum. Most of the linear momentum transferred to a solar photon sail by the solar EM flux is due to photons in this spectral range.

Photons farther into the infrared than about one micron contribute little to sail acceleration. These photons that are absorbed by the sail contribute to the sail's radiant or black-body temperature.

Although photons with shorter wavelength than the near UV carry more linear momentum than their visual spectral-range counterparts, there are fewer of them. Far-UV, X-ray and gamma ray photons will affect the sail's physical condition because they are more energetic than photons with longer wavelengths.

High-energy UV photons will ionize atoms in the sail surface. As photon energy increases towards the X-ray and gamma-ray spectral regions, the incident photons can penetrate further into the sail, and cause more ionization events.

The problem of quantifying these interactions is very complex. Some electrons will immediately recombine with near-by positive ions; others will be ejected from the sail. This results in a net positive charge on the sail surface that complicates the interaction with the electrically charged particles in the solar wind. Fortunately, even with the increased brittleness from solar UV exposure, several solar sail materials have been tested and they remained intact and functional—even after a simulated exposure equaling several years in the inner solar system.

**CLOSE SOLAR APPROACHES: INCREASED THRUST—BUT AT WHAT COST?**

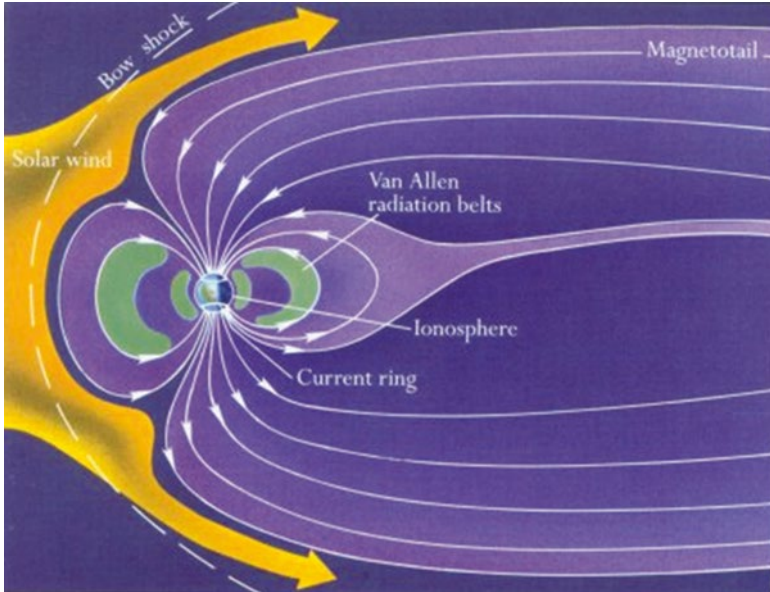
If humans or their robot emissaries are ever to venture to the stars, one of the very few propulsion systems that may ultimately prove feasible is the ultra-thin solar photon sail unfurled as close to the Sun as possible—in a so-called sun-diving maneuver. Metallic monolayer sails tens of nanometers thick satisfy the kinematical requirements of propelling a spacecraft on a millennium-duration voyage to another star. Such sails also seem capable of surviving the thermal environment of a close solar pass, and many of them have tensile strengths equal to the stresses imposed by the consequent high accelerations. Even better solutions may come from nanotechnology, as discussed in Chap. 12.

But alas, that is not the entire story! The near-Sun environment is a far-from-tranquil region. Streams of electrically charged particles—the electrons, protons, and ionized helium atoms of the solar wind—hurry outward from the Sun at velocities of hundreds of kilometers per second. Although most solar electromagnetic radiation is in the form of relatively benign radio, infrared, or visible light, a considerable fraction is in the ultraviolet, x-ray, or gamma-ray spectral ranges. These photons are energetic enough to ionize sail atoms. As we saw in Chap. 20, considerably better and safer strategies entail solar flybys in either direct or reversal motion. And this may not be a successful thing if not occurring during a typical “quiet Sun” period. A sun-diving ship foolhardy enough to attempt a close solar pass during the more active phase of the solar cycle would run the risk of encountering the emissions from a solar flare or from the so-called coronal mass ejection (CME, a huge release of the solar-corona matter). Even at Earth’s comfortable distance from the Sun, flares can affect weather and disrupt communications. Close up, they would likely be fatal to a sundiving sail.

Solar flares and CMEs are not the same thing, although often they are associated. From the sailcraft viewpoint, either phenomenon would produce high energy particles impinging any vehicle in the vicinity. However, both phenomena appear to be strongly random; therefore, space mission designers are not able to predict them. Nevertheless, using progressive and unprecedented campaigns of Sun observations also from highly sophisticated instruments on spacecraft, solar physics has been advancing remarkably.

The solar wind streams out of the solar corona at velocities generally between 300 and 800 km/s. It is composed mainly of electrons and protons, with some singly and doubly ionized helium nuclei and trace amounts of more massive ionized elements. The typical density of the solar wind in the vicinity of the Earth is 10 particles per cubic centimeter. At 13:55 UT on February 17, 2013, the solar wind density at 1 AU was about 14 particles per cubic centimeter, reported on line by the Australian Government Bureau of Meteorology Radio and Space Weather Service, and the wind velocity near Earth was 361 km/s. Solar wind fluctuates continuously.

There is a magnetic field associated with the ions and electrons in the solar wind and this solar particle flow therefore interacts with the Earth’s magnetic field. Since solar conditions can affect space assets and high flying aircraft, the solar wind is continually monitored by several spacecraft. This interaction between the solar wind and Earth’s magnetosphere is presented schematically in Fig. 21.2. The NASA ACE (Advanced Composition Explorer) is stationed at the gravitationally stable Earth-Sun Lagrange-1 point about 1.5 million km closer to the Sun than the Earth to yield early warning of



21.2 The interaction between the solar wind and Earth's Magnetosphere (Courtesy of NASA)

energetic solar eruptions. Two other space observatories: Stereo A and Stereo B lead and trail the Earth in its solar orbit.

In the relationships given below, the in-brackets units on the right-hand side are expressed in the SI. The technically-inclined reader will recognize that expressions are independent of the units one likes to use; however, again, SI units are recommended.

It is easy to demonstrate that, like solar electromagnetic flux, ion *number* density in a constant, spherically symmetric solar wind,  $\rho_{ion}$ , in (charged) particles per unit volume is an inverse square phenomenon. Consider the mass of solar wind particles  $M_{sw}$  passing every second through a spherical surface centered on the Sun. This mass rate, which must be independent of solar distance  $R_s$ , can be expressed as:

$$M_{sw} = 4\pi R_s^2 \rho_{ion} m_{ion} V_w \quad [\text{kg} / \text{s}] \quad (21.1)$$

where  $m_{ion}$  is the average mass of a charged particle in the solar wind, and  $V_w$  is the wind velocity. Now, a bit of attention is necessary for better understanding the above statement. Let us consider a parcel of solar wind, emitted at time  $t$  by certain zones of the solar atmosphere (for which the distance from the Sun's center is approximately one solar radius). This 'piece of solar plasma' travels and reaches distance  $R_s$  after a time interval, say,  $\Delta t$  *without* undergoing mass variation; this happens because *no* other parcel will overlap this one in the interval  $[t, t + \Delta t]$  because solar wind always expands *radially* in the solar system.<sup>1</sup> As a result, in Eq. (21.1), ion density shall scale with the reciprocal of the square of the solar distance.

---

<sup>1</sup> To a much lower extent, the galactic/extragalactic particle fluxes into the solar system are low in the current context.

The electric charge from the solar wind interacting each second with a solar-photon sail of area  $A_{sail}$  can be expressed as  $Q_{sail}$ :

$$Q_{sail} = q_{ion} \rho_{ion} A_{sail} V_w \quad [\text{C/s}] \quad (21.2)$$

where  $q_{ion}$  is the average electric charge per ion. For simplicity, it is assumed in Eq. (21.2) that the sail is directly facing into the solar wind.

The mass of solar wind interacting with the sail per second,  $dM_{sw}/dt$  is the product of solar wind ion density, average mass of a charged particle in the solar wind, sail area normal to the solar wind and solar wind velocity. For a sail that faces directly into the solar wind,

$$\frac{dM_{sw}}{dt} = m_{ion} \rho_{ion} A_{sail} V_w \quad [\text{kg/s}] \quad (21.3)$$

Linear momentum is defined as the product of mass and velocity. The linear momentum of the solar wind,  $P_{sw}$ , striking the sail (which is still oriented normal to the solar wind) per second is written:

$$\frac{dP_{sw}}{dt} = V_w \frac{dM_{sw}}{dt} = m_{ion} \rho_{ion} A_{sail} V_w^2 \quad [\text{kg m/s}^2 \text{ or N}] \quad (21.4)$$

Finally, the kinetic energy ( $KE$ ) per second (or kinetic power) of the solar wind material striking this sail is given as one-half the product of  $dM_{sw}/dt$  and the square of solar wind velocity. This is expressed as:

$$\frac{d(KE)}{dt} = (1/2) m_{ion} \rho_{ion} A_{sail} V_w^3 \quad [\text{W}] \quad (21.5)$$

Mitigation strategies are possible, such as electrically charged grids in front of the sail to moderate electron velocities or layers of protective plastic that evaporate when struck by solar ultraviolet light rather than becoming ionized. But these devices will add mass to the sail and reduce the solar-system escape velocity. Again, nanotechnology could help us in designing solar sails much more resistant to UV.

Possibly, catastrophic problems may arise from prolonged exposure to the space environment that is not related to any physical damage of the sail materials. A solar-photon sail, travelling in the solar-system environment, can undergo a charging process. Our current approximated scenario consists of a sail, with side of the order of 100 m, immersed in the heliospheric solar plasma (i.e. the solar wind) and in the solar photon flow (e.g. Chap. 18). It can be shown that such linear size is always greater than the so-called Debye length of the solar wind (a basic characteristic length of plasma) at any distance  $R > 0.1$  AU from the Sun up to the termination shock.<sup>2</sup> Simultaneously, these sail sizes are always less than other important characteristic lengths of the solar wind, e.g. the electron's gyro radius and the proton's inertial length. The first length is the radius of

---

<sup>2</sup> Some years ago, Voyagers 1 and 2 have crossed such a boundary, through which the solar wind becomes subsonic, thus confirming its existence.

spiraling of electrons about the (local) magnetic field. The second one (which is also called the proton skin depth) is important in the interaction of plasma with a magnetized body. What the consequence of all that? A sailcraft can be considered as a *small* object in the solar wind, but sufficiently *large* to sense collective features of the wind, e.g. the (quasi) neutrality of the wind. In addition, such a sail can “see” the electron and proton flows as two different currents impinging on it.

UV photons with energies of 4–5 eV, or higher (i.e. with wavelengths less than 300 nm), can induce the release of photoelectrons from the lattice of the sail’s reflective layer (i.e. aluminum in the current generation of sailcraft). Simplifying things, we have four main current densities ( $A/m^2$ )<sup>3</sup> to/from the sail: two incident flows of electrons and protons, one exiting photoelectron flow, and one incident flow of  $\alpha$ -particles. The first three flows are dominant in number, but the He nuclei are doubly charged. When the *effective* positive currents balance the negative currents,<sup>4</sup> then the sail achieves some equilibrium voltage, called the *sail floating potential* (SFP), measured with respect to the external solar plasma. Because current density is the product of the species number density, its charge, and its velocity (relative to the sailcraft), SFP strongly depends also on the *local* solar winds conditions that the sailcraft will be crossing along its space path.

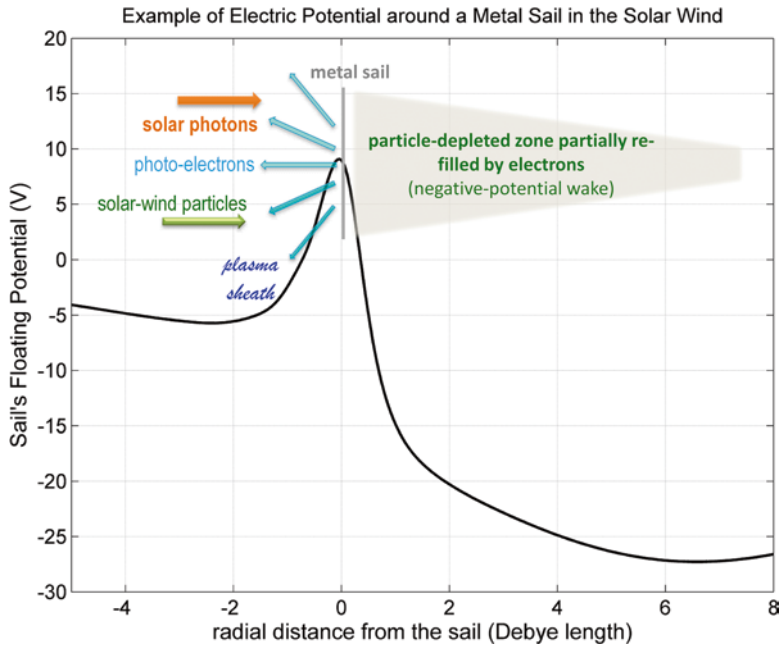
The profile of the electric potential around the sail is not symmetric. Due to the plasma properties of the solar wind, there is a thin sheath of space charge in front of the sail, whereas a long particle-depleted wake develops behind the sail; however, since solar-wind electrons move (thermally) much more quickly than the wind bulk, this causes a partial *refilling* of the wake volume with a resulting charge *negative*. This picture is confirmed by sophisticated simulations on computer. Just for a schematic visualization, Fig. 21.3 sketches the behavior of the electric potential around a metal sail in the interplanetary plasma. SFP is expected positive (at a few tens of volts in general, or somewhat less as in the shown case); however, when temperature, speed and density of the solar wind are particularly high, say, notably higher than the values averaged over a solar cycle, SFP exhibits (low) negative values. SFP behavior as function of the Sun-sailcraft distance is more complicated than what we outlined here, also because it depends on the orientation of the sail with respect to the Sun (Vulpetti 2012, *Further Reading*).

For many of the aforementioned problems, it may be far easier to mitigate these effects in ultimate human-occupied interstellar arks than in early robotic interstellar expeditions. To maintain near-Sun accelerations at levels that can be tolerated by human occupants, such craft might require ballast that would be released as the ship accelerates out from perihelion. Charged grids and protective evaporating layers could certainly serve this function as well.

---

<sup>3</sup> According to SI, one of the seven independent basic units (from which the units of any other physical and chemical quantities are derived) is the ampere (A), not the coulomb (C) as one might be induced to guess. For a full explanation, refer to National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST) in *Further Reading*.

<sup>4</sup> The ‘entering’ or ‘exiting’ currents are given a sign in order to calculate the charge accumulation in the sail correctly. For instance, the leaving flow of photoelectrons will be given the positive sign, i.e. it is equivalent to a positive current entering the sail.



21.3 Schematic profile of the electric potential around a metal sail travelling the interplanetary plasma. This example regards a square sail of side 50 m immersed in the solar wind with a Debye length of 25 m at 1 AU. The actual potential's contour surfaces around the sail are somewhat complicated. The key point to be remembered is that the values of the electric potential in the three-dimensional volume around the sail changes continuously as the solar wind quantities do with time and Sun-sail distance (from author Vulpetti database)

Because of the complexities of the interaction between the sail and various solar emissions, even under quiet Sun conditions, it is unwise to generalize from one sail configuration to another. The interaction between the space environment and each solar photon sail with its payload and associated structure must be considered separately. Sail material, solar distance and other factors must all be accounted for.

For example, author Matloff first compared various candidate elemental all-metal sail materials for application to a spacecraft capable of interstellar travel. From the point of view of low density, high reflectivity and high melting point, beryllium was the favorite.

He then presented the case for a beryllium hollow-body sail with hydrogen fill gas. But how closely could such a spacecraft approach the Sun during a sundiver maneuver? And how thin a sail of this type could survive the harsh environment near the Sun? Finally, is it possible to scale these results from the small, ~1-km sails of this type that we could economically manufacture in space late in the twenty-first century to sails hundreds of kilometers in size that could propel a small human-occupied generation ship?

Matloff assisted a colleague, Roman Kezerashvili of New York City College of Technology, in performing the analysis. It was necessary to investigate a wide number of atomic-level events in sail material induced by the solar wind and penetrating solar EM radiation.

When all these factors were accounted for, the results were interesting. It seems that beryllium sails function best when the perihelion exceeds 0.06–0.07 AU. To minimize space environment effects, the thinnest beryllium sails have a thickness of about 40 nm. Starting from a parabolic pre-perihelion solar orbit and maintaining the sail normal to the Sun during the acceleration process, an interstellar cruise velocity of about 600 km/s does not seem unreasonable for this sail configuration. The projected trip duration to the nearest stars, Alpha and Proxima Centauri is about 2,000 years.

But most interesting and unexpected was the diffusion rate for fill gas in small (~2 km) and very large (~1,000 km) hollow-body beryllium sails. Probably because of high-energy photon penetration into the sails, fill gas diffuses more rapidly from smaller sails than larger ones.

Solar photon sails may scale with size for certain configurations when considering kinematics, thermal effects and stress during acceleration. But such simple scaling does not seem to be the case when considering the interaction between the space environment and the sail.

Studies of the interaction between sailcraft and the near-Sun environment are an active field of research. Until NASA or some other space agency launches a probe to survey this region of the solar system, the closest safe solar approach distance will be uncertain. All we can say is that it should be conservatively higher than about 0.1 AU (or 21 solar radii from the Sun). For example, there are further phenomena, related to the *slow* solar wind and not yet known completely, which may affect sails in a manner depending on periods around the minimum of the usual 11-year solar cycle.

## STATE-OF-THE-ART MATERIALS

The main requirements for solar-sail materials may be summarized as follows: (1) lightweight, (2) strong, (3) highly reflective, (4) easily folded and stored, (5) UV-resistant, and (6) thermally matched to the particular environment in which they will operate.

One support material that meets these requirements is called CP-1. NASA used CP-1, produced by Mantech/NeXolve, Huntsville, Alabama, in its 2005 20-m ground demonstrator program. One of the two 400 m<sup>2</sup> solar sails that NASA tested in hard vacuum conditions was made from CP-1. Smaller samples of it were tested in NASA MSFC's space environmental effects laboratory, where the harsh environment of the inner solar system were re-created. CP-1 performed very well in the tests, and appears to be a promising candidate for first-generation solar sails. We like to stress "first-generation," inasmuch as any plastic support (on which reflective/emissive metals are deposited) forbids the achievement of high lightness numbers.

NASA tested two 400 m<sup>2</sup> solar sails in its ground demonstration program. Instead of CP-1, the second prototype sail used a Mylar sail. Mylar is no stranger to space. It is in use on many spacecraft and significant data exist on its long-term viability in space. While Mylar performed well in the ground demonstrator program, it did not survive well in the deep space environmental effects testing. In fact, researchers report that one of the Mylar samples crumbled when it was removed from the exposure facility. This may not rule it out for use on some solar sail mission applications, but it will certainly not be considered for the broad spectrum of potential missions.

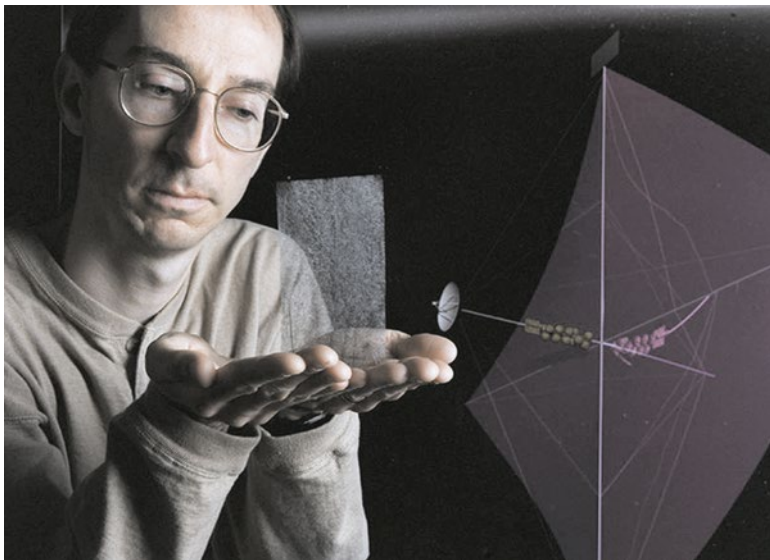


Also, Teonex was tested in a simulated space environment, and is perhaps the most promising candidate identified to date. Teonex samples maintained much of their structural integrity after being exposed to the equivalent of several years' worth of radiation exposure, performing better than either CP-1 or Mylar.

The Japanese flew two space tests of candidate solar sail materials prior to IKAROS. In 2004, ISAS performed a test of solar sail deployed from an S-310-34 sounding rocket (<http://www.isas.jaxa.jp/e/snews/2004/0809.shtml>). Two types of membrane structures (referred to as clover type and fan type) made by a film of polyimide (which is a long-lasting polymer containing the so-called *imide* monomers, utilized in the electronics industry), were launched with a sounding rocket and deployed sequentially. They were deployed dynamically (i.e., by rotation) in that mission, but some mechanism to deploy membranes statically is required for deploying large membranes. As a point of fact, in August 2006, a membrane of 20 m in diameter was deployed statically in flight using a flying balloon. However, in 2010, JAXA chose to deploy IKAROS by a rotating configuration.

### NEXT-GENERATION MATERIALS NEEDS

To enable the most ambitious solar sail missions, materials that are lighter, stronger, and more radiation tolerant than the state-of-the-art are required. The overall areal density of the sail material needs to approach  $1 \text{ g/m}^2$  while being strong enough to sustain launch loads and to be manufactured under Earth's gravity. Promising materials with properties approaching these requirements do exist. Carbon composites have many of the desired properties and some promising samples have already been made and undergone some testing. Pictured in Fig. 21.4 is a sample of a carbon composite substrate that shows promise for future mission applications.



21.4 Author Johnson shows a very light carbon-composite model of sailcraft (Courtesy of NASA)



## SUMMARY

Solar sails stress our current state-of-the-art materials capabilities, but the needs of first-generation sail missions can now be met. Materials that are manufacturable in large sizes, yet lightweight enough to provide thrust under photon bombardment exist and have been tested in simulated space conditions. The radiation tolerance of candidate materials has been measured, with some outperforming others. Several materials appear to be both foldable and storable with minimal, if any, subsequent deployment issues. Also from a materials point of view, first-generation solar sails are ready to fly again!

## FURTHER READING

NASA/CR-2002-211730, Chapter 4, author Vulpetti, where there is an introductory mathematical treatment of the sail degradation problem.

Roman Ya. Kezerashvili and Gregory L. Matloff, Solar radiation and the beryllium hollow-body sail: **1** The ionization and disintegration effects, *JBIS* 2007; 60:169–179 (a more comprehensive treatment of the near-Sun environmental issues.)

To consult the Australian on-line source with up-to-date solar wind information, key-in <http://www.ips.gov.au/Solar/1/4>. The data presented in this website is refreshed at 10-minute intervals.

The analysis of the interaction between the near-Sun space environment and the beryllium hollow-body solar-photon sail required several years and resulted in many research papers. Much of this work is cited and summarized in Roman Ya. Kezerashvili and Gregory L. Matloff, “Microscopic Approach to Analyze Solar-Sail Space Environment Effects,” *Advances in Space Research*, **44**, 859-869 (2009).

With regard to SI, see *The International System of Units* (SI), also published by NIST (USA), <http://www.nist.gov/index.html>

The general problems of spacecraft charging and mitigation of charge effects can be found in two recent books:

1. Shu T. Lai, *Fundamentals of Spacecraft Charging: Spacecraft Interactions with Space Plasmas*, Princeton University Press, 2012
2. Henry B. Garrett and Albert C. Whittlesey, *Guide to Mitigating Spacecraft Charging Effects*, JPL Space Science and Technology Series, John Wiley & Sons, Inc., 2012

In addition, a graduate student, who completed university courses in electromagnetism, may find useful analytic approach to the complicated problems of the (1) sail floating potential, and (2) degradation of the sail’s reflective layer as carried out in Chap. 4 of *Fast Solar Sailing*, Springer, August 2012, by author Vulpetti. The effects of optical degradation of the sail’s reflective layer on fast sailcraft trajectories are dealt with in the Chap. 9 of the same book.

## Glossary

**Ablation** High-speed evaporation of particles from a heated surface.

**Acceleration** The ratio between the velocity change of a body and the time interval during which such variation takes place.

**Aeroassist** Application of atmospheric drag to perform a space maneuver.

**Aerobraking** Use of an atmosphere to gradually decrease the energy of a spacecraft orbit.

**Aerocapture** Orbital capture of a spacecraft by a planet after a single atmospheric pass, namely, a single-pass aerobraking.

**Aeroshell** A rigid, heat-resistant structure used to protect a spacecraft during aerocapture.

**Allotrope** One of many forms in which some chemical elements take place. Each form differs in physical properties, even though atoms and states of matter (solid, liquid, gas) are the same. Well-known examples are (1) diamonds and coal as forms of carbon, (2) white, red, and black phosphorus, (3) dioxygen (stable, colorless), trioxygen or ozone (very reactive, blue), tetraoxygen (unstable).

**Antimatter** Form of matter with some of its properties reversed with respect to the everyday normal matter. Particles of antimatter have the same mass and lifetime as the corresponding normal-matter particles, but all other properties opposite. There also exist (neutral) antiparticles corresponding to neutral particles like neutrons. When normal matter and corresponding particles of antimatter come sufficiently close to each other, they annihilate; that is, their interaction results in practically total conversion of mass to energy. According to the Standard Model (the set of the accepted fundamental theories for physics), matter and antimatter are *specular* to each other. In 2010, there was some experimental evidence—by analyzing data from the decays of particle B and its antiparticle—that it might not be so. However, experiments that are more recent provided no appreciable discrepancy with the ‘specular’ prediction from the Standard Model.

**Antimatter rocket** A rocket propelled by the conversion of matter and antimatter fuel into energy.

**Apoapsis (or apofocus or apocenter)** The farthest an orbiting object (either natural or artificial) gets from its primary attraction body (e.g., the Sun, a planet, etc.).

**Apelion** The farthest a Sun-orbiting object gets from the Sun.

**Astrodynamics** The study of the motion of artificial objects in space. In contrast to the Celestial Mechanics, propulsion is given a central role in Astrodynamics in every phase of the space mission (unless it is intentionally excluded during the operational phase of some geodetic satellites, for instance). Astrodynamics has two major branches: trajectory (or orbital) dynamics and attitude dynamics. The former is concerned with the motion of the spacecraft’s center of mass (i.e., the translational motion), whereas

the latter addresses the motion of the spacecraft *about* its center of mass (i.e., the rotational motion).

**Astronomical unit (AU, or au)** The radius of a circular orbit where an object of negligible mass would revolve about the Sun in 365.2569 days, according to the two-body Newton laws. 1 AU = 149,597,8707 km, approximately the mean distance between Sun and Earth.

**Attitude** The orientation of a body in the three-dimensional space.

**Attitude control system** The hardware and software for controlling, stabilizing, determining, and predicting the attitude of a space vehicle.

**Aurora** “Light show” in Earth’s upper atmosphere associated with impacting solar particles.

**Ballute** A cross between a parachute and balloon utilized during aerocapture.

**Centrifugal acceleration** One of the accelerations that arise in a rotating system. It is sensed by any particle belonging to a rotating body.

**Centripetal acceleration** Causes any rectilinear path to become curved. It is a pure kinematical concept.

**Conceptual or thought experiment** An imagined experiment—with no real apparatus—that is used for analyzing what should be observed according to a certain physical theory. It is not a mathematical theorem. Conceptual experiments are very useful in research; they were used fruitfully by Einstein and other famous scientists in the twentieth century.

**Desorption** Evaporation of atoms from a surface caused by some impinging photon beam.

**Dynamics** The study of the motion of objects by including the causes that affect the motion.

**Ecliptic** As seen from Earth, namely, on its celestial sphere, the *mean* motion of the Sun over the year follows a *great circle*, named the *ecliptic*. The plane of such circle corresponds to the *mean* plane of the Earth’s annual path about the Sun. Thus, the term *ecliptic* may be used in the place of *ecliptic plane*. One should not confuse the ecliptic with the Earth orbit, which is perturbed by the gravitational field of the other planets. To be more precise, Earth also revolves about the Earth–Moon barycenter (EMB), which moves quasi-elliptically about the Sun: the other planets perturb the EMB path continuously. The orbital planes of most planets about the Sun are close to the ecliptic plane. The term *ecliptic* stems from being the place where solar and lunar eclipses occur (the ancient astronomers were aware of them).

**Exhaust velocity** The exit velocity of expended fuel from a rocket-engine, relative to the rocket vehicle.

**Force** A cause inducing velocity changes to a body; in nonrelativistic dynamics, it equals the product of the body’s mass and acceleration.

**Fullerene** The third allotrope of Carbon

**Gravity assist** Alteration of a spacecraft trajectory by interaction with a celestial body’s gravitational field.

**Gravity gradient** A finite-size body, in a non-uniform gravitational field, generally experiences a gravity torque about its center of mass. In space, gravitational fields are not uniform and can affect, via their gravity gradients, the orientation of other bodies, from a man-made satellite to the Moon.

**Heliopause** The ideal boundary surface between the solar wind and the interstellar wind.

**IKAROS** Interplanetary Kite-craft Accelerated by Radiation Of the Sun, the first sailcraft of the history of Astronautics

**Inertia** A generic term denoting the aspect of matter that resists change in motion.

- Inertial fusion** A nuclear fusion technique using electron beams or lasers to heat and compress the fusion fuel.
- Interstellar ark** A concept of human-occupied spacecraft requiring centuries or longer to completing its interstellar journey.
- Interstellar ramjet** A concept of space vehicle collecting interstellar matter as nuclear-fusion fuel.
- Ion** An electrically charged atom, namely, a normal atom to or from which electrons have been either added or stripped.
- Ion scoop** An electromagnetic device conceived for collecting electrically charged particles in space.
- Ionosphere** The layer of the atmosphere that is ionized by the solar photons.
- Isotope** Two isotopes of the same element have identical numbers of electrons and protons, but different masses since the number of neutrons differ.
- Kinematics** The study of the motion of objects without being concerned with the motion causes.
- Lagrange (or libration) points** A set of points (stable and unstable) of gravity and centrifugal acceleration equilibrium in the *general* two-body rotating system (e.g. Earth and Moon, Sun and Earth). There exists no equilibrium point in the *restricted* two-body system (e.g., Earth and spacecraft)
- Laser** Acronym for light amplification by stimulated emission of radiation, a device projecting a coherent, collimated, monochromatic electromagnetic energy beam, usually a visible-light beam.
- Lightness number** The magnitude or length of the lightness vector.
- Lightness vector** The solar-pressure thrust acceleration vector resolved in the extended heliocentric orbit frame, centered on the sailcraft, and taking the local solar gravitational acceleration as the normalization factor. Its properties are discussed in Chap. 19.
- Magnetic sail or Magsail** A sail concept for accelerating or decelerating spacecraft by the electromagnetic reflection of ions. In principle, it may be applied for slowing down an interstellar vehicle.
- Magnetosphere** The (large) volume around Earth where its magnetic field is compressed and bounded by the solar wind.
- Maser** A laser operating in the microwave region of the electromagnetic spectrum.
- Mass ratio** The ratio of a rocket's mass prior to ignition (including fuel) to its mass at burnout.
- Mini-magnetosphere or M2P2** A concept of magnetic space-propulsion device operating by the reflection of the solar-wind ions.
- Momentum** For a massive body, *linear* momentum is the product of its mass by its velocity. For the particles of light (photons), it is the ratio of its energy to the speed of light. Momentum is a very important physical quantity.
- Nanometer (nm)** One billionth of a meter.
- Nanophysics** The branch of physics dealing with the non-classical phenomena exhibited by either single-atom or many-atom aggregates of 0.1–100 nm in size; the lower range of these systems is dominated by the laws of quantum mechanics (which even holds down to the atomic nucleus and elementary particle levels, a millionth of a nanometer or shorter!).
- Nanotechnology** Technology at the molecular and atomic range (from 1 to 100 nm, typically); such technology will allow making and utilizing devices and structures as systems having novel physical and chemical properties due to their small sizes.

- NEO** Near Earth Object, an asteroid or comet orbiting close to the Earth–Moon system.
- Nuclear fission** A nuclear reaction in which most energy is released as kinetic energy of heavy nuclei split to produce lower-mass “daughter” nuclei. Typically, nuclear fission is induced by neutrons.
- Nuclear fusion** A nuclear reaction in which low-mass atomic nuclei combine to produce more massive particles, but with energy release.
- Oort comet cloud** A reservoir of some trillion comets reaching perhaps halfway to our Sun’s nearest stellar neighbors.
- Periapsis (or perifocus or pericenter)** The closest an orbiting object (either natural or artificial) gets to its primary attraction body (e.g., the Sun, a planet, etc.).
- Perihelion** The closest a Sun-orbiting body gets to the Sun.
- Planck constant** Any type of light (the rainbow colors, the oven microwaves, the solar ultraviolet and radiology x-rays, etc.) appears in the form of noncontinuous pieces (quanta) of energy. The energy of a particle of light (photon) is equal to the product of its vibration frequency ( $\nu$ ) by a universal constant ( $h$ ), called the Planck constant. In SI units, its value is  $6.6260693 \times 10^{-34}$  J s (joule times second). The energy of a photon can be expressed by  $E = h\nu = hc/\lambda$ , where  $\lambda$  denotes the wavelength (see *speed of light*).
- Plasma** The fourth state of matter, typically any ionized gas. There, atoms are stripped of some or all their electrons; however, such atoms cohabit with the electrons and form a conductive, though macroscopically neutral, gas.
- Pole sitter** A concept of spacecraft permanently situated in a high-latitude region of the celestial sphere.
- Pressure** Given a force of magnitude  $F$  acting perpendicularly to a surface of area  $A$ , pressure is defined as the ratio  $F/A$ . In the international units (metric) system (called the SI units), pressure is measured in pascal (Pa), which is the force of 1 newton (N, approximately 102 g) pushing on a surface of 1 m<sup>2</sup>. In weather forecasting, the usual unit is the hPa (hecto-pascal or 100 Pa). In the U.S. system of measurements, 1 PSI (pounds/square inch) = 6,895 hPa.
- Radiometer** A device for measuring the energy of light that crosses a unit surface in a unit time interval. Normally, this instrument is used for visible and infrared light, but it can be employed in other regions of the so-called electromagnetic spectrum.
- Ram-augmented interstellar rocket (RAIR)** A concept of spacecraft collecting interstellar ions as supplemental reaction mass.
- Ripstops** A network of strengthening fibers embedded in a sail film to reduce the severity of rips and tears.
- Sailcraft** A space vehicle endowed with a sail that functions as momentum exchange; it acts as a propulsive device receiving momentum from an *external* source. Therefore, a sailcraft is quite different from a rocket spacecraft. Chapter 7 discusses sailcraft and their new features with respect to a rocket. Usually, sailcraft = sail-system + spacecraft, the latter term regarding all systems different from the sail assembly (which includes the structures shaping the bare sail). Spacecraft and sail system (or assembly) are physically connected.
- Sailcraft (sail) loading** The ratio between the sailcraft mass and the effective sail area, usually expressed in grams per square meters. It is a basic parameter in sailcraft dynamics.

**Solar constant** The Sun emits a flux of photons, the energy of which ranges from radio wave to X-rays and gamma-rays. The total energy that flows through  $1 \text{ m}^2$ , at rest and perpendicular to the incoming solar photons at 1 AU, is known as the *solar constant*, say  $\Phi$ . Its technical name is the *total solar irradiance* (TSI) at 1 AU. In the last quarter of the 20th century, researchers have discovered—via satellites equipped with special radio-meters—that TSI is *not* constant. Its variability—though slight—reflects a number of Sun-related phenomena, some of which have not yet been well understood. The current accepted *mean* value of TSI at 1 AU amounts to  $\Phi = 1,366.1 \text{ W/m}^2$  (see Chap.18), which corresponds to a pressure of light  $P = \Phi/c = 4.557 \cdot 10^{-6} \text{ Pa}$ ; it is a very small value compared to everyday standards, but not as small in space as it may seem. Because solar light expand spherically into space, this photon pressure scales as  $1/R^2$ , where  $R$  denotes the distance (expressed in AU) between the Sun and a space body. For instance, at the mean distance of Mars,  $P = 1.972 \cdot 10^{-6} \text{ Pa}$ , whereas at 0.2 AU from the Sun one gets  $P = 113.9 \cdot 10^{-6} \text{ Pa}$ .

**Solar flare** An explosive emission of plasma and electromagnetic radiation (photons) from the Sun's surface.

**Solar Gravitational lens** According to the General Theory of Gravitation by A. Einstein, and as tested experimentally, electromagnetic waves bend their paths in a gravitational field; the closer they are to a massive celestial body (like a star) the stronger is such bending. Unlike the usual lenses, though, there is no focal point, but rather a line (the so-called Einstein ring). Ideally, if an observer from one side of a star (e.g. the Sun, and sufficiently far from it with respect to the planetary range) were to see a light-emitting distant object on the other side of the Sun, then such object would appear to her/him as a luminous ring about the Sun. Gravitational lensing is an important phenomenon in observing Quasars via a foreground galaxy, for example, and for other intriguing effects in modern Astronomy.

**Solar-Photon Sailing** This in-space propulsion mode is more exactly described by 'solar-photon sailing (SPS)' inasmuch as it refers explicitly to two key ingredients: the light and its source, i.e. the Sun. Other concepts of space sailing, including the laser-driven sailing, have either source or working fluid different (i.e. monochromatic light, or the solar wind).

**Solar wind** The Sun emits a very high number of fast massive particles, essentially protons and electrons (95 %), alpha-particles (or nuclei of helium, 4 %), and other ionized atoms. Such particles form what is known as the *solar wind*. (Evanescence particles that physicists call neutrinos are emitted as well, but they cannot be utilized for space propulsion). Solar wind should *not* be confused with the solar photon flux, which is utilized for solar sailing.

**Speed of light** In a vacuum, light propagates with a constant speed, normally indicated by  $c$ . It is equal to 299,792,458 m/s, often shortened by 300,000 km/s. Light behaves also as waves; they exhibit wavelengths (usually denoted by  $\lambda$ ), which is the space scale where the electric and magnetic fields oscillate by completing one cycle. The number of cycles completed in one unit time is named the *frequency*, say  $\nu$ . One has the basic relationship  $c = \lambda \nu$ . (For instance, a radio wave 300 m long vibrates about one million times every second, whereas the yellow light vibrates about 500,000 billion times per second). This relationship holds for any type of waves; however, one has to be careful in using the correct speed

of wave propagation. For instance, if one deals with the sound waves in air, one has to replace  $c$  by the usual speed of sound (343 m/s, approximately in dry air at 20 °C or 68 °F).

**Sun diver** A maneuver type envisaged for future sailcraft to approach the Sun as closely as possible.

**Tether** A long cable that can be used in space for orbit modification. Momentum-exchange tethers are mechanical devices. Electrodynamic tethers interact with the planet's magnetic field, if any.

**Thermodynamics** The branch of physics that studies macroscopic real systems from the viewpoint of their energy exchange (in particular as heat), temperature, pressure, volume, and so forth. Thermodynamics is fundamental also in designing practical working devices like refrigerators, air-forced circulation systems, car motors, ship and aircraft engines, space rocket engines, and so on. The nineteenth century saw the development of thermodynamics as a modern science that allowed inventing and designing basic transportation systems such as trains and steamships.

**Thrust** The force from any propulsive device; in particular, for a rocket, this force comes from exhausting the fuel.

**Technology readiness** A NASA-developed system to track the developmental status of a space propulsion system.

**Weightlessness** A term commonly used by radio-television journalists for indicating that a person 'lacks weight' in Space, as the crews inside Shuttle or the International Space Station (ISS) *seem* to confirm. This is an unpleasant and widespread misconception. Gravitation permeates the Universe; this is a fundamental knowledge. Thus, what does one observe actually, for instance in the ISS? What is the real physical meaning behind a *floating crew*? According to the Principle of Equivalence, any persons and/or objects *fall* exactly the same way in any gravitational region, i.e. they move along paths called the *geodesics* (in space and time), which are independent of the nature and mass of the moving bodies. According to the General Relativity by Albert Einstein, there is a *relative* acceleration between any two (different) geodesics. Suppose then you are on a camera attached to some wall of a small lab inside ISS. You and the camera are running on two very close geodesics about the Earth. Because their proximity, the relative acceleration between these two paths is almost zero, so that people on-ground sees on television that apparently you are floating *in* the lab, i.e. *with respect to* the lab. Even any two organs of your body go along two different, but very close, geodesics: between them, there is a very small acceleration, and one says that you are experimenting "weightlessness". This phenomenon is real, and affects the working of your body if you stay there long enough. Meanwhile, with respect to the Earth, you and the lab go on orbiting about the Earth. Your orbit is curved by the Earth's gravity only, i.e. *no* centrifugal force balances gravity and keeps you far from the Earth's surface, as some people is used to assert (very) erroneously!

**World ship** An interstellar ark, which is built large enough that its habitable interior approximates the terrestrial environment. According to various concepts, an ark should host many people traveling to other stars through several generations.

**Wrinkles** Elastic (i.e., recoverable) sinusoid-like undulations of the sail membrane due to compressive forces, tensioning, and temperature; wrinkles should not be confused with *creases*, which are inelastic deformations, especially when a membrane is coated by metal films. Sail folding and handling can cause different-pattern creases.

# Index

## A

- Ablation, 35, 261  
Absorptance, 205, 212–215, 220  
Absorption, 62, 200, 208–210, 213, 219, 224, 232  
Acceleration  
  body in a rotating frame, 114  
  centrifugal, 64, 114, 116, 143, 144, 147, 162, 163  
  centripetal, 113, 114, 117, 118, 128, 262  
  Coriolis, 114  
  due to solar pressure, 90  
  fast sailing, 228  
  perturbation acceleration, 217, 224, 237  
  thrust acceleration, 81, 122, 140, 168, 198, 206, 211–220, 224, 225, 234, 263  
ACE. *See* Advanced Composition Explorer (ACE)  
Action and reaction, 15  
Actuators, 121, 122, 125  
Advanced Composition Explorer (ACE), 85–87, 237, 252  
Aeolipile, 4  
Aeroassist, 37, 261  
  aeroassisted reentry, 35–36  
Aerobraking, 36, 261  
Aerocapture, 36, 92, 93, 261, 262  
Aerodynamic force, 35, 50  
Aeroshells, 36, 92, 261  
AFM. *See* Atomic force microscope (AFM)  
Albedo, 201, 225  
Alhazen, 52  
Allotropes, 137, 138, 261, 262  
Alpha Centauri, 28, 29, 32, 100, 159, 238  
Aluminum film reflectance, 214  
Aluminum foil, 248  
Angular momentum  
  fast solar sailing, 238–244  
  reversal, 241  
  very fast solar sailing, 238–244  
Antennas, 69–72, 117, 125, 128, 133, 147, 244  
Antimatter, 21, 32–33, 44, 97, 98, 140, 146, 261  
  propulsion, 32–33  
  rocket, 32, 33, 97, 98, 146, 261  
Aphelion, 37, 179, 181, 226, 261  
Apoapsis, 93, 261  
Apollo lunar expeditions, 23  
Archimedes force (buoyancy), 50  
Areal density of sail, 133, 134  
Ariane rocket, 17, 18, 56, 74, 165  
Armchair nanotubes, 138  
A-10 rocket, 6  
Arrhenius Svante August, 55  
Ascent venting, 248  
Assemblers, 136  
Asteroid Itokawa, 160  
Asteroids diverting, 162  
Astrodynamics, 121, 181, 223, 229, 230, 234, 236, 238, 261–262  
ASTRO-F satellite, 148  
Astronomical unit (AU), 37, 55, 67, 68, 70, 87, 88, 90, 91, 94, 96, 99, 137, 147, 152, 157, 158, 168, 176, 179, 183, 184, 191, 192, 194–196, 198, 199, 201, 211–213, 215, 217, 220, 226–229, 233, 234, 238, 239, 241–244, 252, 254, 256, 257, 262, 265  
ATK Space Systems, 115, 130  
Atlas missile and space launcher, 17  
Atmospheric drag, 17, 40, 151, 173, 250, 261  
Atomic force microscope (AFM), 136



**Attitude**

- analysis, 120–121
- control, 69, 120–125, 128–130, 137, 140, 165, 198, 225, 231, 236, 239, 262
- determination, 120, 121
- dynamics, 121, 262
- prediction, 120, 121

AU. *See* Astronomical unit (AU)

Aurora, 69, 83, 151, 152, 159, 262

Aurora collaboration, 69, 151, 159

**B**

Ballistic coefficient, 250

Ballutes, 92, 262

Baricentric reference frame (BRF), 236, 237

Barnard's star, 32

Bartoli, A., 53

Barycenter. *See* Center of mass (Barycenter)

Beaming stations, 162

Beam spread (divergence), 107, 108

Behaviors of the Aluminum layer, 216

Benford, G., 93, 107

Benford, J., 107

BepiColombo, 230

Bernasconi Marco, 152

Blackbody, 194, 195, 200, 206, 212, 251

- distribution, 194

- sail acceleration, 251

Black holes, 96, 108

Bombs, 7, 21, 31, 73–78, 95, 98

Bond albedo, 201

Booms, 68, 69, 74, 97, 113–118, 120, 123–124, 127–130, 133, 156, 158, 174, 178, 180, 210, 219, 248

- small sails at boom ends, 123–124

Boron nitrogen (BN) nanotubes, 138

BRF. *See* Baricentric reference frame (BRF)

Brightness temperature, 195

Brin, D., 93

British Interplanetary Society, 31

Brown, J.C., 198

Brusa, E., 151

Buckyball (buckminsterfullerene), 137

Buoyancy (Archimedes force), 50

Bussard, R., 42, 43

**C**

Cable television, 85

Carbon

- allotropes, 137, 262

- nanotubes, 138, 226

Carbon composites, 258

Carbon fiber sail substrate, 133

Cargo ships, 162

CAS. *See* Computer algebraic system (CAS)

Cassenti, B., 145

Cassini probe, spacecraft, 80

Celestial mechanics, 37, 38, 121, 207, 232, 236, 261

Celestial sphere, 3, 88, 90, 91, 119, 120, 262, 264

Centerboard, 48, 50

Center of buoyancy, 50

Center of mass (barycenter), 50, 121

- relative displacement between center of pressure and, 122

Center of pressure, 69, 122, 125, 130, 177

- relative displacement between barycenter and, 122

Centrifugal acceleration, 64, 114, 116, 143, 144, 147, 262, 263

Centripetal acceleration, 113, 114, 117, 118, 128, 262

CERN, 108

Change of reflection, 125

Characteristic acceleration, 158, 213, 218, 231, 242

Charged grids, 254, 255

Chemical rockets

- compared with solar sails, 23

- limits of, 23–24

- propellants, 15, 80, 92

Chiral nanotubes, 138

Circular orbit, 158, 219, 226, 228, 233, 234, 238, 239, 262

Circular-orbit solutions, 226

Classical physics, 135

Close solar approaches, 252–257

CLUSTER, 71, 88, 90

CMEs. *See* Coronal mass ejections (CMEs)

Combined rocket-sail (CRS), 227, 238

Combined rocket-sail (CRS) reference flight, 227

Combustion chamber, 15, 19, 30, 73, 78, 80, 99

Comets

- diverting, 162

- rendezvous with, 55

*Commission Internationale de l'Eclairage* (CIE), 191

Communication satellites, 88

Communication system, 69–70

Complexity, 19, 33, 35, 78, 86, 92, 123, 125, 144, 211, 235, 237, 256

Computer algebraic system (CAS), 219

Computer central processing units (CPUs), 135

Conceptual or thought experiment, 262

Configurations sail, 68, 69, 92, 143, 144, 256, 257

Control center, 69, 215

Control torques, 121, 122, 125

Coordinated universal time (UTC), 205, 206

Coriolis acceleration, 114

Coronal mass ejections (CMEs), 252

Corpuscular theory of light, 52

Cosmos, 4, 56, 129–130, 151, 155, 157, 248, 249

- CP-1, 131, 211, 257, 258  
 CPUs. *See* Computer central processing units (CPUs)  
 Creases, 266  
 Crookes, W., 53  
 CRS. *See* Combined rocket-sail (CRS)  
 Cryogenic propellants, 78  
 CU Aerospace, 132, 134  
 Cubesail, 127, 132, 133, 158  
 Curl, R.F., 137  
 Current technology, 94, 113, 133
- D**  
 Daedalus, 4, 31, 32, 56, 99  
 Dawn mission, 161  
 Debris space, 74, 235  
 Deceleration, 35–37, 63, 100  
 Deep Space 1 (DS-1), 27, 159–161, 182  
 Deep Space (DS-1) mission, 159, 160  
 Degradation  
   external, 220  
   intrinsic, 220  
 Democritus, 52  
 Deorbit sail, 133, 158  
 Deorbit sail (University of Surrey), 158  
 Design of sail, 13, 113, 118, 125, 130, 134, 139,  
   145, 147, 158, 248  
 Desorption, 107, 145, 262  
 Deuterium, 31, 99  
 Diffraction, 53, 104, 106, 125, 135, 136, 210, 219  
 Diffuse reflectance, 205, 212–214, 220  
 Diffuse reflection, 149, 208, 210, 232  
 Displaced geostationary orbit (GEO), 235  
 Disturbance torques, 122, 123  
 Divergence beam, 107–109  
 DLR. *See* Luft-und Raumfahrt (DLR)  
 Drag  
   atmospheric, 17, 40, 151, 173, 250, 261  
   coefficient, 177  
   effective drag area, 177, 178  
   sea sailing, 47–51  
 DragNET, 178  
 Drexler, K.E., 136  
 Druyan, A., 151  
 DS-1. *See* Deep Space 1 (DS-1)  
 Dynamics, 14, 121, 122, 128, 134, 143, 152, 176,  
   196, 207, 208, 234, 237, 244, 262, 264  
 Dyson, F.J., 98
- E**  
 Earth  
   Earth-Mercury-Earth, 231  
   Earth-sized planet, 32  
   Earth/Sun Lagrange points, 85  
   Earth to Mercury, 229, 230  
   interplanetary transfers, 225, 229–234  
   irradiance due to, 197, 200, 201, 205  
   low Earth orbit (LEO), 17, 18, 23, 35, 38, 56,  
     105, 107, 128, 129, 132, 133, 149, 158,  
     173, 178, 179, 250, 251  
   magnetic field, 38–39, 41, 84, 85, 89, 252  
   orbit as site of laser for laser sailing, 104–106  
   orbit radius and solar irradiance, 201  
   as site of laser for laser sailing, 104–106  
 Ecliptic, 88, 90, 91, 120, 156, 168, 198, 206, 231,  
   233, 242, 244, 262  
 Effective gravitational mass, 225  
 Efficiency, 16, 17, 43, 78, 80, 97, 107, 159, 183,  
   206, 212  
 Einstein, A., 13, 54, 94, 262, 265, 266  
 Electric rocket (ion drive), 26–28  
 Electric sail, 61, 64, 65  
 Electric utility lines, 85  
 Electrodynamic tethers, 38–40, 266  
 Electromagnetic radiation pressure. *See* Pressure  
   of light  
 Electromagnetic ramscoops, 98  
 Electromagnetic spectrum, 189, 191, 192, 199,  
   263, 264  
 Electromagnetic theory, 53, 54, 209  
 Electrons, 26, 28, 31, 38–40, 42, 52, 54, 63, 64, 83,  
   84, 99, 106, 108, 109, 136, 138, 157, 170,  
   189, 251, 252, 254, 255, 258, 263–265  
   transport by nanotubes, 138  
 Emerging technology, 94, 135–140  
 EM flux, 251  
 Emissive layer, 134, 145, 210  
 Emittance, 67, 210  
 Energy Science Laboratories, 133  
 Environment, space, 24, 68, 70, 122, 137, 145,  
   146, 152, 179, 198, 220, 235, 244, 254,  
   256–258  
 Ephemeris time ( $T_{eph}$ ), 207  
 Equilibrium points  
   Lagrange points, 237  
   many-body orbits, 236–238  
 European Space Agency (ESA)  
   Ariane rocket, 74  
   Geosail, 231, 235  
   IHP, 158  
   SMART-1, 27  
   plastic layer, 255  
 Exhaust velocity, 15–19, 21, 23, 24, 26–28, 31,  
   32, 262  
 Extended Heliocentric Orbital Frame (EHOF)/  
   (SOF), 206–211, 213, 217, 218, 224,  
   229, 232, 239, 240  
 External degradation, 220  
 Extrasolar probes, 94, 99

**F**

Faculae, 198  
 Failure of rockets, 73–75  
 Faraday, M., 53  
 Fast Affordable Science and Technology Satellite (FASTSAT), 131, 175, 176  
 FASTSAT. *See* Fast Affordable Science and Technology Satellite (FASTSAT)  
 Fast solar sailing  
   cruise phase, 239  
   motion reversal, 239, 240  
   post-perihelion trajectory, 240, 243  
   retrograde motion, 239  
   sailcraft continues to accelerate, 239  
 Fast streams, 83  
 Femto-technology, 140  
 Fermilab, 108  
 Ferry sailcraft, 231, 232  
 Fizeau, A., 53  
 Flammability, 77–78  
 Flight time, 27, 32, 56, 94, 100, 152, 158  
 Folding and stowing, 248  
 Force  
   forces on a sailboat, 51  
   thrust (*see* Thrust)  
 Forward, R.L., 55, 107, 235  
 Freighters, 96  
 Friedman, L., 65  
 Fuels, 5, 6, 15–19, 21, 24, 26–28, 30, 31, 33, 35, 36, 40–44, 65, 73, 77, 78, 80, 81, 86, 87, 90, 92, 93, 95, 98, 140, 168, 184, 237, 261–263, 266  
 Fullerene, 137, 138, 262

**G**

Gamma-ray region, 189  
 Garwin, R., 55  
 Gassendi, P., 52  
 General Keplerian orbits, 225–229, 234, 237  
 Genta, G., 151  
 GEO. *See* Displaced geostationary orbit (GEO)  
 Geosail, 90, 157, 158, 231, 235  
 Geostationary orbit (GEO) displaced, 235  
 Geostorm, 87  
 Geosynchronous satellites, 88  
 German Rocket Society, 6  
 Germany, 6, 115, 127, 157, 158  
 Global positioning system (GPS), 85, 156  
 Goddard, R., 9, 150, 159  
 Gossamer-1, 128, 158  
 GPS. *See* Global positioning system (GPS)  
 Graphene, 138, 139

papers, 139  
 Gravity assists, 37–38, 93, 146, 179, 181, 262  
 Gravity gradient, 40, 206, 262  
 Graybody approximation, 199  
 Gridded-ion propulsion system, 159, 160  
 Ground station, 69, 88

**H**

Halley's Comet, 147, 219, 232, 233  
   trajectory to rendezvous with, 232  
 Halo orbits, 237  
 H2A rocket, 148  
 Hayabusa mission, 160  
 Heaton, A., 177  
 Heeling torque, 50  
 Heliocentric inertial frame (HIF), 206–208, 217–219, 234, 239  
   thrust acceleration in, 217–219, 234, 263  
 Heliocentric orbital frame (HOF), 207, 218, 231  
 Heliocentric sailcraft, 157, 229  
   three fields, 229  
 Heliogyro sail, 118, 144  
 Heliopause, 94, 147, 152, 158, 244, 263  
 Heliospheric magnetic field (HMF), 88  
 Heliostorm, 87, 91  
 Helium, 31, 41, 42, 51, 61, 63, 98, 252, 265  
 Helium-3, 31, 99  
 Hero of Alexandria, 4  
 Hertz, H., 54  
 Hickey-Frieden (HF), 196  
 HIF. *See* Heliocentric inertial frame (HIF)  
 HMF. *See* Heliospheric magnetic field (HMF)  
 HOF. *See* Heliocentric orbital frame (HOF)  
 Hollow-body (inflatable) sail, 144  
 Hooke, R., 52  
 Hoop sail, 144  
 Hull, G.F., 54  
 Human-exploration sailships, 94–95  
 Huygens, C., 52  
 Hydrazine, 77  
 Hydrodynamic forces, 50  
 Hydrogen, 17, 19, 21, 24, 26, 28, 31, 42, 43, 51, 61, 63, 78, 95, 97, 98, 135, 165, 256  
 Hydrogen-fusing ramjet, 97, 98  
 Hyperbolic orbits, 227, 239  
 Hypergolic propellants, 77, 78

**I**

IAU. *See* International Astronomical Union (IAU)  
 ICRF. *See* International Celestial Reference Frame (ICRF)

- ICRS, 120  
 IERS, 206  
 IF. *See* Inertial reference frame (IF)  
 IHP. *See* Interstellar heliopause probe (IHP)  
 Iijima, S., 138  
 IKAROS  
   initial mass, 148  
   lightness number, 168, 170, 242  
   reflectance control, 169  
   reflectance control device (RCD), 168, 169  
   solar-radiation pressure  
     acceleration, 141, 168, 181  
   spin rate, 148  
   square sail, 148, 167, 180  
   tanegashima space center, 165  
 IMAGE spacecraft, 71  
 Incidence angle of sunlight, 213  
 Inertia, 13–14, 99, 263  
 Inertial fusion, 99, 263  
 Inertial reference frame (IF), 224  
 Inflatable antenna, 147  
 Inflatable boom, 115, 117, 127, 129, 130, 133, 158, 180  
 Inflatable (hollow-body) sail, 147  
 InflateSail, 127, 133, 158  
 Infrared region, 200  
 Inner solar system, 43, 55, 63, 91, 94, 96, 100, 118, 133, 247, 251, 257  
 Institute for Interstellar Studies, 12, 32  
 Interdimensional shortcuts, 96, 97  
 International Astronomical Union (IAU), 3, 207  
 International Atomic Time (TAI), 206  
 International Celestial Reference Frame (ICRF), 120, 207  
 International Space Station (ISS), 40, 250, 266  
 Interplanetary transfers, 223, 225, 229–234  
 Interstellar arks, 255, 263, 266  
 Interstellar heliopause probe (IHP), 152, 158  
 Interstellar probe (ISP), 32, 133, 147, 152, 158, 161  
 Interstellar ramjets, 42, 43, 146, 263  
 Interstellar travel  
   nuclear option, 98–99  
   relativistic starflight, 98  
   solar sail, 97  
 INVENT, 128  
 Inverse square law, 103–105, 198, 201  
 Ion drive, 21, 26–29, 159  
 Ionosphere, 38, 41, 83, 84, 88, 193, 250, 263  
 Ions, 26–28, 38–40, 43, 63, 64, 83, 84, 159, 251, 252, 263, 264  
 Ion scoops, 43, 263  
 Irradiance, 71, 183, 191, 192, 194–201, 205, 212, 213, 219  
 Isotopes, 31, 42, 99, 263  
 ISP. *See* Interstellar probe (ISP)  
 ISS. *See* International Space Station (ISS)  
 Italy, 18, 151, 152, 157, 158, 226  
 Itokawa asteroid, 160
- J**  
 J2000, 120, 206  
 Japanese space agency (JAXA)  
   Hayabusa mission, 160  
   IKAROS, 149, 165  
   Jovian Magnetospheric Orbiter, 157  
   sail deployment tests, 56  
   solar sail technology, 56  
 JBIS. *See* Journal of the British Interplanetary Society (JBIS)  
 Johnson, L., 44, 100, 152–53, 162, 258  
 Journal of the British Interplanetary Society (JBIS), 99  
 Jupiter  
   Jovian Magnetospheric Orbiter (JMO), 157, 179  
   laser station in orbit around, 105, 106
- K**  
 Katan, C., 177, 178  
 KEK, 108  
 Kinematics, 13, 14, 114, 257, 263  
 KIWI nuclear-thermal rocket, 25  
 Kroto, H., 137
- L**  
 Lagrange points, 85, 86, 156, 157, 179, 237  
 Lambertian, 191, 209, 213  
 Laser  
   beaming station, 162  
   sailing, 104–106  
 Launch, 8, 9, 17, 18, 23, 24, 31, 35, 38, 43, 56, 73, 74, 77, 78, 80, 81, 84, 89, 90, 92, 93, 95, 127–129, 132, 134, 144, 147, 149, 151, 155–158, 165–167, 173–175, 182, 226, 230, 231, 239, 242, 244, 248–250, 257, 258  
 Launcher VEGA, 18  
 L-1 Diamond, 91  
 Lebedev, P., 54  
 LEO. *See* Low Earth orbit (LEO)  
 Lewis, G., 54  
 L'Garde, Inc., 115, 130, 131, 149  
 Libration points. *See* Lagrange points  
 Lift, 14, 17, 26, 49, 50, 81

- Light  
 interaction with matter, 61  
 nature of, 52–53, 189  
 riding a beam of light, 103–109  
 space sources of, 189–202  
 speed of, 13, 26, 32, 42, 44, 53, 54, 67, 97,  
 108, 195, 212, 263–265
- Lightness number, 159, 168, 170, 181, 182, 184,  
 198, 200, 212, 213, 215, 216, 218, 219,  
 225–228, 230, 231, 233, 234, 236–239,  
 242, 244, 257, 263  
 maximum ideal, 219
- Lightness vector  
 Normal lightness number, 215  
 Radial lightness number, 218, 219, 225  
 Transversal lightness number, 218
- LightSail, 129–130, 151
- Limb darkening, 199, 200
- Linear momentum, 13, 15–16, 40, 67, 184, 185,  
 251, 254, 263
- Liquid fuel rockets, 78
- Low Earth orbit (LEO), 17, 18, 23, 35, 38, 56,  
 105, 107, 128, 129, 132, 133, 149, 158,  
 173, 178, 179, 250, 251  
 environment of, 250
- Lucretius, 52
- Luft-und Raumfahrt (DLR), 115, 116, 127–130
- M**
- Maccone, C., 152
- Magnetopause cracks, 88
- Magnetosphere, 41, 71, 84, 88–90, 106, 158, 179,  
 180, 252, 253, 263  
 magnetospheric constellations, 89  
 target-variable magnetospheric missions, 89–90
- Magsail (magnetic sail), 40–41, 61, 63–65, 263
- Mallove, E., 55, 99
- Maneuvering a sailcraft, 62, 93, 123, 125, 159, 218
- Mantech/NeXolve. *See* NeXolve
- Many-body orbits  
 Earth-Moon system, 237  
 luminous primary with reduced mass, 237  
 particular solutions, 236  
 Sun-Earth system, 237
- Marconi, G., 54
- Mars  
 Observer mission, 74  
 rendezvous transfers, 231  
 sample return mission, 92  
 transfers to, 226
- Maser/microwave laser, 107, 108, 263
- Mass ratio, 16, 18, 32, 176, 237, 263  
 staged rockets, 17–18
- Materials sail, 90, 127, 132, 134, 206, 208, 211,  
 235, 250, 251, 254, 256–258
- Matloff, G., 30, 33–34, 44, 56, 72, 99–101,  
 109, 151, 165, 181, 186, 227, 244–245,  
 256, 259  
 sail mission concept, 227
- Mautner, M., 99
- Maximum realistic achievable speed, 228, 238
- Maxwell, J.C., 53, 54
- McInnes, C., 125, 184, 198, 236, 237
- Méliès, G., 5
- Merchant vessel, 46, 47
- Mercury rendezvous transfers, 229
- Micrometeorites, 144  
 protection from, 145
- Micro-rockets, 124, 125
- Micro-sailcraft concept, 68, 71
- Microscopy, 136
- Microwave beaming stations, 162
- Microwave sailing, 106–107
- Military satellites, 85
- Mini-magnetospheric plasma propulsion  
 (M2P2), 41
- Minimizing the transfer time, 225
- Mining space, 95
- MIRA Collaboration, 238
- Mirror technologies, 128
- Mir space station, 56, 117, 127, 128, 147
- MMH. *See* Monomethylhydrazine (MMH)
- Mocci, G., 152
- Momentum  
 angular (*see* Angular momentum)  
 linear, 13, 15–16, 40, 67, 184, 185, 251, 254, 263  
 of photons, 108
- Momentum-exchange tethers, 40, 266
- Momentum transfer  
 electromagnetic radiation, 205–220  
 modeling thrust from, 205–220  
 pressure, 205–220
- Monatomic oxygen, 50
- Monomethylhydrazine (MMH), 77, 78
- Motion equations, 219, 223–225  
 sailcraft, 224, 225
- Motion reversal  
 sailcraft crosses the ecliptic after, 242  
 sailcraft reemerges, 244
- Multiple attitude control system, 125
- Multiple propulsion mode (MPM), 43, 44, 81
- Mylar, 128, 130, 131, 133, 211, 257, 258
- N**
- Nanomaterials, 140
- Nanometrology, 140

- Nanophysics, 263  
 Nanoprobes, 72  
 Nanorobots/nanobots, 136  
 Nanosailcraft swarm, 162  
 NanoSail-D. *See* NASA  
 Nanosail-D2  
   Mass of, 176  
   Minotaur rocket, 149, 175  
   reentry, 56  
   10-square meter, 173  
 Nanoscience, 71, 72, 135, 136, 159  
 Nanostructures, 135  
 Nanotechnology, 71, 135–137, 140, 159, 182, 184,  
   244, 252, 254, 264  
 Nanotubes, 138, 139, 226  
 NASA  
   ACE, 85–87, 252  
   Apollo expeditions, 23  
   boom design, 114, 115, 117, 124, 174  
   CP-1, 131, 211, 257  
   Heliophysics Decadal Survey, 147, 156  
   Interstellar Probe (ISP), 147, 152, 158, 161  
   Interstellar solar sailing, 100  
   KIWI nuclear-thermal rocket, 25  
   Lunar Flashlight, 156, 157  
   Mars Observer mission, 74  
   NanoSail-D1, 173, 174  
   NanoSail-D2, 173–178  
     Mission Elapsed Time (days), 178  
     proposed rendezvous with Halley's, 55, 147  
     Comet, 55, 147  
     sail materials, 174  
     solar storm monitoring, 83–88  
     Space Shuttle, 35, 79  
     Sunjammer, 155  
 National Institute of Standards and Technology  
   (NIST), 255  
 Navigation, 56, 88, 89, 131, 132, 149, 155,  
   167, 173  
 NEA. *See* Near-Earth asteroids (NEA)  
 Near-Earth asteroids (NEA), 89, 155–157, 234  
 Near-Earth objects (NEOs)  
   altering orbits of, 95  
   mining, 95–96  
 Neutral particle beam systems, 108, 109  
 New Millennium Program (NMP), 160  
 Newtonian mechanics, 13  
 Newton, Isaac, 13, 52  
 Newton's laws of motion, 14, 15  
 NeXolve Corporation, 174  
 Nichols, E.F., 54  
 Nitrogen tetroxide ( $N_2O_4$ ), 77, 78  
 Non-conservative field, 217, 224  
 Non-Keplerian orbits  
   displaced geostationary orbit, 235  
   new families of, 236  
   special class of, 234  
 Nonthermal nuclear rocket, 28–29  
 Normal lightness number, 215  
 N-1 rockets, 74, 76  
 NSD. *See* NASA, NanoSail-D2  
 Nuclear-direct (ND) propulsion, 28  
 Nuclear-electric rocket, 26–28  
 Nuclear fission, 24, 28–30, 264  
 Nuclear fusion, 28, 51, 97, 98, 264  
 Nuclear-pulse rocket, 21, 29–31  
 Nuclear-thermal rocket, 19, 21, 24, 25, 28, 29  
 Numerical experiment, 219, 244
- O**  
 Oberth, H., 6, 7  
 ODISSEE, 128  
 Oort Comet Cloud, 96, 264  
   explorers, 96  
 Orbital altitude decay rate, 177  
 Orbital angular momentum, 207, 218, 230, 239  
 Orbital energy, 37, 40, 177, 179, 218, 229, 230,  
   234, 239  
 Orbits  
   diverting asteroids/comets, 95  
   generalized Keplerian, 223, 239  
   low Earth orbit, 17, 18, 23, 35, 38, 56, 105,  
     107, 149, 179, 250  
   many-body, 236–238  
   non-Keplerian, 234–236  
 Orion Project, 29, 31, 98  
 Outgassing, 248  
 Oxidizer, 15, 19, 73, 77, 78, 80
- P**  
 Parabolic orbit, 227  
 Parabolic sail, 143  
 Parachute sail, 143  
 Partial reflection, 52, 53  
 Particle Acceleration Solar Orbiter, 91  
 Particle accelerators, 108  
 Particle-beam sail propulsion, 108–109  
 Payload, 6, 13, 15–19, 24, 30, 36, 37, 46, 63, 67,  
   70, 71, 81, 85, 95, 96, 100, 113, 121,  
   122, 133, 134, 137, 143, 144, 147–150,  
   155, 156, 159, 161, 165, 167, 179, 180,  
   224, 232, 244, 247, 248, 256  
 Perforated sail, 134, 139  
 Periapsis, 264  
 Perihelion, 37, 93, 96, 100, 106, 179, 181, 182, 198,  
   227–229, 234, 239, 242, 255, 257, 264

Perturbation acceleration, 217, 224, 237  
 Perturbation theory, 237  
 Phoenicians, 45–47  
 Photoelectric effect, 54  
 Photons, 52, 55, 69, 71, 137, 159, 189, 193, 194,  
     201, 206, 208–210, 220, 242, 247, 251,  
     252, 255  
 Photosphere, 52, 194, 198–200  
 Picard microsatellite, 196  
 Picotechnology, 140  
 Planck constant, 54, 195, 264  
 Planck, M., 54  
 Planetary albedo, 201, 225  
 Planetary gravity assists, 37–38, 179  
 Planetary-radiation thrust, 225  
 Planetary shadows, 70  
 Planetary Society, 56, 127, 129, 130, 151, 157,  
     248, 249  
 Planet-C, 148, 165  
 Plasma, 27, 28, 38, 39, 41, 43, 63, 64, 71, 83–85, 88,  
     108, 109, 158, 189, 250, 253–256, 264  
 Plasma sail, 40–41, 61  
 Plastic substrate, 134, 145, 209, 211  
 PMOD, 196  
 Pole sitter, 88, 264  
 Polo, Marco, 5  
 Polyimide, 125, 134, 148, 170, 180, 258  
 Polyimide membrane structures, 258  
 Positional error, 136  
 Powered gravity assists, 38  
 Pressure, 17, 19, 48, 50, 53–56, 68, 69, 73, 90–92,  
     107, 122–125, 130, 143, 149, 151, 152,  
     158, 168, 177, 181, 183, 185, 198, 199,  
     205–220, 224, 225, 228, 236, 238, 248,  
     250, 264  
 Pressure of light, 54, 55, 210, 219  
     modeling thrust from, 205–220  
 Principle of Equivalence, 206  
 Private initiatives, 150–152  
 Progress vehicle, 117, 128  
 Project Daedalus, 31, 32, 56, 99  
 Project Icarus, 31, 32, 238  
 Propellant  
     cryogenic, 78  
     hypergolic, 77, 78  
     solid, 18, 78  
 Propulsion technologies, 12, 37–38, 146, 157, 159  
     rockets (*See* Rockets)  
 Ptolemy, 52

**Q**

Quanta of light, 54  
 Quantum physics, 53, 135, 209

**R**

Radar, 107, 175  
 Radial lightness number, 218, 219, 225, 227  
 Radiance, 190, 191, 194, 195, 198–200, 209, 210  
 Radiant emittance/exittance, 67, 190, 209  
 Radiant intensity, 190, 191  
 Radiant power/radiant flux, 190  
 Radiometer, 53, 54, 196, 264  
 Radiometric definitions (main)  
     exittance, 190  
     intensity, 190  
     irradiance, 191  
     power, 190  
     radiance, 191  
     source of light, 189  
     spectral exittance, 190  
     spectral intensity, 190  
     spectral irradiance, 191  
     spectral power, 190  
     spectral radiance, 190  
 Ram-augmented interstellar rocket (RAIR), 43, 264  
 Ramjet runway, 43  
 Ramjets interstellar, 42–44  
 Ram scoops, 43  
 Rayleigh's criterion, 107  
 Reaction, action and, 15  
 Rectilinear trajectory, 207, 225, 228  
 Reference frames  
     baricentric, 236, 237  
     HIF, 206–208, 217–220, 234, 239  
     HOF, 218, 231  
     inertial, 121, 224  
     modeling thrust from  
         electromagnetic radiation, 205–220  
         pressure, 205–220  
     SOF, 206–211, 213, 217, 218, 224, 229, 239, 240  
 Reflection  
     diffuse, 149, 208, 210, 232  
     partial, 52, 53  
     specular, 149, 208, 210  
 Reflective layer, 124, 134, 170, 191, 208–210,  
     213, 215, 219, 220, 225, 232, 255  
 Reflectivity modulation, 125  
 Relativistic starflight, 98  
 Rendezvous transfer  
     comets, 233  
     Earth-to-Mars, 226, 231  
     Earth-to-Mercury, 229, 230  
     Earth-to-Venus, 231  
     Halley comet, 233  
     interplanetary transfers, 229–234  
 Ripstops, 145, 248, 264  
 Risk, 29, 74, 78, 84, 85, 95, 122, 159, 161, 252  
 Robotic interplanetary explorers, 12

- Rocket equation, 16–17
- Rockets
- combined rocket-sail reference, 227
  - mission, 227
  - comparison with sails, 74, 77
  - failures, 73–75
  - history, 4
  - micro-rockets for sail control, 124, 125
  - operation of, 74
  - problems and limitations, 23–33
- Rome University, 95, 125, 152, 219, 235
- Rotation matrix, 224
- Roughness surface, 145, 210, 213–215, 217, 220
- RP-1, 77
- Russia/Soviet Union
- early rockets, 6
  - Znamya experiments, 128
- S**
- Sagan, C., 97, 151, 155
- Sail
- attitude control, 69, 123, 125, 129, 137
  - configurations, 68, 69, 92, 143, 144, 256, 257
  - design, 113, 118, 130, 133, 134, 145, 147, 248
  - floating potential, 255
  - folding and stowing, 248
  - manufacture, 68
  - materials, 70, 113, 116, 127, 128, 130, 132, 134, 145, 148, 158, 174, 193, 206, 211, 235, 250, 251, 254, 256, 258
  - size, 71, 107, 156, 254
  - tri-layer structure, 134, 145
  - undergo a charging process, 254
- Sailcraft
- construction, 68, 134
  - fleet (swarm), 137
  - loading, 212, 215, 231, 233, 235, 236, 244, 264
  - maneuvering, 125
  - motion equations, 223–225
- Sailcraft mission options
- far-term, 94–100
  - mid-term, 91–94
  - near-term, 83–91
- Sailcraft orbital frame (SOF)
- modeling thrust from
    - electromagnetic radiation, 205–220
    - pressure, 205–220
- Sail deployment, 56, 68–69, 90, 129, 131, 144, 148, 152, 167, 173, 226, 233
- and orbit, 68, 90, 158
- Sail propulsion techniques, 108–109, 157
- Santoli, Salvatore, 152
- Satellites, 9, 18, 26, 36, 39, 56, 71, 74, 84, 85, 88, 92, 93, 96, 104, 131–134, 148, 156, 158, 173, 175, 177, 178, 196, 197, 205, 207, 225, 235
- Saturn V, 23, 29, 30, 77, 98
- Scaglione, S., 152
- Scalar theory of scattering, 213
- Scaling factor, 196, 198
- Scanning tunneling microscope (STM), 136
- Science fiction, 4–6, 23, 32, 43, 65, 93, 94, 104, 137, 140, 145, 155
- Science mission selection, 131
- Sea sailing, 47–50, 52
- Segmented sail control technology, 69
- Self-repairing sails, 137
- Self-replication, 136
- Shifted GEO orbits, 235, 236
- Shlovskii, I.S., 97
- Shuttle main engines, 78
- SI, 253, 255
- Small expendable deployer system (SEDS)
- missions, 40
- Smalley, R., 137
- Small sails at boom ends, 123
- SMART-1, 27
- SOF. *See* Sailcraft orbital frame (SOF)
- Solar brightness temperature, 195
- Solar constant (TSI), 196, 265
- Solar cycle, 67, 157, 191, 193, 196, 197, 201, 216, 252, 255, 257
- Solar Dynamics Observatory (SDO), 196
- Solar-electric rocket, 12, 27, 146, 182
- Solar flares, 86, 91, 252, 265
- Solar kites, 89, 149
- Solar orbit as site of laser, 106
- Solar photon flow, 52, 56, 254
- Solar-photon thruster (SPT), 143, 144
- Solar Polar Imager, 90, 157
- Solar power orbiter, 91
- Solar sailing
- early history, 51–56
  - principles of, 61–65
- Solar-sail starships, 99–100
- Solar Sail Union of Japan, 151
- Solar spectral irradiance (SSI), 191, 193, 194
- Solar spectral variability, 193
- Solar storm monitoring, 83–88
- Solar system
- barycenter (SSB), 207
  - inner, 43, 55, 63, 91, 94, 96, 100, 118, 133, 247, 251, 257
- Solar-system barycenter (SSB), 207
- Solar-thermal rocket, 19, 24–27



- Solar wind
  - how it can be used for sailing, 63–65
  - ionized elements, 252
  - linear momentum of the solar wind, 254
  - mass of solar wind, 253, 254
- Solid fuel rockets, 19
- SORCE. *See* Spacecraft named Solar Radiation and Climate Experiment (SORCE)
- Source of light, 53, 189–190
- Space
  - agencies, 24, 55, 75, 90, 96, 118, 120, 143, 145–150, 152, 161, 179, 230, 233, 248, 257
  - debris, 74, 235
  - environment, 24, 68, 70, 122, 137, 145, 146, 152, 179, 198, 220, 235, 244, 254, 256–258
  - mining, 95–96
  - settlements, 161
  - transportation systems, 33
  - warps, 97
- Spacecraft attitude. *See* Attitude
- Spacecraft named Solar Radiation and Climate Experiment (SORCE), 196, 197
- Space shuttle
  - Challenger, 73
  - Columbia, 78
  - main engine (SSME), 78
- Spectral irradiance, 191, 192, 194
- Spectral radiance, 190, 191, 194, 195
- Spectral radiant intensity, 190
- Spectral radiant power, 190
- Specular reflectance, 212–214, 220, 236
- Specular reflection, 149, 208, 210
- Speed of light, 13, 26, 32, 42, 44, 53, 54, 67, 97, 108, 195, 212, 265
- Spinning disc sail, 144
- Spin-stabilization
  - heliogyro solar sails, 118
  - “solid” solar sails, 116–117
- Spy satellites, 85
- Square-rigged configuration, 143
- S-310 rocket, 127, 132, 258
- SSI. *See* Solar spectral irradiance (SSI)
- Stabilization, 97, 121, 123, 125
- Staged rockets, 6, 17–18
- Stiffness, 136
- Stowing of sail, 248
  - plastic layer, 134
- Sun
  - barycenter (SB), 206, 207
  - brightness temperature, 195
  - Earth/Sun Lagrange points, 85, 86
  - spectral irradiance, 192
  - Sundiving, 93, 252
  - Sunjammer, 155
  - Sun’s barycenter (SB), 206, 207
  - Sunspots, 63, 198, 199
  - Surface roughness, 145, 210, 213–215, 217, 220
- T**
  - TAI. *See* International Atomic Time (TAI)
  - TAU probe, 99, 147
  - Team Encounter, 151
  - Technological readiness system, 146
  - Technology Demonstration Program (TDM), 131
  - Telecommunications satellites, 235
  - Telescopic booms, 68, 69
  - Temperature, 19, 35, 48, 53, 70, 78, 80, 91, 99, 115, 130, 133, 136, 137, 193–195, 198, 199, 201, 209, 210, 217, 220, 225, 244, 251, 255
  - Teonex, 258
  - Terrestrial pole sitters, 88
  - Terrestrial time (TT), 120, 206
  - Tethers
    - electrodynamic, 38–40
    - momentum-exchange, 40, 266
    - tether-driven laser, 106
  - Thermodynamics, 53, 266
    - second law of, 53
  - Thermo-optical properties
    - impact of degradation, 220
    - and trajectory design, 229
  - Thomson, J., 54
  - Three-axis stabilization, 90, 113–115, 118, 121, 128, 130
  - Three-body problem, 236–238
  - Three-dimensional motion-reversal very fast trajectory, 242
  - Thrust
    - efficiency, 212
    - oversimplified model
      - electromagnetic radiation, 205–220
      - maneuvering modeling thrust from, 218
      - pressure, 205–220
      - rockets compared with solar sail, 113, 114
      - vectoring, 125, 219
  - Thrust acceleration
    - behaviour of components, 215–217
    - features, 212–215
    - in HIF, 217–220
    - planetary radiation, 225
  - Timescale, 159–160
  - Titan orbiter, 93
  - Torsion, trajectory, 242
  - Total Irradiance Monitor (TIM), 196, 197

- Total reflectance, 213, 220  
 Total solar irradiance (TSI), 191, 193, 196–199, 201, 202, 215  
 Toxic fumes, 77–78  
 Trajectory  
   design, 64, 223, 234  
   dynamics, 121, 176  
   error, 198  
   impact of variable TSI, 197  
   torsion, 242  
 Transferring momentum, 208–212  
 Transversal lightness number, 218  
 Triangular Rollable And Collapsible (TRAC), 174  
 Tri-layer structure, 134, 145  
 Trojan asteroids, 157, 179–183  
 Tsiolkovsky, K.E., 6, 7, 55  
 Turbo-machinery, 78–80  
 Turbo-pump, 78  
 Two-dimensional motion-reversal fast trajectory, 240  
 Two-direct motion solar flybys, 244  
 Two Line Element (TLE), 177, 178  
 Two-propulsion reference mission, 228
- U**  
 Uchinoura Space Center, 127  
 Ultimate technologies, 140–141  
 UltraSail, 134  
 Ultraviolet (UV) light, 52, 54, 170, 250, 254  
 Union pour la Promotion de la Propulsion Photonique (U3P), 151  
 United States of America  
   NASA (*see* NASA)  
   Planetary Society, 129  
 Uphoff, C., 99  
 Up-to-date solar wind information, 259  
 U.S. Strategic Defense Initiative (SDI), 108  
 UTC. *See* Coordinated Universal Time (UTC)  
 UV photons, 193, 251, 255  
 UV range, 191
- V**  
 Vacuum-phase deposition, 134  
 Vandebergh, R., 176  
 Vanes, 118, 119, 123, 125, 130, 168  
 Vanguard rocket, 74, 75  
 Variable TSI, 197, 198  
 Velocity, 13–19, 35, 37, 38, 48, 49, 63, 80, 81, 88, 89, 103, 107, 108, 122, 123, 168, 177, 181, 182, 184, 185, 198, 206, 207, 218, 226–229, 237, 239, 241, 252–255, 257  
   exhaust velocity, 15–19, 21, 23, 24, 26–28, 31, 32, 262
- Venus  
   gravity assist, 37  
   rendezvous transfers, 231  
 Verne, J.G., 5  
 Very fast solar sailing  
   cruise phase, 239  
   motion reversal, 239, 240, 242, 244  
   post-perihelion trajectory, 240, 243  
   retrograde motion, 239  
   sailcraft continues to accelerate, 239, 244  
    $V^{star}$ , 238, 244  
 Vibration, 32, 53, 143, 248  
 Viking rocket, 11  
 VIRGO, 196  
 Visible light region, 247, 252  
 von Lenard, P., 54  
 Voyager, 37, 38, 93, 94, 227, 238, 244, 254  
 V2 rocket, 6, 8, 9, 11  
   two-stage, 10  
 Vulpetti, G., 28–29, 43, 51, 56, 66, 75, 94–95, 100, 124–126, 151–152, 180, 186, 193, 198, 203, 211, 217, 220–221, 235, 238, 240–243, 256
- W**  
 Wan Hu, 5  
 Wavelength, 53, 54, 71, 104, 105, 107, 134, 145, 189, 191, 192, 194, 195, 210, 213, 220, 251, 255  
 Wavelength ranges, 192, 206  
 Wave theory of light, 52, 53  
 Weather satellites, 85, 88  
 Weight, 6, 18, 21, 46, 50, 64, 78, 127, 138, 247, 250  
 Wiley, C., 55  
 Winds, 49, 52, 61–63, 140, 145, 226, 252, 253  
 World ships, 31, 266  
 World Space Foundation (WSF), 151  
 Wrinkles, 68, 69, 140, 168, 266
- X**  
 X-ray region, 189
- Z**  
 Zander, F.A., 55  
 Zenithal angle, 190, 199  
 Zigzag nanotubes, 138  
 Znamya experiments, 117, 127, 128